



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

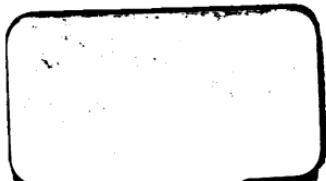
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

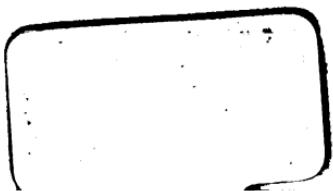


47. 1825.

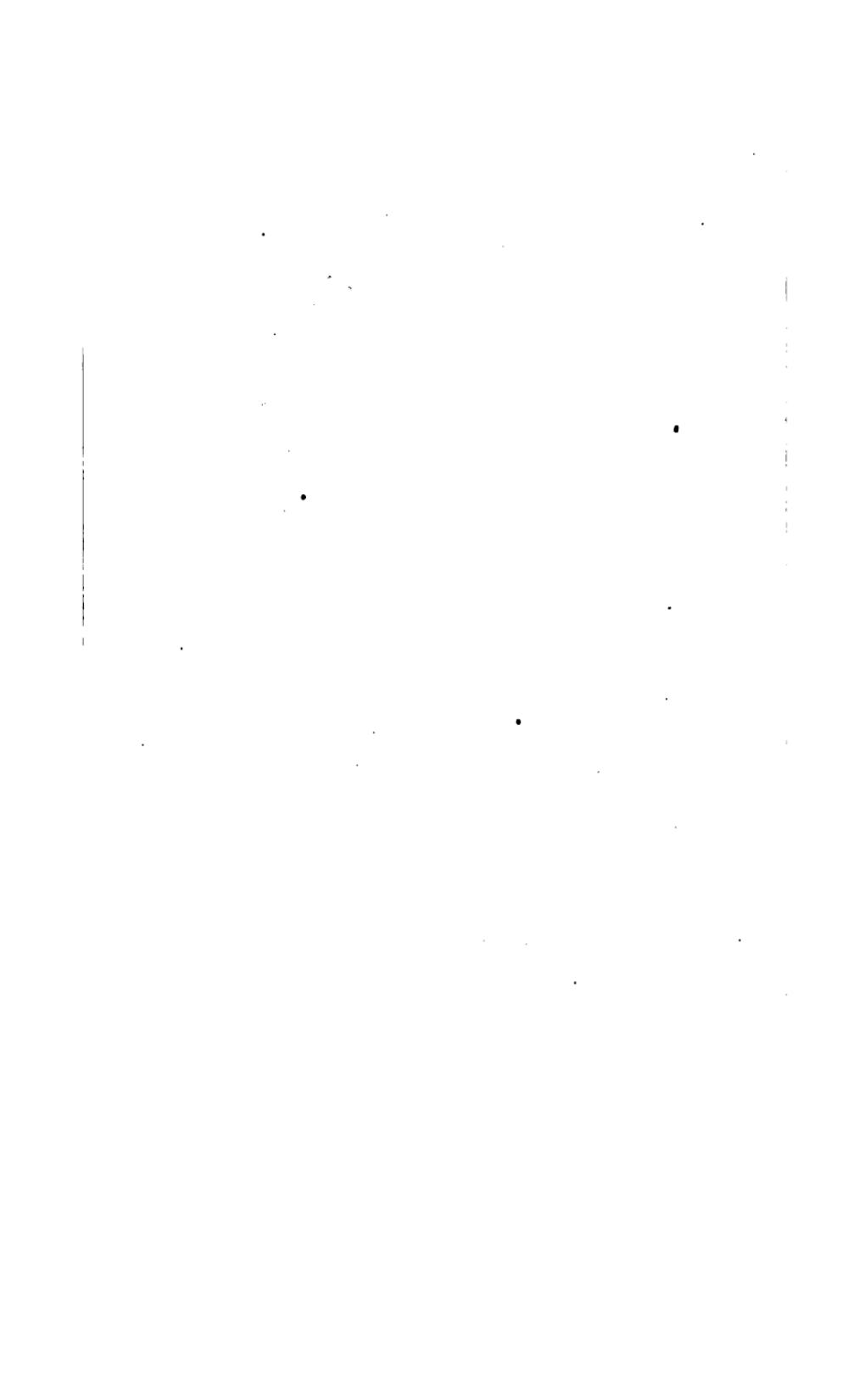




47. 1825.







A

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE.

BY

THE REV. J. G. TIARKS, PH. DR.

MINISTER OF THE GERMAN PROTESTANT REFORMED CHURCH IN LONDON;
GERMAN MASTER IN THE BLACKHEATH NEW PROPRIETARY SCHOOL,
AND THE CAMBERWELL COLLEGIATE SCHOOL.

SEVENTH EDITION.

LONDON.

D. NUTT, 158, FLEET STREET.

SIMPKIN & MARSHALL; WHITTAKER & CO.; DULAU & CO.;
WILLIAMS & NORGATE; BRAIN & CO.;
A. BLACK; AND W. ALLAN.

EDINBURGH: CHARLES SMITH.

GLASGOW: ROBERT STUART & CO.

MDCCCXLVII.

VOGEL, PRINTER, HIGH STREET, CAMBERWELL.

TO HER ROYAL HIGHNESS

THE DUCHESS OF KENT,

THIS WORK,

THE OBJECT OF WHICH IS THE PROMOTION OF

GERMAN LITERATURE IN ENGLAND,

IS,

BY GRACIOUS PERMISSION,

MOST HUMBLY DEDICATED BY

THE AUTHOR.

✓ 1960

d 2

nd 3

P R E F A C E

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

DURING the last twelve years, I have devoted a considerable portion of the leisure which my clerical duties allowed me, to giving instruction in the German, my native language. In common, however, with many teachers, I have every year more strongly felt the want of a simple, easy and concise Grammar; and especially since I have had the pleasure of instructing a large number of pupils in that excellent Seminary of the 'Society of Friends,' at Grove House, Tottenham, which is under the superintendence of my much esteemed friend, Mr. T. BINNS.

Of all German Grammars hitherto published in England, Dr. Becker's is unquestionably the best, and may be confidently recommended to those who have made themselves masters of the general rules of grammar, and are desirous of studying the philosophy of the language. Admirably adapted, however, as Becker's Grammar undoubtedly is, to the philosophical student who does not shrink from the task of encountering a grammatical terminology altogether novel,—it is in no respect calculated to lead the learner, by an explicit and easy method, to a ready understanding of the elements of the language.

Encouraged, therefore, by a combination of circumstances, I have been induced to compose a Grammar, adapted to my own views, founded on an experience of twelve years. That it is impossible to accomodate

such a work in every respect to the opinions and pre-possessions of teachers and learners, I am fully aware; and it would be in vain to expect, among so great a variety of rules and observations, that none should be liable to the plausible objections of critical ingenuity. I do, however, trust that the general plan and detail of the work will meet the approbation of the candid reader, and the generous and impartial critic. My principal aim has been to render the acquiring of this language, now so much cultivated in this country, an easy and attractive task; and to attain this object, I have first expressed every rule in a simple and intelligible manner, and then illustrated it by easy and appropriate examples. On the one hand, I have endeavoured to refrain from treating the subject in so extended and detailed a manner as to distract and embarrass the student; and on the other, to avoid a conciseness in the rules and observations which might involve any ambiguity.

It is presumed that this work is adapted to the learner in every period of his progress; and that, whilst it consults the wants of the beginner, it will be found replete with information to the advanced scholar.

Being confident that this grammar will be introduced into several seminaries where the pupils have made considerable proficiency in Latin and Greek, and into some where the Hebrew language is studied, I have occasionally illustrated a peculiarity of construction by a reference to their idioms. The allusions are, however, so introduced as to prevent those who do not possess the advantage of classical knowledge, from suffering materially by the omission of these elucidations.

A short Exercise-book, adapted to the rules of this Grammar, will be published in a few months.

To conclude, the author flatters himself that his labours will contribute to facilitate the study of a language,

the knowledge of which, whether it be considered in a literary or commercial point of view, is admitted on all hands, to be a desideratum in a sound and liberal education.

JOH. GEBH. TIARKS.

67, Great Prescot-st., Goodman's-fields,

December, 1833.

PREFACE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

The rapidly increasing sale of this Grammar, fifteen hundred copies of which have been disposed of in thirteen months, has imposed upon me the pleasant task of endeavouring to make it still more worthy of the extensive patronage which it has hitherto received from the public. Although no material alterations have been made, yet by a comparison with the preceding Edition, it will be found, that, in this fifth Edition, much has been added, which, it is hoped, will be very useful to the student. It has been my anxious wish to furnish a Grammar, which may, by the simplest and easiest method, lead the student in a short time to a full and correct, theoretical as well as practical knowledge of the German language; and, therefore, I hope, that this Edition will be as favourably received as its predecessor.

The acquirement of a language, which like the German and the Greek has so many and various inflections, cannot be made *quite* easy; the very elements of such a language, the declensions, cannot be acquired without a *careful* study; and it is quite impossible to make any proficiency in the German without an accurate knowledge

of its grammatical structure. But grammar is a thing, the very name of which is, at the present day, odious to many persons ; and not a few very anxious indeed to learn German, but hating grammar, are induced to adopt a method which they think will spare them the odious task of studying grammar ; but after having spent much time and labour to little purpose, they find to their great annoyance, that the little knowledge they have obtained has no foundation : whilst a careful study of the elements of the language would very soon convince them, that the difficulties for the most part vanish, and that the study of the language becomes interesting and attractive, as soon as the elements are well understood.

I most strongly recommend the use of my ‘Exercises for Writing German,’ as the best means to ascertain whether the rules have been rightly understood ; and as they contain such sentences as are generally found in ‘dialogues,’ the student will derive a double advantage from the use of them ; he will, in a short time, by translating and learning five and twenty pages, make himself familiar with all the parts of speech and the order of the words, and at the same time acquire a number of words and phrases, which will enable him to begin to speak *correctly*.

JOH. GERH. TIARKS.

67, Great Prescot-st., Goodman’s-fields,
December, 1843.

This SEVENTH EDITION has received several improvements, which, it is hoped, will be found useful.

JOH. GERH. TIARKS.

67, Great Prescot-st., Goodman’s-fields,
February, 1847.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION I.

	6th Edit. Page	7th Edit. Page
Chap. 1. The Alphabet and the pronunciation of the Letters.....	1	1
2. The Accentuation of the Syllables.....	11	11
3. The Division of Words into Syllables ..	13	13

SECTION II.—THE NOUNS.

Chap. 1. The Articles	15	15
2. The Genders.....	16	17
3. The Declension of Substantives	22	22
1st decl. p. 24.—2nd decl. p. 27.—3rd decl. p. 30.—4th decl. p. 32.—Decl. of foreign substantives, p. 40.—Decl. of proper names, p. 42.—Additional re- marks on the decl. of substantives, p. 44.		
4. Composition of Substantives	48	49
5. The Declension of Adjectives.....	51	51
Prelim. remarks.—The first form, p. 56. —The second form, p. 58.—The third form, p. 60.—A table of the decl. of adjectives, p. 62.—Additional remarks on the adjectives, p. 63.		

CONTENTS.

	6th Edit.	7th Edit.	
	Page	Page	
Chap. 6. The Comparison of Adjectives	64	65	
(1) The simple form, p. 65.—(2) The compound form, p. 69.—A table of the decl. of comp. and sup. degrees, p. 71—73.			
7. The Numerals	73	74	
(A) The definite numerals.—1. The cardinal numbers, p. 74—2. The ordinal numbers, p. 77.—The partitives; the distinctives; the dimidiatives; the multiplicatives; the variatives; the fractionals; the reiteratives; p. 79 and 80. (B) The indefinite numerals, p. 81.			

SECTION III.—THE PRONOUNS.

Chap. 1. Personal, Reflective, and Reciprocal Pronouns.....	84	85	
2. Possessive Pronouns	91	92	
3. Demonstrative Pronouns	94	95	
4. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns....	98	99	
5. Indefinite Pronouns	104	105	

SECTION IV.—THE VERBS.

Prel. Remarks	105	106	
Chap. 1. Auxiliary Verbs of Tenses	108	109	
(a) <i>Haben</i> , to have, p. 109.—(b) <i>Geyn</i> , to be, p. 111.—(c) <i>Werben</i> , to become, p. 113.			
2. The Conjugation of the Regular Verb ..	114	115	
(a) Active voice, p. 116.—(b) Passive voice, p. 120.			

CONTENTS.

	6th Edit.	7th Edit.	
	Page	Page	
Chap. 3. Auxiliary Verbs of Mood	121	123	
1. Ich mag, I may, p. 124.—2. Ich will, I will, p. 126.—3. Ich soll, I shall, p. 127.—4. Ich kann, I can, p. 129.—5. Ich darf, I dare, p. 130.—6. Ich muß, I must, p. 131.—7. Ich lasse, I let, p. 132.			
4. Irregular Verbs.....	132	134	
5. Intransitive and Neuter Verbs	146	148	
6. Reflective Verbs	153	155	
7. Impersonal Verbs.....	157	159	
8. Compound Verbs	159	161	
First class: verbs singly compounded separable, p. 161.—Second class: verbs singly compounded, inseparable, p. 169.			
—Third class: verbs separable and inseparable, p. 174.—Fourth class: verbs doubly compounded, p. 175.—Fifth class: verbs compounded with nouns, p. 178.			
SECTION V.—THE ADVERBS.....	177	179	

SECTION VI.—THE PREPOSITIONS.

Chap. 1. Prepositions which govern the Gen. Case	187	190	
2. — — Dat. Case	190	193	
3. — — Acc. Case	198	201	
4. — — Dat.&Acc.			
	Cases..	202	205
An Alphabetical List of all the Prepositions	214	217	

CONTENTS.

6th Edit.	7th Edit.
Page	Page

SECTION VII.

The Conjunctions	215 218
------------------------	---------

SECTION VIII.

The Interjections	234 237
-------------------------	---------

PART II.—SYNTAX.

Chap. 1. Of the use of the Articles	235 238
(A) The definite article, p. 238.—(B)	
The indefinite article, p. 242.	
2. Of the use of the Cases	239 242
(A) The nominative case, p. 242.—(B)	
The genitive case, p. 244.—(C) The	
dative case, p. 252.—(D) The accusa-	
tive case, p. 259.	
3. Of the use of the Verb	258 261
(A) Persons and numbers, p. 261.—(B)	
Tenses, p. 263.—(C) Moods, p. 267.—	
(D) The participles, p. 277.	
4. Of the Arrangement of Words	278 282
5. Of the marks of Punctuation.	294 300
6. PROSODY	297 302

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE.

PART I.—ETYMOLOGY.

SECTION I.

1. *The Alphabet and the Pronunciation of the Letters.*
2. *The Accentuation of the Syllables.* 3. *The Division of Words into Syllables.*

CHAPTER I.

THE ALPHABET, AND THE PRONUNCIATION OF
THE LETTERS.

THE ALPHABET.

German.	Roman.	Name.
À a	A a	Au
ß b	B b	Bey
é c	C c	Tsey
ö ð	D d	Dey
ë e	E e	Ey

German.	Roman.	Name.
ß f, ff	F f, ff	Ef, ef-ef
G g	G g	Gey
ö ö, ȫ	H h, ch	Hau, tsey-hau
ʒ i	I i	E
ʒ i	J j	Yot
ɛ t, ð	K k, ck	Kau, tsey-kau
ɛ l	L l	El
ℳ m	M m	Em
ℳ n	N n	En
ℳ o	O o	O
ℳ p	P p	Pey
ℳ q	Q q	Koo
ℳ r	R r	Err
ℳ s, è, ß, ß̄, st	S f, s, ff, sz, st	{ Ess, ess-ess, ess-tset, ess-tey
ℳ t	T t	Tey
ℳ u	U u	Oo
ℳ v	V v	Fou
ℳ w	W w	Vey
ℳ x	X x	Iks
ℳ y	Y y	Ypsilon
ℳ z, ð, ȶ	Z z, tz	Tset, tey-tset.

THE SIMPLE VOWELS.

A, a. E, e. Ʒ, i. Ǒ, o. U, u. Y, ȝ.

THE COMPOUND OR MODIFIED VOWELS.

AE, å. ØE, ð. UE, ü.

THE DIPHTHONGS.

AU, au. EI, EY, ei, ey. EU, eu
ÆU, åu. ƷI, ƷY, ai, ay. ØI, ØY, oi, oy.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE SIMPLE VOWELS.

A sounds like the open *au* in *aunt*, or the *a* in *father*; but never like *a* in *ball*—*Bater*, *Hals*, *Zalg*; it is made long by doubling it: as in *Zal*, *eel*; or by adding *h*, which is put after it, except in syllables with *t*, to which *h* is always joined (see the letter *h*): *Zahl*, *bald*; *Wahn*, *path*; *Zthal*, *valley*; *Rath*, *counsel*. Two *a*'s belonging to two syllables are both pronounced, as in *Canaan*.

E has four different sounds: 1, the broad or open sound: as, *leben*, *geben* (*laben*, *gaben*); 2, the acute or elevated: as, *stehen*, *gehen* (*steyhen*, *geyhen*); 3, the slender: as, *Felb*, *Feib* (*Felt*, *Helt*); 4, the obscure or short sound: as, *Dittel* (*Distle*). At the end of a word it is unaccented, but must be pronounced: as, *Snabe*, *boy*; *Liebe*, *love*. A double *e* is pronounced long: as, *Seele*, *soul*; *Meer*, *sea*; *Armee*, *army*. But when two *e*'s occur, which belong to different syllables, they are both pronounced: as, *ge-endigt*, *finished*; *be-engen*, *to straiten*. **E** is also made long by the insertion of *h*: as, *lehren*, *to teach*.

I has two sounds; it sounds—1, like *i* in *bit*, *hit*: as, *Biß*, *Zisß*. 2, like *ee* in *deer*: as, *mix*, *bit*; but never like *i* in *like*. It is made long by the addition of *e*: as, *Biene*, *bee*; *Liebe*, *love*; *hier*, *here*; *vier*, *four*; *Wie*, *Lie*, *hier*, *vier*, are to be pronounced as one syllable. In the pronouns *ihm*, *ihn*, *ihnen*, *ihr*, *ihret*, *i* is made long by the insertion of *h*. At the end of a word *ie* is pronounced as *one* syllable, when *i* has the accent: as, *Melodie*, *Harmonie*; but as *two* syllables, when the *i* is short: as, *Familie*, *Lilie*.

O has two sounds: it sounds—1, like *o* in *hot*, *lot*: as, *Gott*, *God*; *doch*, *yet*—2, like *o* in *bone*, *stone*: as, *groß*, *great*; *hoch*, *high*; *Rose*, *rose*. Also this vowel is made long by doubling it, or by inserting *h*: as, *Moos*, *moss*; *hohl*, *hollow*; *Sohn*, *son*; *Zhon*, *clay*; *Noth*, *distress*.

U has two sounds; it sounds—1, like *o* in *move*, *prove*, or like *oo* in *boot*: as, *Bud*, *book*; *Tuch*, *cloth*; *Fuß*, *foot*—

2, like *oo* in *book, wood*: as, *muß, must*; *Fluß, river*. It is made long by the addition of *h*: as, *thun, to do*; *Huhn, fowl*; *Muth, courage*. In *Thurm, steeple*, the *u* is short.

Y sounds like *i*: as, *Juli*; but in words of Greek origin, like the French *u* and the German *ü*: as, *Gympton, Synagoge, Synobe*. Writers of the present day seldom use it in words which are originally German; they write *beibe*, both; *Blei*, lead; instead of *beyde, Bley*. *Y* is never used as a consonant, except in foreign words: as *York*.

Obs.—The English are very apt to pronounce an *r* after a final *e*, especially when the next word begins with a vowel: as, *nun gehet ich aus*, instead of *nun gehe ich aus*. This must be avoided.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE COMPOUND OR MODIFIED VOWELS.

Three vowels, *a, o, u*, take *e*, which changes their sound, without however making them diphthongs, i. e. *double sounds*. This *e* is put at the side of capital letters, and above small letters; but above the small letters sometimes two dots are used instead.

Ae, ö, ä, pronounced like *a* in *fame*.

Oe, ð, ö, — — the French *eu* in *jeune, peu*.

Ue, ü, ü, — — — *u* in *flute, fut*.

Most of the words in which these modified vowels occur, are either derivatives or inflected: as, *lästig, burdensome*, from *last*, burden; *Söhnchen, little son*, from *Sohn, son*; *Hände, hands*, pl. of *Hand*; *müssen, from muß, I must*. They are either long or short, according to the quantity of the vowels from which they have been formed, and are pronounced accordingly; e. g. n *Fluß*, foot, *u* is long; consequently in *Güße, feet*, *ü* is also long; but in *Fluß, river*, *u* is short; and so is *ü* in *Güsse*. If Noehden had paid any attention to this rule, he would not have called these modified vowels diphthongs, *double sounds*.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is a *double* sound, and therefore cannot, like the sound of the vowels *a, o, u, å, ö, ü*, be continued as long as our breath will allow. The sound of a diphthong, when continued, passes over into the sound of the last vowel: *ei* into *i*, *au* into *u*.

Uu sound like *ou* in *house*: as, *Haus*, *Maus*.

Ey, ei, sound like *i* in *fire*: as, *Fein*.

Eu, eu, — not quite so broad as the English *oi*: as, *Euete*.

Aeu, åu, — like *oi* in *cloister*: as, *Åute*.

Ai, ay, occur only in a few words, and are sounded a little broader than *i* in *kite*: as, *May*.

Oi, oy, sound like the English; they occur only in a few proper names.

PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

Prel. Remark.—Whenever a word increases by inflection, and receives an additional syllable, the last consonant which belongs to the root passes over to the new syllable: *Hand*, plur. *Hän-de*; *Dieb*, plur. *Die-be*.

B sounds, at the beginning of a syllable, like the English *b*; but when it occurs at the end of a word or syllable or next to a final consonant or consonants, they not being liquids, it is pronounced more like *p* than *b*: as, *ab*, *Dieb*, *Krebs*, *Obst*; *ap*, *Diep*, *Kreps*, *Opft* (see *O*); but *Diebe*, not *Diepe*.

Note.—It sounds like *b* at the end of a syllable, when the next syllable begins with *b* or *v*: as, *Ebbe*, *ebb*; *Gelübde*, *vow*; also in words in which *e* has been dropped after *b*: as, *Lobserhebungen*, *praises*, for *Lobeserhebungen*; *Knäblein*, *little boy*, for *Knäbelin*; for the *b* would begin the syllable if the *e* were not elided, and therefore it retains its sound:

but in compound words; as, *abrechen*, the first *b* must be pronounced more like *p* than *b*.

C is pronounced hard, like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, but before the other vowels, simple and compound, and diphthongs, like *z* (*ts*): *Cäsar*, *Cæsar*, *Zäsar*; *Centaur*, *Zentaur*; *Cölibat*, *Zölibat*; *Cicero*, *Zicerò*; *Carthago*, *Karthago*. In the word *Cöln*, *c* is pronounced like *t* before *ö*, because it is a corrupted word formed from *Colonia*. In *Cölate*, it is pronounced like *t*, but in *Cöcene*, like *z*.

D, at the beginning of a syllable, sounds like the English *d*, but at the end more like *t* than *d*: as, *Hand*, hand, *Hant*; *und*, and, *unt*; *Hund*, dog, *Hunt*; but *Hündle*, *Hünbe*, not *Hánte*, *Hunte*.

Exc.—**D** sounds like *b*, at the end of a syllable, when it is followed by another *b*, and when *e* or *i* is elided after it: as, *Wibber*, ram; *Xäbler*, for *Xäbeler*, one that blames; *Würb'ge*, for *Würbige*, deserving.

F has the same sound as the English *f* in *full*, *find*; but between two vowels it is softer, like *f* in *of*: as, *Briefe*, letters (to say *Brieffe*, is a provincialism); *Hafen*, *haven*.

G is pronounced like the English *g* in *God*, *give*, when it stands at the beginning of a word or syllable: as, *Gabe*, gift; *gehen*, to go. At the end of a word or syllable the Lower-Saxons pronounce it like the aspirated *ch*; and the Upper-Saxons like *t*. The proper sound is between the two, but cannot be taught without a master's voice; *Xag*, day; *Xug*, lie; *Xrug*, deceit.

In words borrowed from the French, *g* is pronounced like the French *g*: as, *Genie*, talent; but in words which are taken from the Latin and the Greek, it retains its original sound: as, *Genius*, plur. *Genien*, *genius*, plur. *genii*; *General*, general; *Geographie*, geography.

H is aspirated as in the English words *have*, *hold*. Between two vowels the aspiration is less strong, sometimes hardly

perceptible: as, *Rühe*, trouble; *blühen*, to flourish. When it ends a word, it has no sound at all: as, *früh*, early; *Schuh*, shoe; nor in compounds at the end of a syllable: as, *Stroh-hut*, straw-hat. This letter often serves, as has been remarked, to indicate the long vowel of the syllable in which it stands: as, *Stahl*, steel; *Stuhl*, chair; *Bahn*, path; *that*, deed; *Ruth*, courage. When there is a *t* in the syllable, *h* is generally united with that letter: as, *that*, *Ruth*. In two words, *Thurm*, steeple; *Wirth*, landlord; the vowels are short, though there is an *h* in the syllable; *t**h* is never pronounced like the English *th*.

Z (consonant) sounds like *y* in *year*, and chiefly occurs at the beginning of words or syllables: as, *ja*, yes, *Jahr*, year; *Zammer*, sorrow; *bejahen*, *bejährt*, *bejammern*.

K sounds like the English *k*: as, *Kind*, child; *Dank*, thanks. When a double *t* is required, *c* is put before it: as, *Katzen*, the neck behind; *Stoc*t**, stick. Some modern writers, e. g. *Othleizer*, use *ff* instead of *d*.

Note.—Though *d* at the end of a word has the same sound as the English, and though the English have no aspirated gutteral sounds in their language, yet they are apt to pronounce it at the end of a word like *dh*: *Stoc*d**, stick, like *Stoc*t**. This must be avoided.

ɛ, *œ*, *ʌ*, *ɔ*, have the same sounds as in English.

ɥ is always followed by the vowel *u*; it then has the sound of *t*, the *u* being more or less heard: as, *queer*, *across*; *Quaal*, torment; *Quelle*, spring.

ꝝ is pronounced with a greater force and shrillness than in English.

ꝝ has two sounds, as in English, the sharp and the soft. It has the sharp sound of the English *s* in *so*, *this*, when it stands before a consonant or at the end of a word or syllable: as, *Spieꝝ*, play; *Gans*, goose. It has the soft sound; which is between the English *s* and *z*, when it stands before a vowel or diphthong at the beginning of a word or syllable: as, *Geꝝn*,

son; *Rase*, nose; *Gänse*, geese; *Seil*, rope. *S* frequently occurs united with *ch*, and thus produces a strong hissing sound, like the *sh* in *she*. In some provinces of Germany *s* is pronounced with this hissing sound before *t* and *p*, and at the end of some words: as, *Stein* is pronounced *S̄tein*, *Spiel*—*S̄piel*, *Vers*—*Vers̄h*, *Geist*—*Geis̄t*. This ought to be carefully avoided. This *s* is used only at the end of a word or syllable.

There is a difference between *ff* and *ß*, the former being a double *f*, with a double sound, the latter a sharp *f*, with the sound of the English *s* in *son*. As the double *f* (*ff*) can neither be sounded at the end of a word, nor after *t*, the Germans in former times, never used it in such a case, but employed *ß* instead. Some modern writers, however, retain the *ff* (for which a new type has been made) at the end of a word and before *t*, when the vowel in the syllable is short or acute: as, *Fafß*, cask; *Hafß*, hatred; *Fluß*, river; *muß*, must; *gofß*, hast. They use *ß* at the end of words and before *t*, when the vowel in the syllable is long or broad, and after a diphthong: as, *Spaß*, joke; *Gruß*, greeting; *Stoß*, thrust; *groß*, great; *spaßt*, *aßt*. *Fleiß*, industry; *außer*, *fleßen*, *fleißig*. Whenever any of the first mentioned words with a short or acute vowel increases, the *ff* must be used: as, *Gäffer*, casks; *haffen*, to hate; *Glüsse*, rivers; *müssen*, *goffen*. But when those, which have a long or broad vowel increase, the *ß* must be used: as, *Späße*, *Grüße*, *Stöße*, *große*. A simple final *s* must be used at the end of those words, which require *f* only when they increase: as, *Gras*, grass, pl. *Gräser*; *Glas*, glass, pl. *Gläser*; *Loso*, lot, pl. *Lose*.

X has the same sound as in English; but in words ending in *ion*, which are taken from the Latin, *t* sounds before *ion* like *z*, according to the German pronunciation of the Latin; *portion*, like *Porzion*; *lection*, like *Lection* with a long *o*.

ß sounds like *f* at the beginning of a word or syllable, but between two vowels or diphthongs it is much softer: as *voll*, full; *Eclave*, slave.

ꝝ sounds almost like the English *v*; it comes forth with a slight contact of the upper teeth and the lower lip. It is impossible to describe the sound; but it requires particular attention.

ꝫ sounds like *ts*: as, *Xyt*, axe; *þere*, witch.

ꝑ is pronounced like *ts*: as, *Bahl*, number; *Bahn*, ten. The sound of *z* is doubled by putting *t* before it, *tz*, which must not be used after a consonant.

Ꝝ. It is impossible to teach the pronunciation of this double consonant by writing. At the beginning of words of Greek or Latin origin, it sounds like *t*: as, *Christ*—*Krist*, a Christian; *Character*—*Karacter*, character; *Chronicle*—*Kronik*, chronicles. The word *Chur*, election; *Churfürst*, prince elector; is of German origin; but the verb *kuren*, from which it is derived, is always written with *t*. In words borrowed from the French, Ꝝ has the sound of the French *ch*, like the English *sh*: as, *Charlotte*, *Chicane*. In simple and primitive words Ꝝ sounds like *t* before *s*: as, *Wachs*, *Wacts*, wax; *Glaðs*, *Glaðs*, flax; *Büchse*, *Büchs*, box; *Achsel*, *Achsel*, shoulder; *erwachsen*, to grow, to wax. In derivatives and compounds, the *s* of which does not belong to the original word, and before the elision of *e*, Ꝝ retains its proper sound: as, *Nächster*, neighbour (in the scriptural signification), derived from *nahe*, *superl. nächst*; *wachsam*, watchful, composed of *wach* and *sam*; *Nachsicht*, forbearance; *Buchs*, for *Buches*, gen. of *Buch*; *sprach's* for *sproch' es*.

Ꝝ, ꝟ, always belong to the same syllable and cannot be separated. When the two letters do not belong to the same syllable, as in diminutives: *Gláschen*, a little glass; *Röschchen*, a little rose, the final *s* is used.

ꝣ and ꝥ. The pronunciation of these letters is best acquired by sounding a very light *e* between the two: as, *Gnabe*, mercy, *Genade*; *Knabe*, boy, *Renabe*. But the less this *e* is heard the better.

Ψ̄ sounds like f, and most of the words in which these letters occur, are of Greek origin: as, Ψ̄hilosophie, philosophy; some of doubtful origin: as, Εψ̄eu, ivy; Ψ̄estphalen, Westphalia.

Ψ̄f and Ψ̄f have sounds in which each letter is heard.

It is almost impossible to teach the pronunciation by writing, without the assistance of the voice; for every language has peculiar sounds to which nothing similar is to be found in another. The pronunciation which I have endeavoured to shew by writing, is the pronunciation of that language which is called, die Hochdeutsche Sprache, *The High-German language*. *The Low-German*, die Plattdeutsche Sprache, which is spoken by the common people in the north of Germany, differs so much from the High-German, that a native of the south is hardly able to understand it when spoken. In several provinces of Germany, where the High-German is spoken as the language of the educated, the natives deviate from the proper pronunciation. The Upper Saxons, for instance, pronounce the three soft letters b, d, g, like the hard p, t, k, and again p like b. Baum they pronounce Paum, Dan!—Lant, Gabe—Rabe, Pohlen—Bohlen. In the south of Germany, especially in that part formerly called Swabia, s is pronounced like sch before t and p: as, Stunde, hour, is pronounced Schtunde; Spiel, play, Schpiel. In several provinces ü is pronounced like ie, eu like ei, ö like the broad e; so that no difference is perceptible in the pronunciation of Thür, door, and Thier, animal; heulen, to howl, and heilen, to cure; die Wösen, the wicked, and die Besen, the brooms. The Lower-Saxons are inclined to omit the sound of ch after s, and to pronounce sneiben, instead of schneiben, to cut; swer, instead of schwer, difficult; also to sound b for t: as, Dag, for Tag, day. In some parts of Germany g is pronounced like y in year, or the German j in ja, yes: as, eine gebratene Gans und eine jesalzene Gurke ist eine jute Füte Tottes, for eine gebratene Gans und eine gesalzene Gurke ist

eine gute Gabe Gottes. These are the most striking deviations from the general rules, none of which will be observed among well-educated natives of Hanover.

CHAPTER II.

ACCENTUATION OF THE SYLLABLES.

In dissyllabic and polysyllabic words each syllable has its peculiar accent; a knowledge of which is absolutely necessary for the proper pronunciation of words. The German language is very regular in the accentuation. The syllables are accented in three different ways: some have the *full accent*, which will be pointed out by this sign (^) over the syllable; others have a *demi-accent*, which will not be marked at all; others have *no accent*, which will be distinguished by this sign (~). The full accent lies, with very few exceptions, on the most important, i. e. on the radical syllable of every simple word: e. g. *Gēbēt*, prayer; *gēbēt*, give; the former is derived from *bētēn*, to pray; the latter from *gēbēn*, to give; *vērgēbēn*, to forgive; *bēhāuptēn*, to maintain; *Gēdānlēn*, thoughts; *thēllēn*, to divide; *aūſēt*, out of; *ōrbentlich*, properly. When we hear a word properly pronounced, we can immediately distinguish the radical syllable from the others. Foreign words, however, are excepted; for they retain their peculiar accent: as, *Justiz*, *Abvocat*, *Mandat*, *Student*, *Tyrann*, *Orgān*, *Cultūr*. A few German words are likewise excepted: as, *lēbēndīg*, alive, from *lebēn*; *Antwort*, answer.

In compound substantives and adjectives, the accent lies on the determinative Component, (see Chap. IV, the Composition of Substantives) which generally stands before the determined, or should that component be of more than one syllable, on its radical syllable: as, *Dāmpfboot*, steam-boat; *Sānbhäus*,

country-house; *Schuhmacher*, shoe-maker; *eisblau*, cold as ice; *dunkelblau*, dark blue; *Hoot*, *Haus*, *Mutter*, *Tat*, *blau*, are the principal words which are determined by the determinatives *Dampf*, *Land*, *Schuh*, *Eis*, *dunkel*.

In compound verbs separable, and substantives or adjectives derived from them, the accent lies on the particle, which is separated from the verb, as well as on the radical syllable: (see the compound verbs,) *as*, *anfangen*, to begin; *Anfang*, beginning; *ausgehen*, to go out; *Ausgang*, egress; *vorschreiben*, to prescribe; *Vorschrift*, prescription; *unaufhörlich*, incessantly. But in compound verbs inseparable, and in substantives and adjectives derived from them, the accent lies on the radical syllable only, and the prefix is unaccented: *übersetzen*, to translate; *Übersetzung*, translation; *umgehen*, to avoid, evade; *Umgang*, evasion; *umgehend*, to have intercourse; *Umgang*, intercourse.

The demi-accent lies—

1. In compound nouns, on the determined component: *as*, *Haustür*, street-door; *Großmuth*, generosity; *Schuhmacher*, *dunkelblau*, *Inhalt*.

2. On the final syllable, the vowel of which is neither *e* nor *i*: *as*, *am*, *anb*, *bar*, *haft*, *heit*, *keit*, *sal*, *sam*, *shaft*, *thum*, *ung*, &c., *fürchtsam*, timid; *Heiland*, Saviour; *wertbar*, precious; *ständhaft*, steadfast; *Mehrheit*, majority; *Heiligkeit*, sanctity; *Trübsal*, affliction; *Gräfschaft*, county; *Mächtum*, riches; *Wertung*, esteem.

Note.—The final syllables, the vowel of which is *e* or *i*, have the demi-accent when *e* or *i* stands before two or more consonants: *as*, *icht*, *igt*, *ling*, *end*, *ernb*; *holzicht*, wood-like, woody; *fluchtling*, fugitive; *Zugenb*, virtue; *träuernd*, mourning.

Unaccented are—

1. The prefixes *be*, *ge*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*: *as*, *beteidigen*, to offend; *gesehen*, seen; *erlauben*, to permit; *vergeben*, to forgive; *zerbrechen*, to break.

2. The final syllables *en*, *er*, *dēn*, *tel*, *sel*, *ig*, *ig*: as, *Gärtēn*, garden; *Väter*, father; *Mittēl*, means; *Söhnchen*, little son; *Stōpsēl*, stopper; *selīg*, happy; *ēnig*, unique.

3. Some monosyllables, especially the two articles *der*, *die*, *das*; *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, the pronoun *er*, the preposition *zu* before the infinitive mood: as, *die Hānd*, *ēn Mānn*, *es regnēt*, it rains; *zu lōben*, to praise.

These few and simple rules will be found sufficient to guide the attentive student till he begins to study the chapter on prosody, at the end of the grammar.

CHAPTER III.

THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

German words are divided into syllables according to the pronunciation of the single syllables, and not according to the letters of the root. The following rules are to be observed:—

1. Monosyllabic words cannot be divided: as, *Schmerz*, pain; *Herbst*, autumn; *hübsch*, pretty; not *Schm-erz*, *Her-bst*, *hüb-sch*.

2. Dissyllabic or polysyllabic words are divided as they are pronounced. When a consonant stands between two vowels, it belongs to the syllable that follows it, though it should belong to the radical syllable: as, *le-ben*, to live, not *leb-en*; *sagen*, to say; *hö-ren*, to hear; *schrei-ben*, to write. Of two consonants, the former belongs to the preceding, the latter to the next syllable: as, *Gar-ten*, garden; *Er-de*, earth; *wil-ig*, willing; *Wes-ter*, knife. For this reason the same consonant belongs, in some words, to the preceding, in others to the next syllable: as, *schrei-ben*, to write; *unbeschreib-lich*, indescribable; *sa-gen*, to say; *unsag-lich*, unspeakable; the final syllables beginning with a vowel, *an*, *at*, *el*, *en*, *er*, *id*, *ig*, *ing*, *inn*, *is*, *ob*, *ung*, *ut*, consequently take the consonant of the root

when the word is divided: as, *Heiland*, Saviour; *Heimat*, native-land; *Muth*, poverty; *Steigung*, inclination.

Note.—In compound words and derivatives that have been formed by prefixes, the syllables are divided as they are compounded: as, *Aug-apfel*, the apple of the eye; *Erb-recht*, the right of inheritance; *Donnerstag*, Thursday; *dar-aus*, from that; *her-ein*, herein; *hier-in*, herein; *voll-end-en*, to finish; *beob-achten*, to observe; (the two last are generally, though incorrectly, pronounced *voll-lenden*, *beo-bachten*.

3. The double letters, *ch*, *t*, *ph*, *pf*, *sch*, *sp*, *ft*, *ß*, *th*, and *ß*, are considered as single letters, and are therefore never separated in writing. They belong to the preceding syllable when a consonant follows them, and to the next syllable when a vowel follows: as, *Ga=che*, thing, matter; *sach=lich*, relating to things, not to words; *schme=cken*, to taste; *schmacl=haft*, savory; *schimpf=sen*, to insult; *schimpf=lich*, insulting; *Pro=phet*, prophet; *Men=schen*, men; *mensch=lich*, human; *Ge=spen=ster*, spectres; *tröst=lich*, consoling; *nüt=gen*, to be of use; *nüt=lich*, useful; *wei=ßen*, to whiten; *weiß=lich*, whitish; *ra=then*, to advise; *rath=lich*, advisable.

Note.—*Pf* and *sp* (*ßp*) may be divided when a short vowel precedes: *Apfel*, apple; *Klop-fen*, to knock; *We=pe*, wasp.

4. When a vowel is thrown out between two consonants, the division takes place where the vowel is thrown out: as, *wir speiſt-en*, we dined, not *speiſt-en*; *sie reiſt-en*, they travelled; or, *speiſt-en*, *reiſt-en*.

5. Also in the division of foreign words the pronunciation is taken as a guide: as, *E=van=ge=li=um*, gospel; *Ka=te=chis=mus*, catechism; *Mo=narch*, monarch; *Pro=sodie*, prosody; *Auc=ti=on*, auction; *Di=po=si=ti=on*, disposition; *bis=cret*, discreet.

Note 1.—When *sc* is pronounced like *ß*, it belongs to the next syllable: as, *Di=sci=plin*, discipline; *De=scen=den=ten*, descendants.

Note 2.—In foreign words beginning with *Aßp*, *Eßp*, *Desp*,

Resp, sp pass over to the next syllable: as, *X-specten*, *E-sprie*, *De-spot*, *de-sparat*, *Re-spect*.

6. When a word, for want of space in the line, must be divided, the hyphen is put at the end of the line, as in English, to conduct the eye over to the next line. The hyphen was, in former times, frequently inserted between compound words: as, *Rath-haus*, senate-house; *Birn-Baum*, pear-tree. At the present day it is seldom used in this way, except in long compounds which consist of more than two components: as, *Oberamts-Xbvacat*, General-Geldzeugmeister, Master General of the Ordnance. But it is always used when one determined substantive belongs to several determinatives: as, *Feld- und Garten-Früchte*, or, *Feld- und Gartenfrüchte*, the fruits of the field and the garden; *das Ober- und Unterhaus*, the upper and lower house; *der Nord- und Südpol*, the north and south pole.

SECTION II.

OF THE NOUN.

1. *The Articles.*
2. *The Genders.*
3. *The Declension of Substantives.*
4. *The Composition of Substantives.*
5. *The Declension of Adjectives.*
6. *The Comparison of Adjectives.*
7. *The Numerals.*

CHAPTER I.

THE ARTICLES.

The Articles are, 1, the *definite*, and 2, the *indefinite*. In the nominative case of the singular number, the definite article has distinct terminations for the three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter; and, consequently, indicates the gender of the substantive before which it stands: i. e. by the article it

is seen, whether the substantive is of the masculine, or feminine, or neuter gender. The terminations of the indefinite article for the masculine and neuter are the same in the nominative case, and therefore do not indicate the gender: as, masculine, *der Mann*, the man; neuter, *das Kind*, the child (definite article); masculine, *ein Mann*, a man; neuter, *ein Kind*, a child (indefinite article). The importance of this observation will be seen when we come to the declension of adjectives and pronouns.

Both articles are declined by four cases: nominative, genitive, dative, accusative. The definite article has a plural, but only one word for the three genders. The indefinite has no plural.

<i>Definite Article.</i>			<i>Indefinite Article.</i>		
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Masc. Fem. Neut.</i>			<i>Masc. Fem. Neut.</i>		
N. <i>der</i> <i>die</i> <i>das</i> .	<i>die, the</i>	N. <i>ein</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein, a</i>	
G. <i>des</i> <i>der</i> <i>des</i> .	<i>der, of the</i>	G. <i>eines</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>eines, of a</i>	
D. <i>dem</i> <i>der</i> <i>dem</i> .	<i>den, to the</i>	D. <i>einem</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>einem, to a</i>	
A. <i>den</i> <i>die</i> <i>das</i> .	<i>die, the.</i>	A. <i>einen</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein, a.</i>	

The following pronouns and indefinite numerals indicate the gender, like the definite article:—

dieser, diese, dieses, this. *welcher, welche, welches, which.*
jener, jene, jenes, that. *jeder, jede, jedes, each.*
mancher, manche, manches, many a.

The following do not indicate the gender, like the indefinite article:—

<i>mein, meine, mein, my.</i>	<i>unser, unsere, unser, our.</i>
<i>dein, deine, dein, thy.</i>	<i>euer, euere, euer, your.</i>
<i>sein, seine, sein, his.</i>	<i>ihr, ihre, ihr, their.</i>
<i>ihr, ihre, ihr, her.</i>	<i>kein, keine, kein, no, none.</i>
<i>sein, seine, sein, its.</i>	

CHAPTER II.

THE GENDERS.

In English, animate beings are, according to their natural sex, either masculine or feminine; inanimate objects and abstract ideas, with a few exceptions, neuter. This is not the case in German; several names of animate beings are of the neuter gender; inanimate objects and abstract ideas, either of the masculine, or feminine, or neuter. Of most words a knowledge of the gender is to be acquired only by experience. I shall give a few rules; but, not to perplex the student, no rule will be laid down to which the exceptions are very numerous.

General Remarks.

1. All names and appellations of males are masculine; those of females are feminine: as, *der Mann*, the man; *der Vater*, the father; *der König*, the king; *die Frau*, the woman; *die Mutter*, the mother; *die Königin*, the queen. There are, however, a few exceptions. All diminutives ending in *chen* and *lein*, (see 2nd declension, Obs. 1.) are neuter: as, *das Männchen*, or *Männlein*, the little man; *das Fräulein*, the young (unmarried) lady. The following compounds are also exceptions, as they take the gender of their last component: *die Mannsperson*, *das Mannsbild*, the man; *das Frauenzimmer*, *das Weibsbild*, the woman. Also, *das Weib*, the woman or wife; *das Mensch*, the wench, are neuter.

2. When there exists, besides the sexual denomination of the individuals, an appellative for the species of animals, such an appellative is always of the neuter gender: as, *das Pferd*, (appel.) the horse; *der Hengst*, the stallion; *die Stute*, the mare; *das Kind*, (app.) *der Stier*, the bull; *die Kuh*, the cow; *das Schwein*, (app.) the swine; *der Eber*, the boar; *die Gau*,

the sow; *das Huhn*, (app.) the fowl; *der Hahn*, the cock; *die Henne*, the hen; *das Kind*, (app.) the child; *der Knabe*, the boy; *das Mädelchen*, neut., because it is the diminutive of *die Magd*, the maid. *Exc.*—*Der Mensch, homo*, the human being; *der Mann*, the man; *die Frau*, the woman.

3. When there is no appellative for the species, the species takes the name of the individual sexes, and is either masculine or feminine: as, *der Hund*, the dog, *pl. die Hunde*; *die Katze*, the cat, *pl. die Käten*; *der Wolf*, the wolf, masc.; *der Sperling*, the sparrow, masc.; *die Taube*, the dove, fem. As the name of the species expresses one of the two sexes, the other must be distinguished by a particular termination, or by the addition of a characteristic term. The termination which denotes the sex, is *inn* for the fem. when the masculine constitutes the name of the species; as, *der Löwe*, the lion, *die Löwin*, the lioness; *der Hund*, the dog, *die Hündin*, the bitch; *der Wolf*, the wolf, *die Wölfin*, the she-wolf; and *er* or *rich* when the feminine constitutes the name of the species: as, *die Taube*, the dove, *der Tauber*, the male; *die Gans*, the goose, *der Gänserich*, the gander; *die Ratte*, (from *Rat*, antiquated) the cat, *der Rater*, the tom-cat. The characteristic terms are, for birds: *der Hahn*, the cock, *die Henne*, the hen; or for birds as well as for quadrupeds: *das Männchen*, the male, *das Weibchen*, the female.

4. The termination *inn* is given to certain attributes and titles (and in some parts of Germany, especially in the south, even to proper names), to denote the feminine gender: as, *der König*, the king, *die Königin*, the queen; *der Herzog*, the duke, *die Herzogin*, the duchess; *der Fürst*, the prince, *die Fürstin*, the princess; *der Schäfer*, the shepherd, *die Schäferin*, the shepherdess; *der Engländer*, *die Engländerin*. As it is the strange custom in Germany for the wife to share the title of her husband, the termination *inn* is used to express the female title: as, *der Doctor*, *die Doctorinn*; *der Rector*, *die Rectorinn*; *der Professor*, *die Professorinn*; *der Bürgermeister*,

die Bürgermeisterinn. And as in addressing the gentleman, the word *Herr*, Mr., is, according to the German custom, put before the title, so *Grau*, Mrs., before the title of the wife: as, *Herr Professor*, *Grau Professorinn*.

(a) *Of the Masculine Gender are—*

1. The names of winds, seasons, months, and days: *der Nordwind*, the north-wind; *der Südwind*, the south-wind; *der Frühling*, the spring; *der Sommer*, the summer; *der Januar*, January; *der Montag*, Monday; *der Dienstag*, Tuesday. *Das Jahr*, the year, is neuter; whence *das Frühjahr*, a synonymous term for *der Frühling*, is also neuter; *die Jahreszeit*, the season, is feminine, because the last component part, *Zeit*, time, is of that gender.
2. The names of stones: as, *der Ries*, the flint; *der Diamant*, the diamond; *der Smaragd*, the emerald; *der Rubin*, the ruby; *der Saphir*, the sapphire.
3. All words ending in *ing*, *ling*, *all*, and *m*: as, *der Flüchtlings*, the fugitive; *der Säugling*, the sucking babe; *der Ring*, the ring; *der Stall*, the stable; *der Fall*, the case; *der Helm*, the helmet; *der Halm*, the stalk; *der Schelm*, the rogue; *der Schleim*, the phlegm. *Exc.*—*Das Ding*, the thing; *das Messing*, the brass; *das Metall*, the metal.

(b) *Of the Feminine Gender are—*

1. All substantives of more than one syllable ending in *ei*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *ath*, *uth*, and also monosyllables in *ucht*, *unft*: *die Heuchelei*, hypocrisy; *die Verrätherei*, treachery; *die Freiheit*, freedom; *die Gleichheit*, equality; *die Heiligkeit*, sanctity; *die Freundschaft*, friendship; *die Hoffnung*, the hope; *die Heimath*, the native land; *die Armut*, poverty; *die Buht*, the bay; *die Frucht*, the fruit; *die Flucht*, the flight; *die Vernunft*, reason; *die Ankunft*, the arrival. *Exc.*—*Das Pet-*

schafft, the seal; *der Bermuth*, wormwood; *der Wismuth*, bismuth; *das Geschrei*, the clamour.

2. Names of trees, fruits, and flowers, ending in *e*: *die Fichte*, the pine; *die Pfäume*, the plum; *die Nelke*, the pink.

(c) *Of the Neuter Gender are—*

1. The names of metals, countries, and places: *das Eisen*, the iron; *das Blei*, the lead; *das südliche Frankreich*, the south of France; *das heiße Italien*, hot Italy; *das schöne Frankfurt*, beautiful Frankfort. *Exc.*—*Die Platina*, platinum; *der Stahl*, steel; *der Zombach*, pinchbeck; *der Zink*, zinc; *die Schweiz*, Switzerland; *die Pfalz*, Palatinate; *die Lausitz*, Lusatia; and all those ending in *ei*: *die Türkei*, Turkey; *die Wallachei*, Wallachia, &c.

2. All collective substantives beginning with the syllable *Ge*: *as*, *das Gebirge*, the range of mountains; *das Gewölbe*, the collection of clouds; *das Gebälk*, the beams; *das Gehöft*, the farm; *das Gebiet*, the territory.

3. All diminutives ending in *lein* and *chen*, of whatever gender the substantives may be from which they are formed: *as*, *das Söhnchen*, or *das Söhnlein*, the little son, from *Sohn*; *das Mädchen*, the little daughter; *das Blümchen*, the little flower, from *die Blume* (see the 2nd declension of substantives).

4. All substantives ending in *thum*: *das Fürstenthum*, the principality; *das Christenthum*, Christianity. *Exc.*—*Der Irrthum*, the error; *der Reichthum*, riches.

5. All words, and even letters, which, without being substantives, are used as such: *das Gehen*, the going; *das Reiten*, the riding; *das Aber*, the word *but*; *das liebe Ich*, the dear I (personality); *das Nein und Ja*, the *no* and *yes*; *das U*, *das B*.

Note 1.—Compound words take the gender of their last component, if it be a substantive: *as*, *das Arbeitshaus*, the work-house; *der Feigenbaum*, the fig-tree; from *die Arbeit*,

the work ; das *Haus*, the house ; die *Feige*, the fig ; der *Baum*, the tree. Substantives compounded with *Muth*, are excepted ; for some are of the masculine, others of the feminine gender, though *Muth* is masculine : as, der *Hochmuth*, haughtiness ; der *Ebelmuth*, nobleness of disposition ; der *Gleichmuth*, equanimity ; der *Wankelmuth*, fickleness ; der *Heldenmuth*, heroism. But, die *Großmuth*, generosity ; die *Kleinmuth*, pusillanimity ; die *Ganftmuth*, meekness ; die *Schermuth*, melancholy ; die *Wehmuth*, melancholy ; die *Demuth*, humility ; die *Langmuth*, forbearance ; die *Anmuth*, pleasantness. Die *Antwort*, the answer ; der *Abscheu*, the abhorrence ; der *Verhaft*, custody, are also exceptions.

Note 2.—In several words the gender marks a difference of signification : as,—

der <i>Band</i> , the binding of a book,	das <i>Band</i> , a ligament, bond, a volume ;	union.
der <i>Bauer</i> , the peasant ;	das <i>Bauer</i> , the bird-cage.	
der <i>Bulle</i> , the male of a cow ;	die <i>Bulle</i> , a letter published by the pope.	
der <i>Bund</i> , a covenant, league ;	das <i>Bund</i> , a sheaf, bundle.	
das <i>Chor</i> , the choir ;	der <i>Chor</i> , the chorus.	
der <i>Erbe</i> , the heir ;	das <i>Erbe</i> , the inheritance.	
der <i>Gehalt</i> , the contents ;	das <i>Gehalt</i> , the salary.	
der <i>Geißel</i> , the hostage ;	die <i>Geißel</i> , the scourge.	
der <i>Harz</i> , the Hercynian forest ;	das <i>Harz</i> , the rosin.	
der <i>Heide</i> , the pagan ;	die <i>Heide</i> , the heath.	
der <i>Kiefer</i> , the jaw of a fish ;	die <i>Kiefer</i> , a sort of fir.	
der <i>Kunde</i> , the customer ;	die <i>Kunde</i> , knowledge.	
der <i>Leiter</i> , the guide ;	die <i>Leiter</i> , the ladder.	
der <i>Lohn</i> , the reward ;	das <i>Lohn</i> , the wages.	
die <i>Mandel</i> , the almond ;	das <i>Mandel</i> , a number of 15.	
der <i>Mangel</i> , the want ;	die <i>Mangel</i> , the mangle.	
die <i>Mark</i> , the mark, boundary ;	das <i>Mark</i> , the marrow.	
der <i>Marsch</i> , the march ;	die <i>Marsch</i> , the marsh, fen.	

der Reis, the rice ;	das Reis, a twig, sprig.
der Schild, the shield ;	das Schild, the sign of a house.
der See, the lake ;	die See, the sea.
der Sprosse, the shoot, sprout ;	die Sprosse, the step of a ladder.
der Stift, a piece of wire ;	das Stift, an ecclesiastical establishment.
der Theil, a part of the whole ;	das Theil, the share, portion.
der Thor, the fool ;	das Thor, the gate.
der Verbienst, the profit of labor ;	das Verbienst, the merit.
der Zoll, the toll ;	das Zoll, the inch.

CHAPTER III.

THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Grammarians differ much concerning the number and arrangement of the declensions, the principal cause of which is the plural number. If we consider the singular only, we cannot produce more than four declensions, as will be apparent from the following table.

<i>First Dec.</i>		<i>Second Dec.</i>	
N. Seite, side ;	Hand, hand.	Garten, garden ;	Stachel, sting.
G. Seite,	Hand,	Gartens,	Stacheln.
D. Seite,	Hand,	Garten,	Stachel.
A. Seite,	Hand.	Garten,	Stachel.
<i>Third Dec.</i>		<i>Fourth Dec.</i>	
N. Knabe, boy ;	Fürst, prince.	Tisch, table ;	Staat, state ;
G. Knaben,	Fürsten,	Tische, tables,	Staates, states,
D. Knaben,	Fürsten,	Tisch, table,	Staate, state,
A. Knaben,	Fürsten.	Tisch, table,	Staat, state.

In the 1st declension the singular remains unaltered; in the 2nd the genitive has an additional *s*; in the 3rd, all cases, except the nominative, end in *en*; in the 4th, the genitive ends in *eß*, the dative in *e*; the accusative is like the nominative. But the plural of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th, is formed in different ways.

<i>First Dec.</i>	<i>Second Dec.</i>
Plur.	Plur.
Seiten, Hände,	Gärten, Städtein.
<i>Third Dec.</i>	<i>Fourth Dec.</i>
Plur.	Plur.
Knaben, Jürgen,	Jüdche, Staaten, Bücher.

From the plural of these words we see that eight declensions may be formed; but my experience in teaching German, has convinced me that it is more judicious to class them in four, according to the inflection of the singular, as Noehden, though incorrectly, has done, and to state the different formation of the plural, than to perplex the student by making six or eight.

General Rules.

1. The dative plural ends, in all the declensions, in *en*, or only *n* after *t* and *r*.
2. The simple vowels, *a, o, u*, of the singular are changed in the plural, into *ä, ö, ü, (a)* in all *original* monosyllables of the 1st decl.: as, *Gans*, goose, plur. *Gänse*; (*b*) in several nouns of the 2nd declension: as, *Vater*, father, plur. *Väter*; (*c*) in all substantives of the 4th, the plural of which ends in *er*: as, *Tuch*, cloth, plur. *Tücher*; (*d*) in many of the 4th which have *e* in the plural: as, *Gast*, guest, plur. *Gäste*.
3. The German language has no special form for the vocative case, the nominative is used instead.
4. The neuters have the nominative and accusative alike.

*Note.—*All substantives have a capital initial letter.

The First Declension.

The first declension comprehends all the substantives of the feminine gender. The singular number remains unaltered. The plural is formed in two ways; (*a*) by adding to the singular *e*, in the original monosyllables, in those ending in *nīß*, and in one ending in *sal*: *die Trübsal*, affliction; (*b*) by adding to the singular *en* (or only *n* when the singular ends in *e*, *el*, or *er*) in all other substantives.

Note.—Those ending in *ee*, or the accented syllable *ie*, generally lose *e* in the plural before the termination *en*: as, *die Armee*, the army, plur. *die Arme-en*; *die Melodie*, the melody, plur. *die Melodi-en*. But when *ie* is pronounced as two syllables, only *n* is added to the singular: as, *Eilie*, plur. *Eilien*; *Familie*, plur. *Familien*.

Examples.

Sing.	Plur.
N. <i>die Seele</i> , the soul ;	<i>die Seelen</i> , the souls.
G. <i>der Seele</i> , of the soul ;	<i>der Seelen</i> , of the souls.
D. <i>der Seele</i> , to the soul ;	<i>den Seelen</i> , to the souls.
A. <i>die Seele</i> , the soul ;	<i>die Seelen</i> , the souls.
N. <i>die Gabel</i> , the fork ;	<i>die Gabeln</i> , the forks.
G. <i>der Gabel</i> , of the fork ;	<i>der Gabeln</i> , of the forks.
D. <i>der Gabel</i> , to the fork ;	<i>den Gabeln</i> , to the forks.
A. <i>die Gabel</i> , the fork ;	<i>die Gabeln</i> , the forks.
N. <i>die Tugend</i> , the virtue ;	<i>die Tugenden</i> , the virtues.
G. <i>der Tugend</i> , of the virtue ;	<i>der Tugenden</i> , of the virtues.
D. <i>der Tugend</i> , to the virtue ;	<i>den Tugenden</i> , to the virtues.
A. <i>die Tugend</i> , the virtue ;	<i>die Tugenden</i> , the virtues.
N. <i>die Hand</i> , the hand ;	<i>die Hände</i> , the hands.
G. <i>der Hand</i> , of the hand ;	<i>der Hände</i> , of the hands.
D. <i>der Hand</i> , to the hand ;	<i>den Händen</i> , to the hands.
A. <i>die Hand</i> , the hand ;	<i>die Hände</i> , the hands.

N. die Kenntniß, the knowledge ;	die Kenntnisse.
G. der Kenntniß, of the knowledge ;	der Kenntnisse.
D. der Kenntniß, to the knowledge ;	den Kenntnissen.
A. die Kenntniß, the knowledge ;	die Kenntnisse.
N. die Armee, the army ;	die Armeen, the armies.
G. der Armee, of the army ;	der Armeen, of the armies.
D. der Armee, to the army ;	den Armeen, to the armies.
A. die Armee, the army ;	die Armeen, the armies.

The following words are declined like *Seele* : die *Schale*, the saucer; die *Schlange*, the serpent; die *Mühle*, the mill; die *Gabe*, the gift, &c., &c.

The following are declined like *Gabel* : die *Angel*, the hook; die *Fackel*, the torch; die *Schlüssel*, the dish; die *Schulter*, the shoulder; die *Feder*, the pen; die *Ader*, the vein; die *Küster*, the oyster, &c., &c.

The following are declined like *Zugend* : die *Arbeit*, the labour; die *Gefahr*, the danger; die *Hoffnung*, the hope; die *Grausamkeit*, the cruelty; die *Eigenheit*, the peculiarity, &c., &c.

The following like *Hand*: die *Wand*, the wall; die *Gans*, the goose; die *Kuh*, the cow; die *Haut*, the skin; die *Schnur*, the string; die *Brust*, the breast, and its compound die *Armbrust*, the cross-bow, and some composed with *Kunst* and *Kunst*: as, die *Zusammenkunst*, the meeting; die *Einkünfte*, the revenue; die *Zeitläufte*, the occurrences of time; the two last are used only in the plural.

The following like *Armee*: die *See*, the sea; die *Harmonie*, the harmony; die *Poesie*, poetry.

The plural of die *Mutter*, the mother, and die *Tochter*, the daughter, is irregular: die *Mütter*, die *Tochter*. The u and o are modified in the plural. The plural does not take n except in the dative.

Observations.

1. Many substantives of the feminine gender, which are now used as monosyllables, ended, in former times, in the unaccented *e*, and formed two syllables. Though the *e* of the singular was dropped, the regular plural was retained; the plural, therefore, of these ends in *en*, and does not change the simple vowels *a, o, u*, into *å, ö, ü*. Of this kind are the following: *die Art*, the kind; *die Bahn*, the path; *die Brut*, the brood; *die Bucht*, the bay; *die Burg*, the castle; *die Cur*, the cure; *die Fahrt*, the conveyance; *die Flur*, the field; *die Fluth*, the flood; *die Form*, the form; *die Fracht*, the freight; *die Frau*, the woman; *die Last*, the burden; *die Mark*, the mark; *die Pflicht*, the duty; *die Post*, the post; *die Quaal*, the torment; *die Schaar*, the crowd; *die Schlacht*, the battle; *die Schrift*, the writing; *die Schuld*, the debt; *die Spur*, the trace; *die That*, the deed; *die Tracht*, the mode of dress; *die Trift*, the pasture; *die Uhr*, the watch; *die Wahl*, the choice; *die Welt*, the world; *die Zahl*, the number; *die Zeit*, the time.

2. The plural of *Macht*, power, is *Mächte*; but of the two compounds *Öhnmacht*, swoon; *Vollmacht*, power of attorney, not *Öhnmächte*, *Vollmächte*, but *Öhnmachten*, *Vollmachten*.

3. *Die Bank*, the bench, has *Bänke* in the plural; but *die Bank*, the bank, where pecuniary concerns are transacted, forms *die Banken*; *die Gau*, the sow, makes *die Gäue*; but the females of the wild boar are called *die Gauen*.

4. Those which end in the unaccented *e*, formed, in former times, the genitive and dative in *en*: as, *die Ehre*, genitive, *der Ehren*, dative, *der Ehren*. This termination is retained in the following words when used with a preposition which governs the genitive or dative case, and without an article or pronoun: *Erde*, earth; *Ehre*, honor; *Seite*, side; *Treube*, joy; *Schanbe*, disgrace; *Gunst*, favor; *Statt*, place:

an, auf Erden, on earth; zu Ehren, in honor of; Ehren halber, for the sake of honor; von Seiten, on the part of; vor Freuden, for joy; zu Schanden werben, to fall into disgrace; zu Gunsten, in favor of; von Statten geben, to succeed. This termination of the genitive is also sometimes retained by the best authors, when the case stands before the substantive by which it is governed: as, er beweinte seiner Frauen Schicksal, he bewailed his wife's fate; er ist um seiner Seelen Heil besorgt, he is anxious about the salvation of his soul.

The Second Declension.

This declension comprehends all substantives of the masculine and neuter genders ending in the unaccented syllables el, en, and er, all the diminutives ending in ðen orlein, and the compounds which have the infinitive mood seyn, *to be*, for their last component.

The genitive singular is formed by adding s to the nominative, and the dative plural by adding n, (except in those which end in en). The other cases remain unaltered. In the plural of several words the simple vowels a, o, u, of the singular are changed into å, ö, ü. Only a few ending in et and er have an additional n in the plural.

Examples.

Sing.	Plur.
N. der Vogel, the bird;	die Vögel, the birds.
G. des Vogels, of the bird;	der Vögel, of the birds.
D. dem Vogel, to the bird;	den Vögeln, to the birds.
A. den Vogel, the bird;	die Vögel, the birds.

See Observation 3, page 29.

N. der Apfel, the apple; die Äpfel, the apples.
 G. des Apfels, of the apple; der Äpfel, of the apples.
 D. dem Apfel, to the apple; den Äpfeln, to the apples.
 A. den Apfel, the apple; die Äpfel, the apples.

N. der Garten, the garden; die Gärten, the gardens.
 G. des Gartens, of the garden; der Gärten, of the gardens.
 D. dem Garten, to the garden; den Gärten, to the gardens.
 A. den Garten, the garden; die Gärten, the gardens.

N. das Messer, the knife; die Messer, the knives.
 G. des Messers, of the knife; der Messer, of the knives.
 D. dem Messer, to the knife; den Messern, to the knives.
 A. das Messer, the knife; die Messer, the knives.

N. der Haken, the hook; die Haken, the hooks.
 G. des Hakens, of the hook; der Haken, of the hooks.
 D. dem Haken, to the hook; den Haken, to the hooks.
 A. den Haken, the hook; die Haken, the hooks.

N. das Knäblein, the little boy; die Knäblein, the little boys.
 G. des Knäbleins, of the little boy; der Knäblein, of the little boys
 D. dem Knäblein, to the little boy; den Knäblein, to the little boys
 A. das Knäblein, the little boy; die Knäblein, the little boys.

N. das Söhnen, the little son; die Söhnen, the little sons.
 G. des Söhnen, of the little son; der Söhnen, of the little sons
 D. dem Söhnen, to the little son; den Söhnen, to the little sons
 A. das Söhnen, the little son; die Söhnen, the little sons.

N. das Daseyn, the existence. No plural.
 G. des Daseyns, of the existence.
 D. dem Daseyn, to the existence.
 A. das Daseyn, the existence.

Exc.—Der Bauer, the peasant; der Baier, the Bavarian;
belong to the third declension.

Observations.

1. The diminutives are formed by adding *chen* or *lein* to a substantive, and changing *a, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü*: as, *der Sohn*, the son, *das Söhnen*; *der Baum*, the tree, *das Bäumchen*; *das Buch*, the book, *das Büchlein*; *die Frau*, the woman, *die Fräulein*. The syllable *chen* is preferred when the substantive ends with a liquid *l, m, n, r*; and *lein* when it terminates with a mute consonant or a vowel. Words ending in *dj* or *g* take also the syllable *chen*; but then *e* is inserted for the sake of euphony: as, *das Buch*, *das Büchelchen*; *der Ring*, the ring, *das Ringelchen*; *der Zisch*, *das Zischelchen*. Diminutives are used to express the idea not only of littleness (diminutive size), but also fondness, ridicule, and contempt.

2. The few words ending in *m* take now frequently *n*: as, *der Athen*, the breath, instead of *Athem*; *der Besen*, the broom, instead of *der Besem*. The plural of *Besen* is *die Besen*; but Luther declined it *die Beseme*. *Mit Besemen gelehrt*. Luke xi. 25.

3. The following change *a, o, u*, in the plural into *ä, ö, ü*:—*der Apfel*, the apple; *der Acker*, the field; *der Bruder*, the brother; *der Faden*, the thread; *der Garten*, the garden; *der Graben*, the ditch; *der Hafen*, the haven; *der Hammel*, the weifer; *der Hammer*, the hammer; *der Handel*, the affair, concern; *das Kloster*, the cloister; *der Laden*, the shop (*der Laden*, the shutter has *die Laden*); *der Mangel*, the want; *der Mantel*, the mantle; *der Nabel*, the navel; *der Sattel*, the saddle; *der Schnabel*, the beak; *der Schwager*, the brother-in-law; *der Vater*, the father; *der Vogel*, the bird.

4. A few words which belong to this declension take, in the plural number, *n*: as, *der Pantoffel*, the slipper; plural *die Pantoffeln*; *der Gevatter*, the godfather, plural *die Gevatttern*; *der Stachel*, the sting, plural *die Stacheln*; *der Stiefel*, the boot, plural *die Stiefeln*; *der Bettler*, the cousin, plural *die Betttern*.

The Third Declension.

This declension originally contained all substantives of the masculine gender ending in e. But in modern times a great many have, like many of the first declension, lost the final e: a complete list of these substantives will be found in Observation 4. All the cases of the singular and plural are formed by adding the letter n to the nominative singular, when the word ends in e; and en when it ends in a consonant. In those ending in er and err, the e of the termination en is frequently omitted. The genitive has, in some words, an additional s: as, *ber Wille*, gen. *des Willens*. Only one neuter, *das Herz*, the heart, belongs to this declension, the accusative of which is according to the general rule, it being a neuter, like the nominative.

Examples.

Sing.

Plur.

N. der Falke, the falcon;	die Falken, the falcons.
G. des Falken, of the falcon;	der Falken, of the falcons.
D. dem Falken, to the falcon;	ben Falken, to the falcons.
A. den Falken, the falcon;	die Falken, the falcons.
N. der Knabe, the boy;	die Knaben, the boys.
G. des Knaben, of the boy;	der Knaben, of the boys.
D. dem Knaben, to the boy;	ben Knaben, to the boys.
A. den Knaben, the boy;	die Knaben, the boys.
N. der Fürst, the prince;	die Fürsten, the princes.
G. des Fürsten, of the prince;	der Fürsten, of the princes.
D. dem Fürsten, to the prince;	ben Fürsten, to the princes.
A. den Fürsten, the prince;	die Fürsten, the princes.
N. der Mensch, the human being;	die Menschen.
G. des Menschen, of the human being;	der Menschen.
D. dem Menschen, to the human being;	ben Menschen.
A. den Menschen, the human being;	die Menschen.

Observations.

1. The following words have *ens* in the genitive singular: *der Friede*, the peace; *der Funke*, the spark; *der Gedanke*, the thought; *der Glaube*, the faith; *der Haufe*, the crowd; *der Korpfe*, the carp; *der Name*, the name; *der Saame*, the seed; *der Schade*, the damage; *der Wille*, the will. In former times the nominative of these words ended in *en*; consequently they belonged to the second declension. When the *n* was rejected, the termination of the genitive was retained. *Schäben* also occurs, declined after the second declension, plural *die Schäben*. Also *Herz* generally takes, in the genitive, the termination *ens*; *des Herzengs*.

2. A few words have two terminations in the nominative, and therefore belong to two declensions: as, *der Brunnen*, the well, 2nd decl.; *der Brunn*, 3rd: *der Daumen*, the thumb, 2nd; *der Daum*, 3rd: *der Felsen*, the rock, 2nd; *der Fels*, 3rd: *der Pfriemen*, the awl, 2nd; *der Pfriem*, 3rd.

3. The following belong to the third declension, although some of them are, in the singular, declined by some authors as if they belonged to the second; *der Barbar*, the barbarian; *der Moehr*, the moor; *der Ungar*, the Hungarian; *der Tartar*, the Tartar; and two ending in *er*: *der Bauer*, the peasant; *der Baier*, the Bavarian. *Der Nachbar*, the neighbour, forms the singular after the 2nd, and the plural after the 3rd declension.

4. The following words have lost the final *e*, and therefore belong to this declension:—*der Advocat*, the lawyer; *der Antagonist*, the antagonist; *der Astronom*, the astronomer; *der Bär*, the bear; *der Barbar*, the barbarian; *der Consonant*, the consonant; *der Christ*, the Christian; *der Demagogue*, the demagogue; *der Ducat*, the ducat; *der Elephant*, the elephant; *der Fürst*, the prince; *der Geograph*, the geographer; *der Gesell*, the companion; *der Graf*, the count, earl; *der Herr*, the master; *der Held*, the hero; *der Hirt*, the herdsman; *der Husar*,

the hussar; *der Idiot*, the idiot; *der Jesuit*, the Jesuit; *der Katholik*, the Roman Catholic; *der Klient*, the client; *der Komet*, the comet; *der Monarch*, the monarch; *der Mohr*, the Moor; *der Methodist*, the methodist; *der Narr*, the fool; *der Ochse*, the ox; *der Patient*, the patient; *der Patriarch*, the patriarch; *der Philosoph*, the philosopher; *der Planet*, the planet; *der Poet*, the poet; *der Prälat*, the prelate; *der Prinz*, the prince; *der Protestant*, the protestant; *der Quadrant*, the quadrant; *der Soldat*, the soldier; *der Student*, the student; *der Theolog*, the theologian; *der Thor*, the fool; *der Tyrann*, the tyrant; *der Ungar*, the Hungarian; *der Vorfahr*, the ancestor.

Note 1.—Poets sometimes put the *e* which stands before the *r* after it, for the sake of metre: e. g. Schiller says, *Bauernabel*, for *Bauernabel*.

Note 2.—*Der Käse*, the cheese, was formerly *der Käs*, and therefore belongs to the fourth declension.

The Fourth Declension.

This declension contains substantives of the masculine as well as of the neuter gender, and of various terminations. Had those words which belong to the third declension retained their original final *e*, the termination and the gender would clearly indicate the declension. For the feminine gender designates the first; the terminations *el*, *en*, *er*, the second; and the termination *e*, together with the masculine gender, would define the third, had not the *e* been dropped in many words. This, however, having been the case, it can, in many instances, be ascertained only by the genitive case, whether a word belongs to the third or the fourth: e. g. the words *der Mensch*, *der Tisch*, *der Fürst*, *der Geist*, may, according to their present termination, and their gender, belong to the third and to the fourth (they can neither belong to the first nor to the second). The genitive, which is generally given in the dictionary,

points out the declension. For the genitive of *Mensch* and *Fürst*, *des Menschen*, *des Fürsten*; and of *Tisch* and *Geist*, *des Tisches*, *des Geistes*, clearly shows that the former belong to the third, and the latter to the fourth declension.

From this we see that, as all the feminines belong to the first declension, all the masculines and neuters ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, to the second, all the masculines ending in *e*, to the third, all the neuters not ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, to the fourth; only the masculines not ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, or *e*, leave the student in doubt. To save him the trouble of consulting a dictionary, in order to find the genitive case, an alphabetical list of those words which have lost the *e*, is given in the observations on the third declension.

In the singular number the genitive is formed by adding *es* to the nominative, or only *s* when that case ends in *e*; the dative by adding *e*, except in those ending in *e*; the accusative is like the nominative.

The plural of most nouns is formed by adding *e* to the nominative singular; those ending in *e* do not take another *e*. But several neuters, especially those of one syllable, and a few masculines, have *er* in the plural. Some have *en*. The dative plural always ends in *n*. Many, especially the monosyllabic neuters, change *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural into *å*, *ö*, *ü*. A complete alphabetical list of all the substantives which form the plural in *er*, will be found in Observation 3; and of those which change *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural into *å*, *ö*, *ü*, in Observation 4.

Examples.

Sing.

Plur.

N. <i>der Tisch</i> , the table;	<i>die Tische</i> , the tables.
G. <i>des Tisches</i> , of the table;	<i>der Tische</i> , of the tables.
D. <i>dem Tische</i> , to the table;	<i>den Tischen</i> , to the tables.
A. <i>den Tisch</i> , the table;	<i>die Tische</i> , the tables.

N. der Baum, the tree;	die Bäume, the trees.
G. des Baumes, of the tree;	der Bäume, of the trees.
D. dem Baume, to the tree;	den Bäumen, to the trees.
A. den Baum, the tree;	die Bäume, the trees.

See Observation 4, (b), page 37.

N. der Tag, the day;	die Tage, the days.
G. des Tages, of the day;	der Tage, of the days.
D. dem Tage, to the day;	den Tagen, to the days.
A. den Tag, the day;	die Tage, the days.

N. der Fluss, the river;	die Flüsse, the rivers.
G. des Flusses, of the river;	der Flüsse, of the rivers.
D. dem Flusse, to the river;	den Flüssen, to the rivers.
A. den Fluss, the river;	die Flüsse, the rivers.

N. der Fuß, the foot;	die Füße, the feet.
G. des Fußes, of the foot;	der Füße, of the feet.
D. dem Fuße, to the foot;	den Füßen, to the feet.
A. den Fuß, the foot;	die Füße, the feet.

N. das Thal, the valley;	die Thäler, the valleys.
G. des Thales, of the valley;	der Thäler, of the valleys.
D. dem Thale, to the valley;	den Thälern, to the valleys.
A. das Thal, the valley;	die Thäler, the valleys.

See Observation 3, (c), page 36.

N. der Geist, the spirit;	die Geister, the spirits.
G. des Geistes, of the spirit;	der Geister, of the spirits.
D. dem Geiste, to the spirit;	den Geistern, to the spirits.
A. den Geist, the spirit;	die Geister, the spirits.

N. der Ort, the place;	die Orter, the places.
G. des Ortes, of the place;	der Orter, of the places.
D. dem Orte, to the place;	den Ortern, to the places.
A. den Ort, the place;	die Orter, the places.

See Observation 3, (b), page 35.

N. **das Gebirge**, the range of mountains; die Gebirge.
G. **des Gebirges**, of the range of mountains; der Gebirge.
D. **dem Gebirge**, to the range of mountains; den Gebirgen.
A. **das Gebirge**, the range of mountains; die Gebirge.

The following form the plural after the third declension:—
das Auge, the eye, *pl.* **die Augen**; **der Affe**, the aspect, **der Diamant**; **das Ende**, the end; **das Insect**, **der Mast**, the mast; **das Leid**, the suffering (also **das Leiden**); **der Lorbeer**, the laurel; **das Ohr**, the ear; **der Pfau**, the peacock; **der Schmerz**, the pain; **der See**, the lake; **der Sporn**, the spur; **der Staat**, the state; **der Strahl**, the ray; **der Strauß**, the ostrich; **der Unterthan**, the subject; **der Zierrath**, the ornament.

The following are declined like **Tisch** or **Tag**:—**der Arm**, the arm; **der Halm**, the stalk; **der Hauch**, the breath; **der Huf**, the hoof; **der Hund**, the dog; **der Mond**, the moon; **der Monat**, the month; **der Pfad**, the path; **der Schuh**, the shoe; &c. (None of these change the vowel in the plural.)

The following like **Gebirge**:—**das Gehölze**, the wood; **das Gehöft**, the estate; **das Gebälke**, the range of beams; **das Gewölke**, a collection of clouds; **das Gewebe**, the texture; **das Gezelte**, the tent; **der Käse**, the cheese.

The plural of **Landsmann**, countryman; **Baumann**, farmer; **Kaufmann**, merchant; **Hauptmann**, captain; **Zimmermann**, carpenter; **Edelmann**, nobleman; is **Landsleute**, **Bandleute**, **Kaufleute**, **Ebelleute**, **Hauptleute**, **Zimmerleute**. **Leute**, people, is used to express human beings in the most indefinite way, without distinguishing either the species, for which purpose **Menschen** is used, or the sex, which is denoted by **Männer**. Consequently there is a difference between **Eheleute**, married people (husbands and wives), and **Ehemänner**, married men.

Observations.

1. In the genitive singular the *e* is frequently omitted before *s*, when the elision does not cause an unpleasant sound: as, *des Königs*, *des Monats*, *des Jahres*, *des Heimes*, *des Gehorsams*.

2. The *e* of the dative singular is often dropped: as, *dem König*, *dem Heim*; and is never used when a preposition stands before the substantive without an article, pronoun, or adjective preceding: as, *mit Beifall*, with approbation; *mit Sturm*, by storm; *mit Fleiß*, on purpose; *von Gold*, of gold; *aus Haß*, from hatred. *Zu*, however, is excepted: *zu Stande bringen*, to accomplish; *zu Grunde gehen*, to perish; *zu Hause seyn*, to be at home; *zu Gelde machen*, to sell. Also, *nach Hause gehen*, to go home.

3. The following form the plural in *er*, like *Thal*, *Geist*, *Ort* :—

(a) All those which end in *thum*: as, *der Reichthum*, riches; *das Fürstenthum*, the principality; *die Reichthümer*, *die Fürstenthümer*.

(b) The following masculines: *der Gott*, a heathen idol, *die Götter*; *der Geist*, the spirit, *die Geister*; *der Leib*, the body, *die Leiber*; *der Mann*, the man, *die Männer*; *der Ort*, the place, *die Orter*; *der Rand*, the edge, *die Ränder*; *der Wurmund*, the guardian, *die Wurmunder*; *der Wald*, the forest, *die Wälde*; *der Wurm*, the worm, *die Würmer*; *der Bösewicht*, the villain, *die Bösewichter*. All these are declined like *der Geist*, but those which have *a*, *o*, or *u*, in the singular, change these letters into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the plural.

(c) The following neuters: *das Amt*, the office, *die Aemter*; *das Augenlieb*, the eye-lid, *die Augenlieder*; *das Bad*, the bath, *die Bäder*; *das Band*, the ribbon, *die Bänder*; *das Bild*, the picture, *die Bilder*; *das Blatt*, the leaf, *die Blätter*; *das Brett*, the board, *die Bretter*; *das Buch*, the book,

die Bücher; das Dach, the roof, die Dächer; das Dorf, the village, die Dörfer; das Ei, the egg, die Eier; das Fach, the department, die Fächer; das Faß, the cask, die Fässer; das Feld, the field, die Felde; das Geld, the money, die Gelde; das Gemach, the apartment, die Gemächer; das Gemüth, the mind, die Gemüther; das Gespenst, the spectre, die Gespenster; das Geschlecht, the sex, die Geschlechter; das Gesicht, the face, die Gesichter; das Glas, the glass, die Gläser; das Glied, the limb, die Glieder; das Grab, the grave, die Gräber; das Gras, the grass, die Gräser; das Gut, the estate, die Güter; das Haupt, the head, die Hämpter; das Haus, the house, die Häuser; das Holz, the wood, die Hölzer; das Horn, the horn, die Hörner; das Hospital, the hospital, die Hospitäler; das Huhn, the fowl, die Hühner; das Kalb, the calf, die Kälber; das Kind, the child, die Kinder; das Kleid, the garment, die Kleider; das Korn, the grain, die Körner; das Kraut, the herb, die Kräuter; das Lamm, the lamb, die Lämmer; das Land, the land, die Länder; das Licht, the light, die Lichter; das Lied, the song, die Lieder; das Loch, the hole, die Löcher; das Maul, the mouth, gab, die Mäuler; das Nest, the nest, die Nester; das Pfand, the pledge, die Pfänder; das Rad, the wheel, die Räder; das Regiment, the regiment, die Regimenter; das Schild, the sign of a house, die Schilder; das Schloß, the lock, die Schlösser; das Schwert, the sword, die Schwerter; das Spital, the hospital, die Spitäler; das Thal, the valley, die Thäler; das Volk, the nation, die Völker; das Wams, the jacket, die Wämser; das Weib, the wife, die Weiber; das Wort, the word, die Wörter (see Obs. 5). All these are declined like das Thal, and those which have a, o, or u, in the singular change these letters into å, ö, ü, in the plural. Das Mal, mark, and its compounds das Denkmal, monument, die Denkmäler; das Grabmal, the tomb, die Grabmäler; but das Merkmal, a mark, sign, has Merkmale. Mahl, meal, and its compounds have e in the plural: das Mittagsmahl, the dinner, die Mittagsmäle.

4. The simple vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are, in this declension, changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*:—

(a) In all those words which have *er* in the plural: as, *der Mann*, *die Männer*; *das Kind*, *die Kinder*; *das Buch*, *die Bücher*; *das Haupt*, *die Hämpter*.

(b) In the following masculines, which form the plural in *e*, like *Baum*, *Fluß*, *Fuß*: *der Abt*, the abbot; *die Lebte*; *der Abdruck*, the impression, copy; *die Abdrücke*; *der Altar*, the altar; *die Altäre*; *Anfang*, beginning; *Auftrag*, offer; *Arzt*, physician; *Äst*, branch; *Auftrag*, commission; *Ausdruck*, expression; *Ausgang*, egress; *Bach*, brook; *Balg*, brat; *Ball*, ball; *Band*, volume; *Bart*, beard; *Bauch*, belly; *Baum*, tree; *Bischof*, bishop; *Block*, block; *Bock*, buck; *Brand*, brand, firebrand; *Brauch*, custom; *Bruch*, rupture; *Busch*, shrub; *Canal*, canal; *Cardinal*, cardinal; *Choral*, choral music; *Damm*, dam; *Dampf*, steam; *Darm*, gut; *Diebstahl*, theft; *Dunst*, vapour; *Einfluß*, influence; *Eingang*, entrance; *Einwurf*, objection; *Fall*, case; *Floh*, flea; *Fluch*, curse; *Flug*, flight; *Fluß*, river; *Frosch*, frog; *Fuchs*, fox; *Fund*, discovery; *Fuß*, foot; *Gang*, passage; *Gast*, guest; *Gebrauch*, custom; *Geruch*, smell; *Gesang*, song; *Grund*, ground; *Guß*, gush; *Hahn*, cock; *Hals*, neck; *Hof*, court; *Hut*, hat; *Kahn*, boat; *Kampf*, fight; *Kauf*, purchase; *Klang*, sound; *Kloß*, dumpling; *Kloß*, log; *Knopf*, button; *Koch*, cook; *Kopf*, head; *Korb*, basket; *Krampf*, cramp; *Kranz*, wreath; *Kropf*, crop; *Krug*, pitcher; *Kuß*, kiss; *Kauf*, career; *Markt*, market; *Marsch*, march; *Morast*, bog; *Napf*, basin; *Pallast*, palace; *Papst*, pope; *Pass*, passport; *Plöck*, plug; *Plüug*, plough; *Platz*, place; *Probst*, provost; *Rank*, rank; *Rath*, counsel; *Raum*, space; *Rausch*, inebriation; *Röd*, coat; *Rumpf*, rump; *Saal*, saloon; *Saft*, juice; *Sarg*, coffin; *Saß*, sentence; *Saum*, hem; *Schall*, rogue; *Schäß*, treasure; *Schlag*, blow; *Schlauch*, leather-bag; *Schlund*, throat; *Schmaus*, feast; *Schopf*, tuft; *Schrank*, wardrobe; *Schurz*, apron; *Schuß*, shot; *Schwamm*, sponge; *Schwan*, swan; *Schwanl*, prank; *Schwanz*,

tail; **Schwarm**, swarm; **Schwung**, swing; **Schwur**, oath; **Sohn**, son; **Spaß**, joke; **Spruch**, sentence; **Sprung**, leap; **Stab**, staff; **Stall**, stable; **Stamm**, stem; **Stand**, station; **Stock**, stick; **Storch**, stork; **Stoß**, push; **Strang**, string; **Strauß**, shrub; **Strom**, stream; **Strumpf**, stocking; **Stuhl**, chair; **Sturm**, storm; **Sturz**, fall, ruin; **Sumpf**, bog; **Tanz**, dance; **Zurm**, steeple; **Ton**, sound; **Tops**, pot; **Trank**, drink; **Traum**, dream; **Trog**, trough; **Triumph**, triumph; **Umstand**, circumstance; **Vogt**, governor; **Vorhang**, curtain; **Vorrath**, store; **Vorschlag**, proposal; **Vorschuß**, advance of money; **Vorwand**, pretext; **Wall**, wall; **Weinstock**, vine; **Wolf**, wolf; **Wunsch**, wish; **Wurf**, cast; **Wurm**, worm; **Zahn**, tooth; **Baum**, bridle; **Baun**, hedge; **Zoll**, tax; **Zopf**, tail; **Zug**, procession; **Zustand**, condition; **Zwang**, compulsion. All these are declined like *der Baum*, *der Fluss*, *der Fuß*.

(c) Neuters, *das Arsenal*, the arsenal; *das Boot* (*die Böte*), the boat; *das Chor*, the choir; *das Floß*, the raft.

5. Some have in the plural different terminations, according to a difference in signification: *das Bett*, the bed, *die Betten*, the beds, *die Bettens*, bedding; *das Band*, the bond, *die Bände*, the chains, *die Bänder*, the ribbons; *das Ding*, the thing, *die Dinge*, generally, *die Dinger*, especially used of little children and animals; *die Kleinen Dinger*; *das Gesicht*, the sight, the face; *die Gesichte*, the visions, *die Gesichter*, the faces; *das Horn*, the horn, *die Horne*, different kinds of horn, *die Hörner*, the horns; *das Land*, the land, country; *die Lände*, the lands, countries in general, *die Länder*, the individual countries; *der Ort*, the place, *die Orte*, the places in general, *an allen Orten der Erde*, in all places of the earth; *die Dörter*, individual places; *die beiden Dörter in unserer Nachbarschaft*, the two places in our neighbourhood; *das Stück*, the piece, *die Stücke*, the pieces, *die Stücke*, the fragments; *das Wort*, the word, *die Worte*, words in general forming a sentence, *die Wörter*, single words, e. g. of the dictionary.

6. Some words belonging to this declension are declined by some authors, especially poets, after the third declension, e. g. *der Hahn*, gen. *des Hahns*, and *des Hahnen*: so *der Schwan*, the swan. Also *Mond*, moon, a poetical synonymous word for *Monat* is found declined, *der Mond*, *des Monden*:

Und ich gemächlich unterdessen
Hatt' einen Hahnen aufgegessen, *Goethe.*

And I had in the meanwhile, comfortably eaten a cock.

Biel kann geschehn in Eines Monden Lauf. *Raupach.*
Much may take place in the course of a month.

Dieses sey mein Schwanenlieb:
Herr, laß mich in Frieden fahren.

Let this be my swan's song: Lord, let me depart in peace.

The song of a dying person is called a swan's song, because an old tradition, handed down to us by poets, says that the swan sings before his death with a most harmonious voice.

Dulcia defecta modulater carmina lingua
Cycnus, cantator funeris ipse sui.

Remarks on the Declension of Foreign Substantives.

1. Substantives of Latin or Greek origin generally lose the original terminations, *a*, *e*, *es*, *os*, *us*, *um*: also *is* in those of the masculine gender; but in those of the feminine, *is* is changed into *e*: as, *Natur*, *Doctrin*, *Manual*, *Antagonist*, *Theolog*, *Philosoph*, *Advocat*, *Mandat*, *Activ*, *Plural*, *Corporal*, *Klasse*.

The termination *ium* is sometimes retained, sometimes dropped: as, *Studium*, *Evangelium*, *Princip*, *Adverb*. The following terminations undergo alterations: *ns* is changed into *nt*, *ntia* into *nj*, *itia* into *ij*, *tas* into *töt*, *io* into *ion*, *ia* into *ie*: as, *Protestant*, *Patient*, *Jurisprudenz*, *Miliz*, *Majestät*, *Portion*, *Familie*, *Melodie*. (The *ie* in *Familie* is pronounced

as two syllables, because in *ia* the *i* is short, and we lay the stress on *mi*, though that syllable is also short in Latin; but the *ie* in *Melodie* is pronounced as one syllable, because the *i* in *ia* has the accent.

2. The titles of persons ending in *or*, form the singular after the second, and the plural after the third declension: as, *der Doctor*, *des Doctors*, *die Doctoren*; *der Professor*, *des Professors*, *die Professoren*; *der Director*, *des Directors*, *die Directoren*.

3. Those substantives of the neuter gender which end in *tiv*, from the Latin *tivum*, are, in the singular, declined after the second, in the plural after the fourth declension: as, *das Substantiv*, *des Substantivs*, *die Substantive*; *das Objectiv*, *das Relativ*, *das Recitativ*, *das Passiv*, *das Activ*.

4. Those of the neuter gender, which have either retained the termination *ium* or dropped it, and many of those ending in *al* and *il*, from the Latin *ale* and *ile*, are in the singular, declined after the second declension, taking only an additional *s* in the genitive: *des Evangeliums*, *des Stübiums*, *des Abverbs*, *des Particips*, *des Kapitals*, *des Fossils*; but in the plural they retain their original *i*, and take the termination *en* through all cases: *die Evangelien*, *die Stübien*, *die Abverbien*, *die Participien*, *die Kapitalien*, *die Fossilien*, (*ien* pronounced as two syllables). Those however, which have dropped *ium*, and those in *al* and *il*, take also *e* only in the plural: *die Abverbe*, *die Kapitale*. In the same way *das Kleinob*, the jewel, plural *die Kleinobien*.

Note.—Words of Latin origin were formerly declined like Latin nouns: as, *das Evangelium*, *des Evangelii*, *dem Evangelio*, *die Evangelia*.

5. Those substantives of the masculine and neuter gender which are derived from modern languages, generally have an additional *s* in the genitive singular, and in all the cases of the plural, even in the dative: as, *das Genie*, *des Genies*,

die Genies; der Korb, des Körbs, die Körbs; das Sopha, des Sofhas, die Sofhas. Those however, ending in *ier*: *Officier*, an officer in the army; *Barbier*, barber; are now more frequently declined after the 4th declension, plural, die *Officiere*.

Note.—A great many substantives of foreign origin have been incorporated into the German language, and received a German form, such as, *Gentler*, *fenestra*; *Körper*, *corpus*; *pöbel*, *peuple*; *Pulver*, *pulvis*; *Minister*, *minister*; *Prinz*, *prince*. These are considered as true German words, and are declined accordingly.

Declension of Proper Names.

The inflection of proper names is indicated either by the definite article, or by the termination.

When the definite article is used, proper names remain unaltered in the singular number: as, *die Gedichte des Virgil*, the poems of Virgil; *der Bruder der Marie*, the brother of Mary.

When the definite article is not used, the names of females which end in *e* take *n's* in the genitive and *n* in the dative: as, *Marien's Bruber*, *Karolinen's Schwester*. *Ich habe es Marien gegeben*, I have given it to Mary.

The names of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *sch*, *t*, or *z*, take *en's* in the genitive: as, *Voss*, *Vossen's Üeberseßungen*; *Max*, *Maren's*; *Fritz*, *Fritzen's*.

The names of males and females ending in other letters than those above mentioned, take *s* in the genitive: *Heinrich*, *Heinrich's*, *Elisabeth*, *Elisabeth's*.

The above-mentioned names of males receive, in some provinces of Germany, *en* in the dative and accusative: as, *ich habe es Vossen gesagt*, I have told it to Voss; *ich habe Maren gesehen*, I have seen Max. This, however, is provincial, and ought not to be imitated. When the connection of the words

is of such a nature that the cases cannot easily be mistaken, the dative and accusative should be like the nominative; otherwise the definite article should be used to point out the case: e. g. the sentence: *Nun gab der Schiffs-Capitain Belzoni den Rath*, would be more clearly expressed: *Nun gab der Schiffs-Capitain dem Belzoni den Rath*, because *Belzoni* without the article might be taken for the nominative.

N. Karl der Große.	Jacob der Erste.
G. Karl's des Großen.	Jacob's des Ersten.
D. Karl dem Großen.	Jacob dem Ersten.
A. Karl den Großen.	Jacob den Ersten.

Foreign names ending in *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit no signs of declension. In Luther's translation of the Bible, which is used in all the German churches on the continent of Europe, as well as in London and America, these names have the Latin terminations of the genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative: *as*, *Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*; *Zacharias*, gen. and dat. *Zachariä*, acc. *Zacharium*; *Johannes*, *Johannis*, *Johanni*, *Johannem*; *Zachäus*, voc. *Zachäe*; and this mode of declining such names, is also followed by some modern writers. *Christus* is always declined in this way.

When a substantive, either a title or an appellative, stands before a proper name with an article or pronoun preceding, the proper name remains unaltered: *as*, *der Tod des großen Dichters Göthe*; *die Thaten des Kaisers Karl*; *die Schriften eines Philosophen Hegel*; *die Gedichte des Herrn Schlegel*. But it is declined, when the word which governs the case stands after the proper name: *as*, *Herrn Schlegel's Gedichte*; *Kaiser Karl's Thaten* (*Kaiser* for *Kaisers* for the sake of euphony); *des großen Philologen Wolf's Werke*.

Christian names remain unaltered when the surname follows, without being preceded by the term *von*, which denotes nobility. In this case the surname has the termination of the case: *as*, *Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln*. But when the surname

die Genies; der Korb, des Körbs, die Körbs; das Sopha, des Sofas, die Sofas. Those however, ending in *ier*: *Officier*, an officer in the army; *Barbier*, barber; are now more frequently declined after the 4th declension, plural, *die Officiere*.

Note.—A great many substantives of foreign origin have been incorporated into the German language, and received a German form, such as, *Gentler*, *fenestra*; *Körper*, *corpus*; *Pöbel*, *peuple*; *Pulver*, *pulvis*; *Minister*, *minister*; *Prinz*, *prince*. These are considered as true German words, and are declined accordingly.

Declension of Proper Names.

The inflection of proper names is indicated either by the definite article, or by the termination.

When the definite article is used, proper names remain unaltered in the singular number: as, *die Gedichte des Virgil*, the poems of Virgil; *der Bruder der Marie*, the brother of Mary.

When the definite article is not used, the names of females which end in *e* take *n's* in the genitive and *n* in the dative: as, *Marien's Bruder*, *Karolinen's Schwester*. *Ich habe es Marien gegeben*, I have given it to Mary.

The names of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *ch*, *t*, or *z*, take *en's* in the genitive: as, *Voss*, *Vossen's Übersetzungen*; *Max*, *Maren's*; *Fritz*, *Fritzen's*.

The names of males and females ending in other letters than those above mentioned, take *s* in the genitive: *Heinrich*, *Heinrich's*, *Elisabeth*, *Elisabeth's*.

The above-mentioned names of males receive, in some provinces of Germany, *en* in the dative and accusative: as, *ich habe es Vossen gesagt*, I have told it to Voss; *ich habe Maxen gesehen*, I have seen Max. This, however, is provincial, and ought not to be imitated. When the connection of the words

is of such a nature that the cases cannot easily be mistaken, the dative and accusative should be like the nominative; otherwise the definite article should be used to point out the case: e. g. the sentence: *Nun gab der Schiffs-Capitain Belzoni den Rath*, would be more clearly expressed: *Nun gab der Schiffs-Capitain dem Belzoni den Rath*, because *Belzoni* without the article might be taken for the nominative.

N. Karl der Große.	Jacob der Erste.
G. Karl's des Großen.	Jacob's des Ersten.
D. Karl dem Großen.	Jacob dem Ersten.
A. Karl den Großen.	Jacob den Ersten.

Foreign names ending in *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit no signs of declension. In Luther's translation of the Bible, which is used in all the German churches on the continent of Europe, as well as in London and America, these names have the Latin terminations of the genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative: *as. Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*; *Zacharias*, gen. and dat. *Zachariä*, acc. *Zachariam*; *Johannes*, *Johannis*, *Johanni*, *Johannem*; *Zachäus*, voc. *Zachäe*; and this mode of declining such names, is also followed by some modern writers. *Christus* is always declined in this way.

When a substantive, either a title or an appellative, stands before a proper name with an article or pronoun preceding, the proper name remains unaltered: *as. der Tod des großen Dichters Goethe*; *die Thaten des Kaisers Karl*; *die Schriften eines Philosophen Hegel*; *die Gedichte des Herrn Schlegel*. But it is declined, when the word which governs the case stands after the proper name: *as. Herrn Schlegel's Gedichte*; *Kaiser Karl's Thaten* (*Kaiser* for *Kaisers* for the sake of euphony); *des großen Philologen Wolf's Werke*.

Christian names remain unaltered when the surname follows, without being preceded by the term *von*, which denotes nobility. In this case the surname has the termination of the case: *as. Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln*. But when the surname

die Genies; der Korb, des Körbs, die Körbs; das Sopha, des Sofhas, die Sofhas. Those however, ending in *er*: *Officier*, an officer in the army; *Barbier*, barber; are now more frequently declined after the 4th declension, plural, *die Officiere*.

Note.—A great many substantives of foreign origin have been incorporated into the German language, and received a German form, such as, *Gentier*, *fenestra*; *Körper*, *corpus*; *Pöbel*, *peuple*; *Pulver*, *pulvis*; *Minister*, *minister*; *Prinz*, *prince*. These are considered as true German words, and are declined accordingly.

Declension of Proper Names.

The inflection of proper names is indicated either by the definite article, or by the termination.

When the definite article is used, proper names remain unaltered in the singular number: as, *die Gedichte des Virgil*, the poems of Virgil; *der Bruder der Marie*, the brother of Mary.

When the definite article is not used, the names of females which end in *e* take *n's* in the genitive and *n* in the dative: as, *Marien's Bruder*, *Karolinen's Schwester*. *Ich habe es Marien gegeben*, I have given it to Mary.

The names of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *ch*, *t*, or *z*, take *en's* in the genitive: as, *Voss*, *Vossen's Übersetzungen*; *Max*, *Maren's*; *Fritz*, *Fritzen's*.

The names of males and females ending in other letters than those above mentioned, take *s* in the genitive: *Heinrich*, *Heinrich's*, *Elisabeth*, *Elisabeth's*.

The above-mentioned names of males receive, in some provinces of Germany, *en* in the dative and accusative: as, *ich habe es Vossen gesagt*, I have told it to Voss; *ich habe Maxen gesehen*, I have seen Max. This, however, is provincial, and ought not to be imitated. When the connection of the words

is of such a nature that the cases cannot easily be mistaken, the dative and accusative should be like the nominative; otherwise the definite article should be used to point out the case: e. g. the sentence: *Nun gab der Schiff-Capitain Welzoni den Rath*, would be more clearly expressed: *Nun gab der Schiff-Capitain dem Welzoni den Rath*, because *Welzoni* without the article might be taken for the nominative.

N. Karl der Große.	Jacob der Erste.
G. Karl's des Großen.	Jacob's des Ersten.
D. Karl dem Großen.	Jacob dem Ersten.
A. Karl den Großen.	Jacob den Ersten.

Foreign names ending in *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit no signs of declension. In Luther's translation of the Bible, which is used in all the German churches on the continent of Europe, as well as in London and America, these names have the Latin terminations of the genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative: *as. Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*; *Zacharias*, gen. and dat. *Zachariä*, acc. *Zacharium*; *Johannes*, *Johannis*, *Johanni*, *Johannem*; *Zachäus*, voc. *Zachäe*; and this mode of declining such names, is also followed by some modern writers. *Christus* is always declined in this way.

When a substantive, either a title or an appellative, stands before a proper name with an article or pronoun preceding, the proper name remains unaltered: *as. der Tod des großen Dichters Goethe*; *die Thaten des Kaisers Karl*; *die Schriften eines Philosophen Hegel*; *die Gedichte des Herrn Schlegel*. But it is declined, when the word which governs the case stands after the proper name: *as. Herrn Schlegel's Gedichte*; *Kaiser Karl's Thaten* (*Kaiser* for *Kaisers* for the sake of euphony); *des großen Philologen Wolf's Werke*.

Christian names remain unaltered when the surname follows, without being preceded by the term *von*, which denotes nobility. In this case the surname has the termination of the case: *as. Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln*. But when the surname

die Genies; der Korb, des Körbs, die Körbs; das Sopha, des Sofhas, die Sofhas. Those however, ending in *er*: *Officier*, an officer in the army; *Barbier*, barber; are now more frequently declined after the 4th declension, plural, die *Officiere*.

Note.—A great many substantives of foreign origin have been incorporated into the German language, and received a German form, such as, *Gentier*, *fenestra*; *Körper*, *corpus*; *Pöbel*, *peuple*; *Pulver*, *pulvis*; *Minister*, *minister*; *Prinz*, *prince*. These are considered as true German words, and are declined accordingly.

Declension of Proper Names.

The inflection of proper names is indicated either by the definite article, or by the termination.

When the definite article is used, proper names remain unaltered in the singular number: as, *die Gedichte des Virgil*, the poems of Virgil; *der Bruder der Marie*, the brother of Mary.

When the definite article is not used, the names of females which end in *e* take *n's* in the genitive and *n* in the dative: as, *Marien's Bruder*, *Karolinen's Schwester*. *Ich habe es Marien gegeben*, I have given it to Mary.

The names of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *ch*, *t*, or *z*, take *en's* in the genitive: as, *Voss*, *Vossen's Übersetzungen*; *Max*, *Maren's*; *Fritz*, *Frißen's*.

The names of males and females ending in other letters than those above mentioned, take *s* in the genitive: *Heinrich*, *Heinrich's*, *Elisabeth*, *Elisabeth's*.

The above-mentioned names of males receive, in some provinces of Germany, *en* in the dative and accusative: as, *ich habe es Vossen gesagt*, I have told it to Voss; *ich habe Maxen gesehen*, I have seen Max. This, however, is provincial, and ought not to be imitated. When the connection of the words

is of such a nature that the cases cannot easily be mistaken, the dative and accusative should be like the nominative; otherwise the definite article should be used to point out the case: e. g. the sentence: *Nun gab der Schiff's-Capitain Belzoni den Rath,* would be more clearly expressed: *Nun gab der Schiff's-Capitain dem Belzoni den Rath,* because *Belzoni* without the article might be taken for the nominative.

N. Karl der Große.	Jacob der Erste.
G. Karl's des Großen.	Jacob's des Ersten.
D. Karl dem Großen.	Jacob dem Ersten.
A. Karl den Großen.	Jacob den Ersten.

Foreign names ending in *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit no signs of declension. In Luther's translation of the Bible, which is used in all the German churches on the continent of Europe, as well as in London and America, these names have the Latin terminations of the genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative: *as*, *Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*; *Zacharias*, gen. and dat. *Zachariä*, acc. *Zacharium*; *Johannes*, *Johannis*, *Johanni*, *Johannem*; *Zachäus*, voc. *Zachäe*; and this mode of declining such names, is also followed by some modern writers. *Christus* is always declined in this way.

When a substantive, either a title or an appellative, stands before a proper name with an article or pronoun preceding, the proper name remains unaltered: *as*, *der Tod des großen Dichters Götthe*; *die Thaten des Kaisers Karl*; *die Schriften eines Philosophen Hegel*; *die Gedichte des Herrn Schlegel*. But it is declined, when the word which governs the case stands after the proper name: *as*, *Herrn Schlegel's Gedichte*; *Kaiser Karl's Thaten* (*Kaiser* for *Kaisers* for the sake of euphony); *des großen Philologen Wolf's Werke*.

Christian names remain unaltered when the surname follows, without being preceded by the term *von*, which denotes nobility. In this case the surname has the termination of the case: *as*, *Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln*. But when the surname

die Genies; der Korb, des Korbs, die Körbs; das Sopha, des Sofhas, die Sofhas. Those however, ending in *er*: *Officier*, an officer in the army; *Barbier*, barber; are now more frequently declined after the 4th declension, plural, *die Officiere*.

Note.—A great many substantives of foreign origin have been incorporated into the German language, and received a German form, such as, *Gentier*, *fenestra*; *Körper*, *corpus*; *Pöbel*, *peuple*; *Pulver*, *pulvis*; *Minister*, *minister*; *Prinz*, *prince*. These are considered as true German words, and are declined accordingly.

Declension of Proper Names.

The inflection of proper names is indicated either by the definite article, or by the termination.

When the definite article is used, proper names remain unaltered in the singular number: as, *die Gedichte des Virgil*, the poems of Virgil; *der Bruder der Marie*, the brother of Mary.

When the definite article is not used, the names of females which end in *e* take *n's* in the genitive and *n* in the dative: as, *Marien's Bruder*, *Karolinen's Schwester*. *Ich habe es Marien gegeben*, I have given it to Mary.

The names of males ending in *s*, *ß*, *ch*, *t*, or *z*, take *en's* in the genitive: as, *Voss*, *Vossen's Übersetzungen*; *Max*, *Maren's*; *Fritz*, *Fritzen's*.

The names of males and females ending in other letters than those above mentioned, take *s* in the genitive: *Heinrich*, *Heinrich's*, *Elisabeth*, *Elisabeth's*.

The above-mentioned names of males receive, in some provinces of Germany, *en* in the dative and accusative: as, *ich habe es Vossen gesagt*, I have told it to Voss; *ich habe Maxen gesehen*, I have seen Max. This, however, is provincial, and ought not to be imitated. When the connection of the words

is of such a nature that the cases cannot easily be mistaken, the dative and accusative should be like the nominative; otherwise the definite article should be used to point out the case: e. g. the sentence: *Nun gab der Schiff-Capitain Belzoni den Rath*, would be more clearly expressed: *Nun gab der Schiff-Capitain dem Belzoni den Rath*, because *Belzoni* without the article might be taken for the nominative.

N. Karl der Große.	Jacob der Erste.
G. Karl's des Großen.	Jacob's des Ersten.
D. Karl dem Großen.	Jacob dem Ersten.
A. Karl den Großen.	Jacob den Ersten.

Foreign names ending in *as*, *es*, *is*, *us*, admit no signs of declension. In Luther's translation of the Bible, which is used in all the German churches on the continent of Europe, as well as in London and America, these names have the Latin terminations of the genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative: *as. Christus*, gen. *Christi*, dat. *Christo*, acc. *Christum*; *Zacharias*, gen. and dat. *Zachariä*, acc. *Zachariam*; *Johannes*, *Johannis*, *Johanni*, *Johannem*; *Zachäus*, voc. *Zachäe*; and this mode of declining such names, is also followed by some modern writers. *Christus* is always declined in this way.

When a substantive, either a title or an appellative, stands before a proper name with an article or pronoun preceding, the proper name remains unaltered: *as. der Job des großen Dichters Goethe*; *die Thaten des Kaisers Karl*; *die Schriften eines Philosophen Hegel*; *die Gedichte des Herrn Schlegel*. But it is declined, when the word which governs the case stands after the proper name: *as. Herrn Schlegel's Gedichte*; *Kaiser Karl's Thaten* (*Kaiser* for *Kaisers* for the sake of euphony); *des großen Philologen Wolf's Werke*.

Christian names remain unaltered when the surname follows, without being preceded by the term *von*, which denotes nobility. In this case the surname has the termination of the case: *as. Christian Fürchtegott Gellert's Fabeln*. But when the surname

is preceded by von, the last christian name takes that termination: *Friedrich's von Schiller sämmtliche Werke.*

The names of countries and places (except those which end in s or ss) take s in the genitive: as, *Deutschland's Zustand*, or *der Zustand Deutschlands*, the condition of Germany; *Hamburg's Handel*, the trade of Hamburg. But instead of saying *Paris's*, *Grätz's Einwohner*, it is better to say, *die Einwohner von Paris*, *von Grätz*. Before names of countries of the feminine gender, the definite article must be used, and the genitive stands after the word which governs it: as, *der Handel der Türkei*.

If the plural of proper names be wanted, those not ending in e, el, en, er, generally take e: as, *die Stolberge*, *die Salzmanns*, *die Leibnize*; those ending in el, en, er, remain unaltered: *die Schillers*, *die Seezeen*, *die Schlegels*; and those ending in e take n: *die Götzen*, *die Schulzen*, *die Marien*, *die Carolinen*. The dative plural has always n.

Note.—When the plural of proper names is used, not to express single individuals, but a whole family, s is generally added to the singular: as, *die Sieveking's* sind nach Deutschland gegangen, Mr. Sieveking and family are gone to Germany; *bei den Schunks habe ich manchen vergnügten Abend zugebracht*, with the Schunks I have spent many a pleasant evening.

Additional Remarks on the Declension of Substantives.

1. The following words do not admit of a plural number in German, because they express, with the exception of a few, abstract ideas:—

<i>die Ankunft</i> , arrival.	<i>das Bestreben</i> , the endeavour.
<i>der Anschein</i> , the appearance.	<i>der BUND</i> , alliance.
<i>das Ansehen</i> , authority.	<i>der Dank</i> , thanks.
<i>der Argwohn</i> , suspicion.	<i>der Druck</i> , oppression.
<i>die Asche</i> , ashes.	<i>die Ehre</i> , honor.
<i>der Beginn</i> , beginning.	<i>das Einkommen</i> , revenue.

das Entzücken, rapture.	der Segen, the blessing.
das Elend, misery.	der Strand, strand.
der Empfang, receipt.	der Streit, dispute.
die Flucht, flight.	der Sturz, fall.
die Furcht, fear.	der Zabel, reproach.
das Glück, fortune.	der Tausch, exchange.
die Gnade, mercy.	der Tod, death.
der Gram, grief.	der Trost, consolation.
der Haber, dispute.	das Unrecht, injustice.
der Jammer, misery.	das Unglück, misfortune.
der Kummer, affliction.	der Unterricht, instruction.
das Leben, life.	der Urlaub, furlough.
die Liebe, love.	der Verdacht, suspicion.
das Lob, praise.	das Vergehen, fault.
der Lohn, reward.	das Vergnügen, pleasure.
der Mund, mouth.	das Verlangen, wish.
der Mord, murder.	der Verstand, understanding.
die Pracht, splendour.	der Verdruss, vexation.
der Rath, advice.	die Vorsicht, precaution.
der Raub, spoil.	der Wohn, fancy.
der Sand, sand.	der Zank, quarrel.
der Schein, appearance.	der Zwang, constraint.
der Schmuck, ornament.	der Zwist, dispute.

From several of the above-mentioned words, other substantives have been formed to express the concrete idea ; and these admit of a plural.

das Bestreben, die Bestrebung, plural die Bestrebungen.
der Bund, das Bündniß, pl. die Bündnisse.
der Dank, die Dankagung, pl. die Dankagungen.
der Druck, die Bedrückung, pl. die Berücklungen.
die Ehre, die Ehrenbezeugung, pl. die Ehrenbezeugungen.
der Kummer, die Bekümmerniß, pl. die Bekümmernisse.
das Lob, die Lobeserhebung, pl. die Lobeserhebungen.
der Lohn, die Belohnung, pl. die Belohnungen.

der Mord, die Mordthat, pl. die Mordthaten.
 der Rath, council, pl. die Rathversammlungen.
 der Rath, advice, pl. die Rathschläge.
 der Segen, blessing, pl. die Segnungen.
 der Streit, die Streitigkeit, pl. die Streitigkeiten.
 der Tausch, die Austauschung, pl. die Austauschungen.
 der Tod, der Todesfall, pl. die Todesfälle.
 der Trost, die Erdtung, pl. die Erdstungen.
 das Unglück, der Unglücksfall, pl. die Unglücksfälle.
 das Vergehen, die Vergehung, pl. die Vergehungen.
 das Vergnügen, die Vergnigung, pl. die Vergnigungen.
 die Vorsicht, pl. die Vorsichtsmaßregeln.
 der Zank, die Zänkerei, pl. die Zänkereien.
 der Zwist, die Zwistigkeit, pl. die Zwistigkeiten.

2. The following names of plants do not admit the plural number :—

der Kohl, cabbage.	der Hafer, oats.
der Hopfen, hops.	das Unkraut, weeds.
der Knoblauch, garlick.	der Flachs, flax.
der Hanf, hemp.	die Gerste, barley.
der Weizen, wheat.	der Klee, clover.

Cabbages in the plural are expressed by *Kohlköpfe*.

3. Most of those words which include the idea of weight, measure, or number, do not take the inflection of the plural when used as such: as,

das Buch, a quire.	Sechs Buch Papier, six quires of paper.
das Bünd, the bundle.	Fünf Bünd Stroh, five bundles of straw.
das Dutzend, the dozen.	Zwölf Dutzend Äpfel, twelve dozen of apples.
das Fäß, the cask.	Zehn Fäß Bier, ten casks of beer.
das Glas, the glass.	Zwei Glas Wein, two glasses of wine.
der Grad, the degree.	Hundert Grad, a hundred degrees.
das Klafter, the fathom.	Neun Klafter tief, nine fathoms deep.

das Mal, mole, mark,	In zweimal, dreimal, twice, three times, &c.
der Mann, the man.	Hundert Mann Reiterei, a hundred men cavalry.
die Mark, the mark.	Zehn Mark, ten marks.
das Paar, the pair.	Zwei Paar Schuhe, two pair of shoes.
das Pfund, the pound.	Vier Pfund Zucker, four pounds of sugar.
das Schöck, three score.	Zwei Schöck Birnen, six score of pears.
das Stück, the piece.	Sieben Stück Tuch, seven pieces of cloth.
das Zoll, the inch.	Fünf Zoll, five inches.

The following feminines, and those which express a measure of time, as die Stunde, the hour ; die Minute, the minute, are excepted.

die Elle, the yard.	Sechs Ellen Tuch, six yards of cloth.
die Flasche, the bottle.	Zwei Flaschen Wein, two bottles of wine.
die Meile, the mile.	Sieben Meilen, seven miles.
die Tonne, the tun.	Sechs Tonnen Kalk, six tons of lime.
die Tasse, the cup.	Zwei Tassen Kaffee, two cups of coffee.
die Unze, the ounce.	Vier Unzen Seide, four ounces of silk.

4. Those substantives, the measure, weight, or number of which is expressed by the above-mentioned words, are not put in the genitive, but in the same case with the preceding word, unless they are used partitively : as, sechs Pfund Zucker, six pounds of sugar ; fünf Pfund Thee, five pounds of tea ; eine Tasse Kaffee, a cup of coffee ; ein Glas Wein, a glass of wine ; ich werde Ihnen morgen zwei Flaschen (acc. case) alten Rheinwein schicken, I shall send you to-morrow two bottles of old hock ; mit zehn Pfund (dat. case) gutem Zucker kann man viele Flaschen Johannisbeerwein machen, with ten pounds of good sugar, many bottles of currant-wine can be made. But when a pronoun precedes them they are used partitively and stand in the genitive case, or in the dative case with the preposition von : as, sechs Pfund dieses Zuckers, or von diesem Zucker, six

pounds of this sugar; eine Tasse von diesem Kaffee, a cup of this coffee; ein Glas von jenem Weine, a glass of that wine.

Note.—The word *Paar*, pair, couple, is neither declined, nor does it affect the substantive which follows it, and even the indefinite article before it remains unaltered: as, *ein Paar Schuhe*, a pair of shoes; *vor ein Paar Tagen*, a few days ago; *mit ein Paar Zeilen*, with a few lines; *mit vier guten Paar Schuhen*, with four good pair of shoes.

5. The following words are not used in the singular number.

die Bekleider or Hosen, trousers.

die Briefschafsen, papers, letters.

die Einkünfte, the revenue.

die Eltern, parents.

die Fußtapsen, the footsteps.

die Gebrüder, the brothers.

die Geschwister, brothers and sisters.

die Gefälle, the rents.

die Gliedmaßen, the limbs.

die Hefen, yeast.

die Kosten, and Unkosten, expense.

die Leute, people.

die Masern or Rötheln, the measles.

die Molken, whey.

die Ränke, intrigues.

die Schranken, bounds.

die Sporeteln, fees.

die Treber, lea.

die Trümmer, the ruins.

die Truppen, the troops.

die Zeitschafte, the occurrences of the times.

die Fassten, Lent.

die Ferien, vacation, holidays.

Ostern, Easter.

Pfingsten, Whitsuntide.

Weihnaachten, Christmas.

CHAPTER IV.

COMPOSITION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Compound substantives consist of two components. One is called the *determined*, because it is determined or defined by another; and the other is called the *determinative*, because it determines or defines another. A component may be itself a compound word: e. g. *Handschuh* in *Handschuhmacher*; nevertheless such a compound is considered as consisting of two components only: *Handschuh-macher*. In compounds, the components of which are proper names or titles, or a mixture of foreign and German words, the components are generally separated by the hyphen, and each of them has a capital initial letter: as, *Sachsen=Weimar*, *Holstein=Oldenburg*, *Fürst=Bischof*, *Kaiserinn=Königinn*, *Zeitung=Lexicon*.

Compounds are formed by making either a substantive or an adjective, or a numeral, or an infinitive mood, or a preposition, or a particle, or the pronoun *selbst*, the determinative component: as, *der Seiltänzer*, the rope-dancer; *der Apfelbaum*, the apple-tree; *der Geburtstag*, the birth-day; *der Eigensinn*, the self-will; *der Hochmuth*, haughtiness; *der Großvater*, the grandfather; *der Zweikampf*, the duel; *das Viereck*, the square; *der Fahrweg*, the carriage-road; *die Reitbahn*, the riding-school; *der Umgang*, intercourse; *die Abreise*, the departure; *der Zufall*, the accident; *die Selbstsucht*, selfishness.

Note.—In a few words, an adjective and the infinitive mood *seyn*, used substantively, constitute the determined: as, *das Abendrot*, for *die Abendröthe*, the evening-red; *das Bewußt-seyn*, the sense, &c.

In some compounds the determinative component remains unaltered: as, *Weinglas*, wine-glass; *Baumwolle*, cotton; *Handschuh*, glove; *Strumpfband*, garter; *Zahnbürste*, tooth-brush; *Buchbinder*, bookbinder; *Mondchein*, moonshine; *Uhrtasche*, sob; *Landmann*, peasant, farmer.

In others the termination of the determinative component is altered in the following ways:—

1. The letters *e*, *en*, of the unaccented final syllables (the former of substantives, the latter of the infinitive mood) are frequently dropped: as, *die Erdbeere*, the strawberry; *das Strafgeiß*, the penalty; *der Taufstein*, the font; *das Mühlrad*, the mill-wheel; *der Fährweg*, the carriage-road; *die Reithahn*, the riding-school; from *Erde*, earth; *Strafe*, punishment; *Taufe*, baptism; *Mühle*, mill; *fahren*, to ride in a carriage; *reiten*, to ride on horseback.

2. Some take the termination of the genitive plural, especially those which imply the plural number: as, *der Rattenfänger*, the rat-catcher; *das Taubenhaus*, the pigeon-house; *das Hühnerhaus*, the hen-house; *der Bienenkorb*, the bee-hive; *der Pferdearzt*, the farrier; *der Eierkuchen*, the omelet; *der Bücherschrank*, the book-case; *die Wüberschrift*, hieroglyphic writing; *das Tagebuch*, the journal; *die Kinderstube*, the nursery; *die Knabenschule*, the boys' school.

3. Some take the termination of the genitive singular, especially those which convey the singular number: as, *der Gottesdienst*, divine service; *die Herzensangst*, the anguish of the heart; *die Lodesnoth*, the agony of death; *das Himmelslicht*, the light of heaven; *der Heldenmuth*, heroic courage; *die Friedensfeier*, the celebration of peace; *die Leibesstrafe*, corporeal punishment; *das Siegeslied*, the triumphal song; *der Landsmann*, the countryman. The termination of the genitive *s* is also given to many nouns of the feminine gender, especially to those ending in *urt*, *eid*, *heit*, *shaft*, *ung*, *tät*, *ion*: as, *Geburtstag*, birth-day; *Arbeitshaus*, workhouse; *Hochzeitstag*, wedding-day; *Wahrheitsliebe*, love of truth; *Freundschaftsdienst*, a service of friendship; *Handlungsbieder*, a clerk; *Majestätsrecht*, right of royalty; *Religionsfreiheit*, religious liberty. Several of the feminine gender ending in the unaccented *e*, take the termination of an antiquated genitive singular *en*:

as, das Freudenfest, the festival of joy; der Ehrenschänder, a slanderer; die Küchenmagd, the kitchen-maid; die Taschenuhr, the watch.

4. A few take the termination *el*: as, die Heidelbeere, the bilberry, from *Heide*, heath; das Findelkind, the foundling, from *finden*, to find.

5. Of some adjectives and substantives, compounds have been formed, in which the adjective retains the letters of inflection through all cases: as, der Hohenpriester, ein Hohenpriester, high priest, gen. des Hohenpriesters; die Hohenpriesterin; der Geheimrat, ein Geheimrat. This, however, is not common. The adjective is generally uninflected in all cases: as, der Geheimschreiber, the private secretary, des Geheimschreibers; der Großherzog, the grand-duke, des Großherzogs; der Kleinhanbel, the retail trade.

CHAPTER V.

THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Preliminary Remarks.

1. Almost all the primitive adjectives are monosyllables: as, *jung*, young; *alt*, old; *groß*, great; *gut*, good; *arm*, poor; *kalt*, cold; *hart*, hard; *dick*, thick; *fest*, firm.

2. Some are formed by the prefixes *be* and *ge*: as, *bequem*, convenient; *behend*, quick; *gerecht*, just; *geheim*, secret; *getreu*, faithful.

3. Numerous adjectives are formed from other words or parts of speech, by giving them certain terminations. These terminations are—1. *ig*: as, *fleißig*, industrious; *ruhig*, quiet;

günstig, favorable; salzig, salt, briny; heutig, now-a-days; baldig, speedy; from *der Fleiß*, die Ruhe, die Kunst, das Salz, *heute*, (adv.) to-day; bald, (adv.) soon;—2. *icht*: as, salzig, tasting like salt; kupfericht, looking like copper;—3. *isch*: as, diebisch, thievish; Französisch, French; himmlisch, heavenly; irdisch, earthly; neidisch, envious; Lutherisch, Lutheran; theologisch, theological; kindisch, childish; from *der Dieb*, *der Franzose*, *der Himmel*, die Erde, der Reid, Luther, *der Theolog*, das Kind;—4. *lich*: as, ehrlich, honest; wörtlich, literal; väterlich, paternal; kindlich, filial; from *die Ehre*, das Wort, *der Vater*, das Kind;—5. *bar*: as, denkbar, imaginable; fehlbar, fallible; furchtbar, dreadful; dankbar, grateful; from *denken*, *fehlen*, *fürchten*, *danken*;—6. *sam*: as, biegsam, pliable; rathsam, advisable; wachsam, watchful; from *biegen*, *rathen*, *wachen*;—7. *haft*: as, *krankhaft*, diseased; boshaft, wicked; meisterhaft, masterly; from *krank*, *böse*, *der Meister*;—8. *en* and *ern*: these syllables denote the material of which a thing consists: as, golden, seiden, metallen, irben, zinnern, hölzern; from *das Gold*, gold; *die Seide*, silk; *das Metall*, metal; *die Erde*, earth; *das Zinn*, tin; *das Holz*, wood. The syllables *icht*, *lich*, and *haft*, were originally adverbial.—See the adverbs.

Note 1.—The syllable *isch* is used to form adjectives from the names of nations: as, Französisch, French, from *der Franzose*; Russisch, Russian, from *der Rüss*; Preußisch, Prussian, from *der Preuse*; Schweizerisch, Swiss, from *der Schweizer*; Holländisch, Dutch, from *der Holländer*; Schottisch, Scotch, from *der Schotte*; Irlandisch, Irish, from *der Irlander*; Portugiesisch, Portuguese, from *der Portugiese*; Englisch, English, is an exception; it ought to be *Engländisch*. Of those names of countries which end in *ien*: as, Spanien, Brasilien, Indien, &c., the names of the nations ought to be formed by changing *en* into *er*; and the adjectives by changing *ier* into *isch*. This, however, is not the case with all; for the majority of German authors say, Indianer, Indianisch; Brasilianer, Brasilianisch;

Italiâner, Italiânisch; Castilianer, Castilianisch; whilst they say, Spanier, Spanisch; Gardinier, Gardinisch; Asturier, Asturisch. Such adjectives ought to be written with capital initial letters.

Note 2.—Also from names of towns and persons, adjectives are formed by the syllable *isch*. This syllable is added to the name of the town; but those ending in *en* generally lose these letters: as, Hannôverisch, from Hannover; Berlinisch, from Berlin; Gothaish, from Gotha; Bremisch, from Bremen; Wallensteinisch, from Wallenstein.

Note 3.—The words used to express the inhabitants of towns, generally are formed by adding *er* to the name of the town; but those ending in *en* change, with a few exceptions, *en* into *er*; and those ending in *er* receive the additional termination *erer*: die Hamburger, die Londoner, die Berliner, die Gothaer, die Bremer, die Göttinger, die Hannoveraner, die Teureraner; it is, however, customary to say die Meissener, die Dresdener, not die Meißer, die Dresber.

Note 4.—Such appellations of the inhabitants as are formed from names of towns by the addition of *er*, or the change of *en* into *er*, are used again as adjectives: as, die Pariser Bluthochzeit, the massacre of Paris; die Frankfurter Zeitung, the Frankfort newspaper; die Londoner Börse, the Royal Exchange of London; Hamburger Rindfleisch, Hambro' beef; die Bremer Münze, the coin of Bremen; die Göttinger Bibliothek, the library of Göttingen. These, however, not being proper adjectives, are neither declined, nor used in a predicative sense. They only express use or property, whilst those which are formed by *isch* express quality or peculiarity. We can say die Berliner Mode, the fashion of the Berliners, but not die Mode ist Berliner. Diese Mode ist Berlinisch means, this fashion is peculiar to Berlin.

4. Of adjectives diminutives are also formed, by adding the syllable *lich*, and changing *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*: as, blau,

blue, bläulich; roth, red, röthlich; schwarz, black, schwärzlich; frank, sick, fränklich; schwach, weak, schwächlich; süß, sweet, süßlich; sauer, sour, süsserlich.

5. The German language is very rich in compound adjectives, the first component of which is either a substantive or adjective, a numeral or verb: as, geistreich, talented; dunkelblau, dark-blue; altklug, knowing beyond one's age; einäugig, having one eye; denkwürdig, memorable. Adjectives and numerals constituting the first component remain unaltered, but when a substantive is the first component, it either remains unaltered (see the Composition of Substantives): as, geistreich, eisfält; or it receives the termination of an oblique case: as, gnadentreich, rich in grace, reich an Gnade (Gnaden is the ancient dative); hülsebedürftig, destitute, bedürftig der Hülse. Infinitive moods either lose the termination en, as in the composition of substantives; or receive an additional s: denkwürdig, memorable; liebenswürdig, amiable; sehenswerth, worthy to be seen.

Declension of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives may be used as attributes or as predicates. When I say, die schöne Blume, the beautiful flower, the adjective is used as an attribute, or in the attributive sense. But when I say, die Blume ist schön, the flower is beautiful, the adjective is a predicate (see the Arrangement of Words).

2. Adjectives are not declined when used as *predicates*: they remain unaltered whether they refer to substantives of the masculine, feminine, or neuter gender, singular or plural number: as, der Mann ist gut, the man is good; der Garten ist schön, the garden is beautiful; die Frau ist gut, the woman is good; die Blume ist schön, the flower is beautiful; das Kind ist gut, the child is good; das Pferd ist schön, the horse is

beautiful ; die Männer sind gut, die Frauen sind gut, die Kinder sind gut, die Gärten sind schön, die Blumen sind schön, die Pferde sind schön ; ich nenne das Kind schön, I call the child beautiful ; ich nenne die Kinder schön ; das Kind wird groß, the child grows tall, die Kinder werden groß. They also remain unaltered when they stand in apposition : der Knabe, klug und artig, the boy, prudent and polite ; for this is an elliptical mode of expression for welcher Klug und artig ist, who is prudent and polite : consequently, adjectives placed in apposition are treated as predicates. If a particular stress is to be laid on adjectives used as predicates, they begin the sentence, and the subject stands after the copula (see the Arrangement of Words) ; but they are not altered : gut ist der Mann, schön habe ich das Kind genannt, I have called the child beautiful.

3. The following adjectives are used as predicates only : abhold, averse; angst, anxious, fearful; anheftig, pledged by promise; bereit, ready; feind, hostile; gar, done, boiled enough; gänge und gäbe, current; eingeben^t and uneingeben^t, mindful and unmindful; getrost, of good cheer; gewürtig, aware; gram, bearing animosity; habhaft, in possession of; irre, wrong, astray; kund, known; leid, distressing; noth, needful; nütze, useful; quitt, rid of; theilhaft, participating; verlustig, having forfeited. None of these words are used in an attributive sense before a substantive. We say, der Mann ist immer bereit, mir zu dienen, the man is always ready to serve me ; but it is not correct to say, er ist ein mir zu dienen bereiter Mann, for er ist ein Mann, immer bereit mir zu dienen.

4. Adjectives are *declined* when they are used in the attributive sense before a substantive, or as substantives. In the attributive sense they always stand before the substantive, either alone, guter Vater, good father ; or they are preceded either by an article, der gute Vater ; or by a pronoun, mein guter Vater, my good father ; or by a numeral, either definite or indefinite,

Gin guter **Bater**, one good father; **mancher** gute **Bater**, many a good father. But the articles, the declinable pronouns, and numerals, definite and indefinite, are of two kinds:—1. Such as indicate the gender: **der**, **die**, **das**, **the**; **dieser**, **diese**, **dieses**, **this**; **welcher**, **welche**, **welches**, **who**, **which**; **mancher**, **manche**, **manches**, **many a one**; **jeder**, **jede**, **jedes**, **every one**, &c.;—2. Such as do not indicate the gender: **ein**, **eine**, **ein**, **a**; **mein**, **meine**, **mein**, **my**; **kein**, **keine**, **kein**, **no**. For this reason the declension of adjectives has three forms.

The First Form

Is used when the adjective is not preceded by any article, pronoun, or numeral. In this form it ends in the characteristic letters which indicate the cases and genders, like the definite article.

Sing.			Plur.
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N. er.	e.	es.	e.
G. es.	er.	es.	er.
D. em.	er.	em.	en.
A. en.	e.	es.	e.

Examples.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Fem.</i>		
N. guter Mann.	gute Frau.	gutes Kind.
G. gutes Mannes.	guter Frau.	gutes Kindes.
D. gutem Manne.	guter Frau.	gutem Kinde.
A. guten Mann.	gute Frau.	gutes Kind.

Plur.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. gute Männer.	Frauen.	Kinder.
G. guter Männer.	Frauen.	Kinder.
D. guten Männern.	Frauen.	Kindern.
A. gute Männer.	Frauen.	Kinder.
Sing.		
N. schöner Garten.	schöne Blume.	schönes Pferd.
G. schönes Gartens.	schöner Blume.	schönes Pferdes.
D. schönem Garten.	schöner Blume.	schönem Pferde.
A. schönen Garten.	schöne Blume.	schönes Pferd.
Plur.		
N. schöne Gärten.	schöne Blumen.	schöne Pferde.
G. schöner Gärten.	schöner Blumen.	schöner Pferde.
D. schönen Gärten.	schönen Blumen.	schönen Pferden.
A. schöne Gärten.	schöne Blumen.	schöne Pferde.

Observations.

1. When a substantive is preceded by two or more adjectives, without an article, pronoun, or numeral, the re-occurrence of *s*, *r*, and *m*, in the genitive singular and plural, and the dative singular, is avoided by many authors for the sake of euphony. These letters then occur in the above-mentioned cases only in the first adjective, and in the other adjective or adjectives they are changed into *n*. The re-occurrence of *r*, however, is considered as less objectionable than that of *s*: as, *der Werth feines, starken, blauen Lüches*, the value of fine, stout, blue cloth; *ein Rock von seinem, starken, blauen Lüche*, a coat of fine, stout, blue cloth.

2. Some authors frequently, but incorrectly, change the *s* of the genitive singular into *n*, though only one adjective precedes the substantive: *süßes Weines*, for *süßes Weines*. This change, however, always takes place in those compound words which are used as adverbs and written as one word: *meistenthells*,

for the most part; *größtentheils*, for the greatest part; *widrigerfalls*, in a contrary case, &c. But this change ought not to occur when the adverbial idea is expressed by two words used as a real adjective and substantive: as, *gutes Mutheß*, of good cheer; *gerades Wegeß*, straightway; *heutiges Zages*, now-a-days.

3. Some authors give *n* to the vocative case of the plural: *lieben Leute* for *liebe Leute*.

The Second Form

Is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, and those pronouns and indefinite numerals which, like the definite article, indicate the gender: as, *der*, *die*, *das*, (def. art.); *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses*, (dem. pron.); *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, (rel. pron.); *mancher*, *manche*, *manches*; *jeder*, *jebe*, *jedes*, (indef. num. or pron.). In this form the re-occurrence of the letters *r*, *s*, *m*, is avoided for the sake of euphony. When the article, pronoun, or numeral, which precedes the adjective, ends in *r*, *s*, or *m*, these letters are, in the adjective, changed into *n* in the genitive and dative; and the *r* and *s* which occur in the nominative and accusative, are entirely rejected. In the plural the adjective has the termination *en* through all its cases.

When more than one adjective precede a substantive, they have all the same termination in this form of declension: *der gute, alte, redliche Mann*, the good, old, honest man; *gen. des guten, alten, redlichen Mannes*.

Examples.

	Sing.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>der gute Mann.</i>	<i>die gute Frau.</i>	<i>das gute Kind.</i>
G. <i>des guten Mannes.</i>	<i>der guten Frau.</i>	<i>des guten Kindes.</i>
D. <i>dem guten Manne.</i>	<i>der guten Frau.</i>	<i>dem guten Kinde.</i>
A. <i>den guten Mann.</i>	<i>die gute Frau.</i>	<i>das gute Kind.</i>

Plur.

Masc.

N. die guten Männer.
G. der guten Männer.
D. den guten Männern.
A. die guten Männer.

Fem.

Frauen.
Frauen.
Frauen.
Frauen.

Neut.

Kinder.
Kinder.
Kindern.
Kinder.

Sing.

N. dieser schöne Garten. diese -e Blume. dieses -e Pferd.
G. dieses schönen Gartens. dieser -en Blume. dieses -en Pferdes.
D. diesem schönen Garten. dieser -en Blume. diesem -en Pferde.
A. diesen schönen Garten. diese -e Blume. dieses -e Pferd.

Plur.

N. diese schönen Gärten. diese -en Blumen. diese -en Pferde.
G. dieser schönen Gärten. dieser -en Blumen. dieser -en Pferde.
D. diesen schönen Gärten. diesen -en Blumen. diesen -en Pferden.
A. diese schönen Gärten. diese -en Blumen. diese -en Pferde.

Observations.

1. The pronouns *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, which ; *solcher*, *solche*, *solches*, such ; and *mancher*, *manche*, *manches*, many a one, are sometimes, especially in poetry, used without the terminations of inflection before an adjective. In this case the adjective has the termination which indicates the gender : as, *welch harter Spruch*, what a hard sentence ; *solch große Güte*, such great kindness ; *manch schönes Bild*, many a fine picture.

2. Most authors leave out, in the nominative and accusative cases of the plural, the *n* after *welche*, which ; *solche*, such ; *einige*, *etliche*, some ; *keine*, no ; *viele*, many ; *wenige*, few ; *alle*, all ; *mehrere*, *manche*, several, many : as, *manche gute Leute*, many good people ; *alle gute Menschen*, all good men. *Solcher*, *solche*, *solches*, such, is by many considered as an adjective, and not as a pronoun. In this case it does not affect the adjective in the singular : *ein solches schönes Haus*, such a beautiful house ; *ein solcher guter Mann*. But it is a

pronoun, and according to analogy it ought to affect the adjective like *jeder*, and *ein jeder*, every, each.

3. Some participles which are used in a demonstrative capacity, seem to affect the declension of the adjective in the same way as the pronouns: *befagt*, aforesaid; *folgend*, following; *gebacht*, afore-mentioned: *befagter alte Mann*, the said old man; *folgendes schöne Werk*, the following beautiful work; *gebachtes neue Haus*, the new house mentioned.

The Third Form

Is used when the adjective is preceded by the indefinite article, *ein*, *eine*, *ein*, or by the definite numeral *Ein*, *Eine*, *Ein*, one; or by a possessive pronoun, *mein*, *dein*, *sein*; *unser*, *euer*, *ihr*; or by the indefinite numeral, *lein*, *leine*, *lein*; none of which indicate the masculine and the neuter gender in the nominative singular: for this reason, the adjective has, in this form, the characteristic termination in the nominative singular as in the first form; but in the other cases singular and plural, it has, with the exception of the neuter of the accusative, the same terminations as in the second form, because the above-mentioned articles, pronouns, and numerals receive by inflection, the characteristic letters in the other cases.

Examples.

Sing.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>ein guter Mann.</i>	<i>eine gute Frau.</i>	<i>ein gutes Kind.</i>
G. <i>eines guten Mannes.</i>	<i>einer guten Frau.</i>	<i>eines guten Kindes.</i>
D. <i>einem guten Manne.</i>	<i>einer guten Frau.</i>	<i>einem guten Kinde.</i>
A. <i>einen guten Mann.</i>	<i>eine gute Frau.</i>	<i>ein gutes Kind.</i>

Sing.

N. <i>mein schöner Garten.</i>	<i>meine -e Blume.</i>	<i>mein -es Pferd.</i>
G. <i>meines schönen Gartens.</i>	<i>meiner -en Blume.</i>	<i>meines -en Pferdes.</i>
D. <i>meinem schönen Garten.</i>	<i>meiner -en Blume.</i>	<i>meinem -en Pferde.</i>
A. <i>meinen schönen Garten.</i>	<i>meine -e Blume.</i>	<i>mein -es Pferd.</i>

Plur.

N. meine schönen Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.
G. meiner schönen Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.
D. meinen schönen Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferden.
A. meine schönen Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.

When a personal pronoun, *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, *sie*, occurs before an adjective, the adjective receives, according to the practice of most authors, the termination of this form: *ich armer Mann*, *du gute Frau*, *du gutes Kind*, *wir sterblichen Menschen*, *ihr kurzäugigen Leute*; and not only in the nominative, but also in the dative and accusative.

Sing.

N. ich, du, armer Mann.	arme Frau.	armes Kind.
D. mir, dir, armen Manne.	armen Frau.	armen Kind.
A. mich, dich, armen Mann.	arme Frau.	armes Kind.

Plur.

N. wir, ihr, armen Männer.	Frauen.	Kinder.
D. uns, euch, armen Männern.	Frauen.	Kindern.
A. uns, euch, armen Männer.	Frauen.	Kinder.

Observations.

1. When an adjective is preceded by two pronouns or by an indefinite numeral and an article, it is inflected according to the last; *dieser mein guter Sohn*, this my good son; *dieses mein gutes Kind*; *ein jeder gute Mensch*; *ein jedes neue Haus*, every good man, every new house. One pronoun does not affect another: as, *das Haus dieses meines guten Sohnes*, the house of this my good son. *In dieser unserer Natur erfüllte Christus das Gesetz*, in this our nature Christ fulfilled the law.

2. When the adjective is preceded by a genitive case, it has the characteristic termination: *Eduard's jüngster Bruder*, Edward's youngest brother; *Marien's größtes Glück*, Mary's greatest fortune; *der Mann, dessen größter Reichtum seine*

Zugend ist, the man whose greatest riches is his virtue. This is also the case when it is preceded by such pronouns or numerals as are either indeclinable, or used without the terminations of inflection; these are: *etwas*, some; *viel*, much; *nichts*, nothing; *genug*, enough; *allerlei*, of all kinds; *einerlei*, of one kind; *zweierlei*, of two kinds, &c.; *drittehalb*, two and a half, &c.; *bergleichen*, the like, such-like; *lauter*, mere, nothing but; *solch*, such; *zwei*, two; *drei*, three; *vier*, four, &c.: *as*, *etwas gutes Fleisch*, some good meat; *bergleichen harte Worte*, such-like harsh words; *lauter gebiegenes Gold*, nothing but solid gold; *aus lauter gebiegenem Golde*; *mit etwas weißem Papier*, with some white paper; *solch große Schätze*, such great treasures.

A TABLE OF THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1st Form.

	Sing.		Plur.
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
N. er.	e.	es.	e.
G. es.	er.	es.	er.
D. em.	er.	em.	en.
A. en.	e.	es.	e.

2nd Form.

	Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
der, die, das, the.		N. e.	e.	e.
dieser, diese, dieses, this.		G. en.	en.	en.
jener, jene, jenes, that.		D. en.	en.	en.
welcher, welche, welches, which.		A. en.	e.	e.
mancher, manche, manches, many a.			Plur.	
jeder, jede, jedes, every.			N. en.	
			G. en.	
			D. en.	
			A. en.	

3rd Form.

				Sing.			
				Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
ein,	eine,	ein,	a.	N. ex.	e.	es.	
mein,	meine,	mein,	my.	G. en.	en.	en.	
dein,	deine,	dein,	thy.	D. en.	en.	en.	
sein,	seine,	sein,	his.	A. en.	e.	es.	
ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	her.				Plur.
unser,	unsere,	unser,	our.				N. en.
euer,	euere,	euer,	your.				G. en.
ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	their.				D. en.
kein,	keine,	kein,	no.				A. en.

N.B.—The words which stand before the adjectives in the 2nd form, are declined like *der*, *die*, *das*, or the 1st form of the adjectives ; and those which precede the adjectives in the 3rd form, like the indefinite article, *ein*, *eine*, *ein*. But in *unser* and *euer*, the *e* of the terminations of inflection, *es*, *em*, *en*, may be omitted : as, *unsers*, *unserm*, *unfern*, *euers*, *euerm*, *euern*. Also the *e* of the pronouns may be omitted before the terminations *e* and *er* : as, *unsre*, *unfrer*, *eure*, *eurer*, *unsres*, *unsrem*, *unsten*, *eures*, *eurem*, *euren*.

Additional Remarks on the Adjectives.

1. Those adjectives which have the unaccented terminations *el*, *en*, *er*, generally lose the *e* before *l*, *n*, *r*, when they receive another syllable by inflection : as, *ebel*, noble ; *eben*, plain, even ; *lauter*, pure ; *ebler Mann*, *der ebler Mann* ; *ein ebner Weg*, an even way ; *das lautre Golb*, the pure gold, *des lautern Golbes*. When those ending in *el* and *er* receive the syllable *en* by inflection, the *e* of the termination is frequently omitted, and that of the root retained, especially when the definite article precedes : as, *den ebeln Mann* ; *den heitern Morgen*, the serene morning.

2. When the adjective *hoch*, high, is declined, the final *h* is changed into *h*: as, *hoher Thurm*, *das hohe Haus*, *ein hoher Baum*.

3. Adjectives are, in German, as in Latin, frequently used substantively. This may be done when the substantive understood implies either the general and indefinite idea of a person or persons, without any other distinction but that of sex; or the general and indefinite idea of a thing, without reference to any particular thing. In the former case, the adjective is either masculine or feminine; in the latter, neuter, and used in the singular number only; but in either case it is declined like an adjective: as, *ein Deutscher*, a German; *eine Deutsche*, *der Deutsche*, *die Deutschen*; *der Weise*, the wise man; *die Weisen*, *ein Weiser*; *der Gelehrte*, the learned man; *ein Gelehrter*; *der Oberste*, *ein Oberster*, the uppermost, a colonel; *der Bekannte*, the acquaintance; *mein Bekannter*; *das Große*, that which is great; *das Schöne*, *das Gute*. Adjectives used substantively have a capital initial.

4. Some adjectives are, in their original forms, used as real substantives of the neuter gender and declined accordingly, *das Schwarz*, a black substance: *das Weiß*, *das Grün*, *das Roth*, *das Immergrün*, the evergreen; *das Bleiweiss*, the white lead.

5. The termination *es* of the neuter, nominative and accusative, is sometimes left out; this omission, however, is only allowable in poetry: *schön Wetter*, instead of *schönes Wetter*.

4. Participles are declined like adjectives, *geliebt*, loved; *der geliebte Sohn*, *des geliebten Sohnes*, &c.

7. As adjectives are in German used *substantively*, the numeral *one* which is in English used after an adjective, to avoid the repetition of a substantive, is not to be translated: What do you say of this bird? It is a beautiful one. *Was sagen Sie von diesem Vogel? Es ist ein schöner.*

CHAPTER VI.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

A quality expressed by an adjective is either *merely* ascribed to an object, or to one object in a *higher* degree than to another or others, or in the *highest* degree. Adjectives have, therefore, three degrees of signification: the positive, the comparative, the superlative. The positive simply declares the quality of an object, and cannot be called a *degree* of comparison. The comparative ascribes a quality to one object in a greater degree than to another or others; or denotes that an object has one quality in a greater degree than another quality. The superlative expresses the highest degree. Only the comparative and superlative can be called degrees of comparison (*gradus comparationis*). Each degree has two forms: 1. The simple; 2. The compound. The superlative is either of comparison: as, the most beautiful house, i. e. more beautiful than others; or of eminence: as, a most beautiful house, i. e. a house beautiful in an eminent degree.

1. *The Simple Form.*

(a) ITS STRUCTURE.

1. The simple form of comparison is produced for the comparative by adding *er*; and for the superlative of comparison by adding *est* to the positive (only *r*, *ft*, when the positive ends in *e*). The *e* before *ft* is dropped in the superlative, when the *ft* can be easily sounded with the termination of the positive without the *e*.

<i>pos.</i> schön, handsome;	<i>comp.</i> schöner;	<i>sup.</i> schönst.
— enge, narrow;	— enger;	— engst.
— wild, wild;	— wilder;	— wildest.

pos. süß, sweet; *comp.* süßer; *sup.* süßest.
 — angenehm, agreeable; — angenehmer; — angenehmst.
 — glücklich, happy; — glücklicher; — glücklichst.

2. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are, in the comparative and superlative degrees, changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*: *as*, *arm*, poor, *ärmer*, *ärmt*; *kurz*, short, *kürzer*, *kürzest*; *jung*, young, *jünger*, *jüngst*. In the following words, however, this change does not take place.

bläß, pale.	nackt, naked.
bunt, variegated.	platt, flat.
fahl, fallow.	plump, clumsy.
sübe, insipid.	roh, raw.
falsch, false.	rund, round.
flach, flat.	sacht, slow, gentle.
fröh, joyful.	sanft, gentle.
gerade, straight.	satt, satisfied.
glatt, smooth.	schlaff, loose, lax.
hohl, hollow.	schlanck, slender.
höhl, kind.	schroff, rugged, steep.
hahl, bald.	starr, stiff.
karg, stingy.	stolz, proud.
knapp, tight.	straff, tight, stiff.
lahm, lame.	stumm, dumb.
laß, tired.	stumpf, blunt.
lose, loose.	toll, mad.
matt, wearied.	voll, full.
morsch, brittle, rotten.	zähm, tame.

Those which are formed by the addition of syllables: *as*, *ig*, *lich*, *haft*, *sam*, *bar*, and those which are formed like participles are likewise excepted: *as*, *lästerhaft*, vicious; *comp.* *lästerhafter*; *schuldig*, guilty; *comp.* *schuldiger*; *thunlich*, practicable; *furchtsam*, timid; *dankbar*, grateful; *abgeschmackt*, absurd; *bejaht*, aged; *bewandert*, conversant with; *verhaft*,

odious, &c. *Xu* generally remains unaltered; *raūh*, rough; comp. *raūher*; *lauter*, comp. *lauterer*; but *äußerst*, extreme; *der äußerste*.

3. Adjectives ending in the unaccented syllables *el*, *en*, *er*, generally lose the *e* before *l*, *n*, *r*, in the comparative: *edel*, noble, *edler*; *eben*, *ebner*; *lauter*, *lautrer*.

4. The superlative of *groß* is contracted into *größt*; and some authors contract the superlative of adjectives ending in *s* in the same way: as, *süß*, sup. *süßt*, for *süßest*. This practice, however, is incorrect.

(b) ITS USE.

In English the use of the simple or compound form of the comparative and superlative of comparison, depends chiefly on the length and structure of the adjective. Not so in German. Adjectives even of four or five syllables form both degrees by the addition of the terminations *er* and *est*: as, *unvorhergesehen*, unforeseen, *unvorhergesehener*, *unvorhergesehent*; *ungehorsam*, disobedient, *ungehorsamer*, *ungehorsamst*. The only exceptions are those two stated under the compound form.

Der ungehorsamere Knabe, the more disobedient boy, never
der mehr ungehorsame Knabe.

Der ungehorsamste Knabe, the most disobedient boy, never
der am meisten ungehorsame Knabe.

(c) ITS DECLENSION.

1. The comparative and superlative are, like the positive, used as predicates and attributes.

When the comparative is used as a predicate, it is not declined: as, *dieser Garten ist schöner als jener*, this garden is more beautiful than that; *die Birne ist süßer als der Apfel*, the pear is sweeter than the apple; *dieses Pferd ist jünger als jenes*, this horse is younger than that; *diese Gärten sind schöner als jene*, *die Birnen sind süßer als die Äpfel*, *diese Pferde sind jünger als jene*.

When the superlative of comparison is used as a predicate, it is preceded by *am* (contracted of *an dem*) and takes the termination of the dative *en*: *as*, *am schönsten*, *am süßesten*, *am jüngsten*. This predicative form of the superlative must be used, wherever the positive and the comparative would remain undeclined: *as*, *dieser Garten ist schön* (positive), *jener Garten ist schöner* (comparative), *mein Garten ist am schönsten* (superlative) not *schönst*; *jene Gärten sind am schönsten*. *Diese Birne ist süß* (positive), *jene Birne ist süßer* (comparative), *jene Birne ist am süßesten*; *die Tage sind im Winter kürz* (positive), *the days are short in winter*; *die Tage sind im Winter kürzer als im Sommer*, *the days are shorter in winter than in summer*; *die Tage sind im Winter am kürzesten*; *wer wenig begeht ist reich*, *whoever desires little, is rich*; *wer am wenigsten begeht, ist am reichsten*, *whoever desires least, is richest*; *was angenehm ist, ist nicht immer nützlich*, *what is agreeable, is not always useful*; *was am angenehmsten ist, ist nicht immer am nützlichsten*; *dieses Kind ist schön, wenn es wacht*, *this child is beautiful when it is awake*; *dieses Kind ist am schönsten, wenn es schläft*, *this child is most beautiful when it sleeps*.

Note.—Whenever the definite article stands before the superlative, this predicative form with *am* cannot be used: *as*, *this child is the youngest of all*, not, *dieses Kind ist am jüngsten von allen*, but, *das jüngste von allen*. For in this case it is the attributive form, used elliptically, instead of *das jüngste Kind*.

2. When the comparative and superlative of comparison are used in the attributive form, they are declined like the three forms of the positive. Of the first form of the superlative, however, only the vocative occurs.

1st Form. *größerer Gewinn*, greater gain.

edlere Gesinnung, nobler sentiment.

schöneres Haus, more beautiful house.

2nd Form. *der größere Gewinn*; gen. *des größeren Gewinnes*.

die edlere Gesinnung; — *der edleren Gesinnung*.

das schönere Haus; — *des schöneren Hauses*.

3rd Form. *ein größerer Gewinn*; — *eines größeren Gewinnes*.

eine edlere Gesinnung; — *einer edleren Gesinnung*.

ein schöneres Haus; — *eines schöneren Hauses*.

1st Form. *liebster Bruder*, most beloved brother; *theuerste Schwester*, dearest sister; *schönstes Kind*, most beautiful child. Plur. *liebste Brüder*; *theuerste Schwestern*; *schönste Kinder*.

2nd Form. *der größte Gewinn*, the greatest gain.

die edelste Gesinnung, the noblest sentiment.

das schönste Haus, the most beautiful house.

3rd Form. *mein herzlichster Wunsch*, my most heartfelt wish.

deine gütigste Antwort, thy kindest answer.

sein liebstes Kind, his dearest child.

ich unglücklichster Mann! I, most unhappy man!

Note 1.—The only word in which the original form of the superlative is used as a predicate, seems to be *allerliebst*, in the phrase *das ist allerliebst*, that is very pretty.

Note 2.—The genitive of the indefinite numeral *alle*, *aller*, of all, increases the force of the superlative like the English *very*: as, *der allerbeste Mann*, the very best man; *die allerschönste Frau*, the very finest woman.

2. *The Compound Form.*

The compound form is produced for the comparative by putting *mehr*, more; and for the superlative by putting *am mehrsten* or *am meistten*, most, before the positive. This form is used:—

1. In the comparative, just as in English when two different qualities of the same object are compared with one another:

as, der Mann ist mehr lustig als traurig, the man is more merry than sad: der Geschmack ist mehr sauer als bitter, the taste is more sour than bitter; ein mehr lustiger als trauriger Mann, a man, more merry than sad; der mehr saure als bittere Geschmack, the taste, more sour than bitter.

2. In the comparative and superlative of comparison in those adjectives which are used as predicates only,—and are, therefore, not inflected (see p. 55): as, mehr feind, am meisten feind, more, most hostile; mehr eingedenk, am mehrrsten eingedenk, more, most mindful. Er ist seiner Pflichten am mehrrsten or am meisten eingedenk, he is most mindful of his duties. But take notice that am mehrrsten, or am meisten, always expresses the superlative of comparison.

The Superlative of Eminence.

The superlative of eminence is, in the attributive as well as in the predicative sense expressed by the superlative of two adverbs, äußerst or höchst, before the positive of an adjective, which is also the case in English. The superlative of comparison of ugly in English is, ugliest: as, the ugliest man; but the superlative of eminence is, most ugly: as, a most ugly man. Dieser Mann ist äußerst häßlich, this man is most or extremely ugly. Ein äußerst häßlicher Mann, an extremely ugly man. Ein solcher Fall ist höchst selten, such a case is very rare indeed. Ein höchst seltener Fall. The superlative of eminence may occur with the definite article: as, the extremely ugly man; the very rare case: different from, the ugliest man, and the rarest case (superlative of comparison). But the superlative of comparison cannot occur with the indefinite article; we cannot say: an ugliest man, a rarest case. It has been considered necessary to notice this difference, as no English grammarian has thought proper to do so.

The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the comparative and superlative:—

Gut, good ; comp.	besser, (from <i>baß</i>); sup.	best, am besten.
Viel, much ; —	mehr, more ; —	meist, am meisten, or am mehrsten.
Hoch, high ; —	höher, higher ; —	höchst, am höchsten.
Nähe, near ; —	näher, nearer ; —	nächst, am nächsten.

Of the comparative *mehr*, *more*, another word has been formed, *mehrere*, *several*, which is rejected by many as a spurious form for *mehre*.

Außer, outer; *inner*, inner; *vorder*, fore; *hinter*, hind; *ober*, upper; *unter*, under; admit only the superlative degree: *der äußerste*, *der innerste*, *der vorderste*, &c.

Comp. *ehrer*, earlier; sup. *der erste*, *am ersten* (cont. of *erhste*), from an obsolete word *eh*.

Comp. *minder*, less; sup. *der mindeste*, *im mindesten*, from an obsolete word *min*.

Sup. *der letzte*, the last, from an obsolete word *lat* (English late).

The superlatives *der erste*, and *der letzte*, form new comparatives: *ersterer*, the former; *letzterer*, the latter; *der erstere*, *der letztere*.

A TABLE OF THE DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES.

COMPARATIVE.

1st Form.

Masc.	Sing. <i>Fem.</i>	Neut.
N. schönerer Garten.	schönere Blume.	schöneres Pferd.
G. schöneres Gartens.	schönerer Blume.	schöneres Pferdes.
D. schönerem Garten.	schönerer Blume.	schönerem Pferde.
A. schöneren Garten.	schönere Blume.	schöneres Pferd.
 Plur.		
N. schönnere Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.
G. schönerer Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.
D. schöneren Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferden.
A. schönnere Gärten.	Blumen.	Pferde.

2nd Form.

Sing.

Masc.

N. der schöner	—	die schöner	—	das schöner	—
G. des schöneren	—	der schöneren	—	des schöneren	—
D. dem schöneren	—	der schöneren	—	dem schöneren	—
A. den schöneren	—	die schöneren	—	das schöneren	—

Plur.

N. die schöneren	
G. der schöneren	
D. den schöneren	
A. die schöneren	

3rd Form.

Sing.

N. unser schöner	—	unsere schöner	—	unser schöner	—
G. unseres schöneren	—	unserer schöneren	—	unseres schöneren	—
D. unserem schöneren	—	unserer schöneren	—	unserem schöneren	—
A. unseren schöneren	—	unsere schöneren	—	unser schöneren	—

Plur.

N. unsere schöneren	
G. unserer schöneren	
D. unseren schöneren	
A. unsere schöneren	

N.B.—In those pronouns which end in er (unser, euer) and in the comparatives, the e of the terminations es, em, en, may be omitted : as, unsers schönern Gartens ; unserer schönern Blume. Also the e of the pronouns and comparatives may be omitted before the terminations er and e : as, unsre schöneren Blumen ; unsrer schöneren Blumen. Sometimes, especially by poets, the e of the pronouns and comparatives is omitted before any of the terminations of inflection : as, unsres schönren Gartens ; unstr schönen Blume ; des schönen Pferdes ; euphony must be the guide.

SUPERLATIVE.

2nd Form.

Sing.

Masc.

N. *der schönste.*
G. *des schönsten.*
D. *bem schönsten.*
A. *den schönsten.*

Fem.

die schönste.
der schönsten.
der schönsten.
die schönste.

Neut.

das schönste.
des schönsten.
dem schönsten.
das schönste.

Plur.

N. *die schönsten.*
G. *der schönsten.*
D. *den schönsten.*
A. *die schönsten.*

3rd Form.

Sing.

N. *unser schönster.*
G. *unseres schönsten.*
D. *unserem schönsten.*
A. *unseren schönsten.*

unsere schönste.
unserer schönsten.
unserer schönsten.
unsere schönste.

unser schönstes.
unseres schönsten.
unserem schönsten.
unser schönstes.

Plur.

N. *unsere schönsten.*
G. *unserer schönsten.*
D. *unseren schönsten.*
A. *unsere schönsten.*

CHAPTER VII.

THE NUMERALS.

Numerals express the relations of *number* and *quantity*. Those which express the relation of number, imply either a *definite* or an *indefinite* number: as, one, two, three (def.); many, all, none (indef.); but those which express the relation of quantity, imply only an indefinite quantity. The numerals are, therefore, divided into definite and indefinite.

(A) *The Definite Numerals.*

The definite numerals form several classes. The first class, from which all the other classes are derived, comprehends those which are called the cardinal numbers (from the Latin *cardo*, a hinge). Cardinal numbers are those upon which the others hinge.) From the cardinals, the ordinals (from the Latin *ordo*, order) are formed by adding *t* up to nineteen; and from twenty, &c. with that termination which the form of declension of adjectives requires; for the ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives. Only two are irregular: *der erste*, the first, instead of *der einte*; and *der dritte*, the third, instead of *der dreite*; *der achte* loses one *t*, because it is not heard in pronunciation. From these two classes the following are formed: (a) The Partitive; (b) The Distinctive; (c) The Dimidiative; (d) The Multiplicative; (e) The Variative; (f) The Fractional; (g) The Reiterative Numbers.

1. *The Cardinal Numbers.*

1 <i>Ein, eine, ein, or Einer,</i> <i>eine, eines.</i>	14 <i>vierzehn.</i>
2 <i>zwei.</i>	15 <i>fünfzehn.</i>
3 <i>drei.</i>	16 <i>sechszehn.</i>
4 <i>vier.</i>	17 <i>siebenzehn or siebzehn.</i>
5 <i>fünf.</i>	18 <i>achtzehn.</i>
6 <i>sechs.</i>	19 <i>neunzehn.</i>
7 <i>sieben.</i>	20 <i>zwanzig.</i>
8 <i>acht.</i>	21 <i>ein und zwanzig.</i>
9 <i>neun.</i>	22 <i>zwei und zwanzig, &c.</i>
10 <i>zehn.</i>	30 <i>dreißig.</i>
11 <i>elf or eilf.</i>	40 <i>vierzig.</i>
12 <i>zwölf.</i>	50 <i>fünfzig.</i>
13 <i>dreizehn.</i>	60 <i>sechzig.</i>
	70 <i>siebenzig or siebzig.</i>

80 achtzig.	1000, tausend.
90 neunzig.	10,000, zehn tausend.
100 hundert.	100,000 hundert tausend.
101 hundert und ein.	A million, eine Million.
102 hundert und zwei.	Ein tausend acht hundert und acht und dreißig.
200 zwei hundert.	
300 drei hundert.	

Observations on the Cardinal Numbers.

1. The units always precede the tens: *fünf und zwanzig*, not *zwanzig fünf*.

2. *Ein, eine, ein*, is declined like the indefinite article, but has a stronger accent, and is generally written with a capital initial letter: *Ein Mann*, one man. When the definite article or a demonstrative pronoun stands before it, it is declined like the second form of the declension of adjectives: *der Eine, die Eine, das Eine, des Einen, &c.* When it is used without a substantive and the article, it has the terminations of the first form of the inflection of adjectives: *Keiner soll bestraft werden, auch nicht Einer*, none shall be punished, not even one; *hast du zwei Bücher?* no, I have got only one; *Einer der Männer, Eine der Frauen, Eines der Kinder.* *Ein* is also used in the plural with the definite article: *die Einen und die Andern*, the ones and the others. In simply counting, it has the termination of the neuter, but *e* is always omitted: *eins, zwei, drei*. *Ein* is also used in the signification of *the same*: *du darfst nicht unter einem Dach' mit diesem wohnen*, thou must not dwell under the same roof with this man.—*Schiller's Tell*.

3. The practice of distinguishing the genders of *zwei* by *zween*, masculine; *zwo*, feminine; *zwei*, neuter, is obsolete.

4. To express the co-existence of two objects, *beide*, both, is used for *zwei*: *beide Augen*, both eyes; *die beiden Brüder*,

both the brothers. The article never stands after *beide*, as in English. *Beide* is declined like an adjective.

5. *Zwei* and *brei* take the terminations of the genitive and dative cases, *zweier*, *zweiem*, when these cases are not indicated by the termination of another word: as, *die Zusammenkunft zweier Freunde*, the meeting of two friends; *ich habe es zweien gesagt*, I have told it to two persons; but *ich habe es zwei Freunden* (dat.) gesagt, or *diesen zwei Freunden*, to these two friends.

6. The other cardinals take the termination of the dative when used without a substantive: as, *ich habe es vieren, fünfen, sechsen gesagt*; *das Kind kriecht auf allen Wieren*, the child crawls on all fours. The genitive of these cannot be designated by a termination, and therefore *von* with the dative is used instead of the genitive when neither an article nor pronoun precedes to indicate the case: as, *das Urtheil von vier Richtern*, the sentence of four judges; *das ist die Meinung von vieren unter uns*, that is the opinion of four among us; but, *das Urtheil dieser vier Richter*, *die Meinung dieser vier unter uns*.

7. *Hundert* and *tausend* are also used as substantives of the neuter gender, and take *e* in the plural: *das Hundert*, *die Hunderte*; *das Tausend*, *die Tausende*. They are not used with the numeral *one* preceding: *hundert Thaler*, one hundred dollars; *tausend Thaler*. In mentioning the date of the year, we say, *Ein tausend acht hundert*.

8. When the cardinals denote cyphers or numbers, marked on cards, dice, &c., they are considered as substantives of the feminine gender, the substantive *Zahl*, number, being understood: as, *eine Ein*, *eine Zwei*, *die Sechs*, and take *en* in the plural: *zwei Einen*, *drei Sechsen*, *acht Neunen*.

9. Substantives of various significations are formed from cardinal numbers by adding *er*: as, *ein Dreier*, *ein Sechser*, a coin worth three, six kreuzers; *Eifer*, *Einundzwanziger*, wine of the vintage of the year eleven, twenty-one.

——— Mütterchen, bringt uns ein Gläschen
Drei und achtzigter her, damit wir die Grillen vertreiben.

Goethe's Hermann & Dorothea.

——— Dear mother, let us have a glass
Of the vintage of 1783, to drive away the melancholy thoughts.

10. When the exact number, expressed by the cardinals, cannot be stated, the following words are used: *bis* and *oder*, *etwa*, *ohngefähr*, *einige* (*etliche*), *beinahe*, *taum*, *fast*, *bei*, *gegen*, *an die*, &c.: *sechs bis sieben Jahre alt*, six or seven years old; *sieben oder acht Fuß lang*, seven or eight feet long; *etwa* or *ohngefähr neun Thaler wert*, worth about nine dollars; *zwanzig und einige Jahre alt*, or *einige und zwanzig Jahre alt*, twenty odd years old. It is not correct to say, *einige zwanzig Jahre*, nor, *ein Stück zehn*, *ein Jahrer vier*, instead of *ohngefähr zehn Stück*, *etwa vier Jahre*, about ten pieces,—four years.

2. *The Ordinal Numbers.*

The ordinal numbers have the three forms of the declension of adjectives: *erster Aufzug*, first act, *der erste Aufzug*; *mein erster Besuch*, my first visit. They follow here with the definite article:—

1st, <i>der erste</i>	12th, <i>der zwölft</i> e.
2nd, <i>der zweite</i> .	13th, <i>der dreizehnt</i> e.
3rd, <i>der dritte</i> .	14th, <i>der vierzehnt</i> e.
4th, <i>der vierte</i> .	15th, <i>der fünfzehnt</i> e.
5th, <i>der fünfte</i> .	16th, <i>der sechszehnt</i> e.
6th, <i>der sechste</i> .	17th, <i>der siebenzehnt</i> e or <i>siebzehnt</i> e.
7th, <i>der siebente</i> or <i>siebte</i>	18th, <i>der achtzehnt</i> e.
8th, <i>der achte</i> .	19th, <i>der neunzehnt</i> e.
9th, <i>der neunte</i> .	20th, <i>der zwanzigste</i> .
10th, <i>der zehnte</i> .	21st, <i>der ein und zwanzigste</i> .
11th, <i>der elfte</i> .	

30th, der dreißigste.	100th, der hundertste.
40th, der vierzigste.	101st, der hundert und erste.
50th, der fünfzigste.	102nd, der hundert und zweite, &c.
60th, der sechzigste.	200th, der zwei hundertste.
70th, der siebenzigste or siezigste.	300th, der drei hundertste.
80th, der achtzigste.	1000th, der tausendste.
90th, der neunzigste.	Das tausend acht hundert und acht und dreißigste Jahr.

Observations on the Ordinal Numbers.

1. In the compound numbers, only the last has the termination of an ordinal: *der zwei und zwanzigste*; but the units stand before the tens: not *der zwanzig zweite*.
2. When the date of the month is expressed, the ordinal number is not employed substantively, but adjectively: as, *der fünfte November*, the fifth of November.
3. *Der andere, the other*, may be considered as an ordinal numeral of *zwei*; but it is only used when no more than two objects are referred to: *ein Auge ist schwächer als das andere*, one eye is weaker than the other; or in expressions like this: *den andern Morgen*, the next morning. *The other day* is expressed in German by *neulidj*, lately; or, *vor ein Paar Tagen*, a couple of days ago; and, *another cup of coffee*, is expressed by *noch eine Tasse Kaffee*, but never by *eine andre Tasse*, which signifies a different one.
4. Of *wie viel*, how much, how many, we form a word which may be looked upon as an indefinite interrogative ordinal, by adding *ste*; *der, die, das, wievielste* (Latin *quotus*, French *quote*): as, *den wievielsten Tag des Monats haben wir heute?* what is the day of the month? *dir ist wieder ein Kind geboren*; *das wievielste ist es?* you have got another child; how many does that make?
5. When ordinal numbers are used in conjunction with

proper names of reigning princes, they stand after the names: *Karl der Fünfte* (i. e. of this name).

From the above mentioned cardinal and ordinal numbers the following are formed:—

(a) The partitives: *zwei und zwei*, *drei und drei*, or *je zwei*, *je drei*, &c., two and two, three and three, two at a time, &c. (Latin *bini*, *terni*, &c.) *Je* is an adverb signifying *ever*.

(b) The distinctives: *erstlich*, or *erstens*, *zweitens*, *drittens*, &c., firstly, secondly, thirdly, &c.; also *zum ersten*, *zum zweiten*, *zum dritten*.

(c) The dimidiatives. They are composed of the ordinals and the word *halb*, half. Two and a half is expressed by *drittehalb*, i. e. two, and the third only half. The word *halb* is preceded by that ordinal numeral in the second form of the declension of adjectives, which would be used if the half number, which in English is expressed last, were full, and the full number is left out entirely. To express five and a half, we must say, the sixth half, and then leave out the article: *siebtehalb*. Instead of *zweitehalb*, one and a half, we say *anderthalb*: *anderthalb*, *drittehalb*, *viertehalb*, *fünfehalb*, &c. These numerals are not declined.

(d) The multiplicatives. They are formed by adding *fach* to the cardinals: as, *einfach*, simple; *zweifach*, twofold; *dreifach*, threefold, &c. *Fach* is a substantive signifying *division*, *layer*. They are also formed by adding *fältig*: as, *einfältig*, simple (generally used in the signification of *stupid*); *zweifältig*, *dreifältig*, &c., &c. *Fältig* is derived from a substantive, *Falte*, signifying *fold*. Similar compounds are formed of cardinal numbers and substantives: as, *zweipfundig*, of two pounds, weight, from *das Pfund*, the pound; *dreieckig*, triangular, from *die Ecke*, the corner. These are declined like adjectives.

(e) The variatives. They are formed by adding *erlei* to the cardinals: as, *einerlei*, of one kind; *zweierlei*, of two kinds; *dreierlei*, of three kinds, &c. They are not declined.

Einerlei has also the signification of *the same, one*, in the phrase, *es ist mir einerlei*, it is the same to me.

(f) The fractionals. They are formed from ordinal numbers and the substantive *Teil*, but are contracted into one word: *as, das dritte Teil*, the third part, is contracted into *das Drittel*; so *das Viertel*, *das Fünftel*. They are substantives of the neuter gender, and declined according to the contracted termination *tel*; not like *Teil*, which belongs to the fourth declension. Instead of *Zweitel*, either *halb*, half, or *die Hälfte*, the half, is used, the former like an adjective, the latter like a substantive, *die halbe Stadt*, or *die Hälfte der Stadt*, half the town.

(g) The reiteratives. They are formed by adding *mal* to the cardinals: *einmal*, once; *zweimal*, twice; *dreimal*, three times, &c.; also written *ein Mal*, *zwei Mal*, *drei Mal*. The original signification of *Mal*, is most probable *mole*, *mark*, *ein Muttermal*, generally spelt *Muttermahl*, a mole on the skin; *Denkmal*, a monument; *Grabmal*, (*Latin tumulus*) a tomb. *Dreimal* therefore means three marks, i. e. three times in counting. These are adverbs, and therefore not declined: but by adding the syllable *ig* they receive the form of an adjective and are declined: *as, zweimalig*; *ein zweimaliger Besuch*. *Einmal* is sometimes used in a peculiar way, and cannot be well translated into English: *as, das ist nun einmal so*, that is so, and cannot be altered; *das steht nun einmal nicht in unserer Macht*, but that is not in our power.—(*Goethe's Iphigenia*.) *Einmal* is also an adverb of time, and is distinguished from the reiterative numeral by the accent; the latter having the accent on the first, the former on the last syllable: *ich sah ihn nur einmal*, I saw him but once; *es war einmal ein König*, there was once a king. *Nicht einmal*, not once (reit. num.); *nicht einmal*, not even (adverb).

Note.—*Mal* is used substantively when preceded by a demonstrative pronoun: *dieses Mal*, this time; or an ordinal number, *das letzte Mal*, the last time; *das dritte Mal*, the third time; *zum dritten Male* (see also the indefinite numerals).

(B) *The Indefinite Numerals.*

These numerals express the relation either of (a) number, (b) quantity, or (c) of both.

(a) Of number: *jeder*, *jelicher*, *jedweber*, *every*, *every one*, *each*; *jedermann*, *every body*, *any body*; *mancher*, *manche*, *manches*, *many* a, plural *manche*, *many*; *mehrere*, *several*; *einiger*, *einige*, *einiges*; *etlicher*, *etliche*, *etliches*, *some*.

Obs. 1. *Jeder*, *jelicher*, *jedweber*, *mancher*, *mehrere*, *einige*, *etliche*, are declined like adjectives: *jeder Vater*, *jede Mutter*, *jedes Kind*; gen. *jedes Vaters*, *jeder Mutter*, *jedes Kindes*; dat. *jedem Vater*, *jeder Mutter*, *jedem Kinde*, &c. *Mancher Vater*, *many a father*; *manche Mutter*, *manches Kind*; *manche Stunde*, *many an hour*; *manche Stunden*, *many hours*; *mehrere Monate*, *several months*; *einige Feiern*, *some pens*; *jeder* and *jelicher* are also used with the indefinite article, *ein jeder*, *eine jede*, *ein jedes*; gen. *eines jeden*, *einer jeden*, *eines jeben*; *jedermann* forms only the genitive *jedermanns*, and the first component *jeder* remains unaltered in all the cases.

Obs. 2. *Jedermann* is only used substantively and expresses generality: as, *dieses Kind ist Jedermanns Liebling*, this child is every body's favourite; *Jedermann weiß das*, every body knows that; *jeder*, *jede*, *jedes*, is used substantively and adjectively, and has a distributive signification, i. e. it states all things or persons of one kind individually: *jeder Mensch hat seine Fehler*, every man has his faults; *jede Blume verblüht*, every flower fades; *dieser Mann hat drei Brüder*, and *jeder von ihnen ist reich*, this man has three brothers, and each of them is rich. *Jeder* is only used in the singular, except in the phrase *alle und jede*, all and every one. *Manche*, *many*, must be distinguished from *viele*, *many*; *manche*, *many*, states a number individually; *viele*, generally: as, *ich habe manche angenehme Stunden mit ihm gehabt*, I have had many pleasant hours with him; *wir haben viele Freunde*, we have many friends. *Manche* is more

general than *eitliche*: *ich habe manche Bücher gekauft, aber eitliche taugen nicht viel*, I have bought many books, but some are not of much use. *Einiger, einige, einiges*, is used in the singular before abstract substantives: as, *dieses alte Buch hat noch einigen Werth*, this old book has still some value; *wir haben noch einige Hoffnung*, we have still some hope; in the plural it signifies some, a few: *er hat mir einige Nüsse gegeben*, he has given me some nuts; *einige Knaben sind heute abwesend*, some boys are absent to-day.

(b) Of quantity: *etwas*, some, something; *nichts*, nothing; *ganz*, whole; *halb*, half.

Obs. *Etwas* and *nichts* are never declined: as, *können Sie mir etwas Geld geben?* Nein, *ich habe nichts*, can you give me some money? No, I have nothing; so *etwas*, such a thing: *so etwas habe ich nie gesehen*. *Ganz* and *halb* are not declined before names of countries and places of the neuter gender, when neither article nor pronoun precedes: as, *ganz Deutschland*, all Germany; *halb Frankreich*, the half of France; *in ganz Deutschland*; but *das ganze Deutschland*, *die halbe Schweiz*, *sein ganzer Reichthum*, his whole riches; *sein halbes Vermögen*, half his property; *von ganzem Herzen*, with the whole heart; *ein halbes Stück*, half a piece; *mit einem halben Stüber*, with a halfpenny; *ganze Scharen*, whole bands; *halbe Zahlen*, half numbers.

(c) Of number and quantity: *aller, alle, alles, all*; *viel*, much; *wenig*, little; *mehr*, more; *genug*, enough; *kein*, no, not any; *sämmtlich*, or *gesammt*, all, whole; *lauter*, nothing but, mere.

Obs. *Genug* and *lauter* are never declined. *Genug* generally stands after the substantive: *Geld genug*, money enough; *lauter schöne Sachen*, nothing but beautiful things; *lauter Kupfer*, nothing but copper. When *viel* and *wenig* express quantity in general, and are not preceded by an article or pronoun, they are not declined: *viel Gold*, much gold; *wenig Silber*, but das

viele **Göld**. When they express number and are used substantively, they are always declined: **Viele** sind eingeladen worden, aber **Wenige** sind gekommen, many have been invited, but few have come. When used adjectively, they are sometimes declined and sometimes not: as, **viele Menschen mögen keine Zwiebeln**, many people do not like onions; **es gibt wenige Menschen, welche keine Kartoffeln mögen**, there are few people who do not like potatoes. **Viel Menschen können mehr thun, als wenig Menschen**, many men can do more than few. **Viel** and **wenig** are sometimes used with the genitive case: **Viel Volks**, a great multitude of people. **Viele Häuser**, many houses; **die vielen Häuser**; **wenige Meilen**, a few miles. **Ein wenig**, a little, remains entirely unaltered like **ein Paar**, a couple: **mit ein wenig Brot**, with a little bread. But when used as a substantive with an article or pronoun, it is declined: **das Wenige, das er hat**, the little he has got.

Kein, keine, kein, is declined like **ein, eine, ein**: **kein Vater, keine Mutter, kein Kind**; when it is used substantively, it has the terminations of the gender, **keiner, keine, keines**: **keiner von uns**; **keines von allen**. **Kein** is often used in German when a substantive is negated, instead of the negative adverb: **ich konnte keine Zeitung erhalten**, I could not get any newspaper; **wir werden dieses Jahr kein Obst haben**, we shall not have any fruit this year.

All is declined like an adjective: **aller, alle, alles, plur. alle**. When it is used in the singular it implies quantity: **alles Geld**, all the money; **aller Reichtum**, all the riches; **alle Macht**, all the power. When preceded by the neuter gender of a demonstrative pronoun, it retains the characteristic **s**: **dieses oder das alles will ich dir geben**, all this I will give thee. In the dative, however, the characteristic **m** is changed into **n**, when a pronoun precedes: **bei dem allen**. When all and a pronoun are followed by a substantive, all stands before the pronoun: **aller dieser Reichtum**, all these riches; **alle jene Gelehrsamkeit**,

all that learning; *alles dieses Gelb*, all this money; but in this case the termination of inflection is frequently dropped for the sake of euphony: *all dieses Gelb*, *all dieser Reichthum*. The neuter *alles* is sometimes used to express an indefinite number of persons: *alles, was reisen kann, reiset nach der Schweiz*, all that can travel, travel to Switzerland. In the plural it expresses number: *alle Menschen*, all men; *alle jene Äpfel*, all those apples; *an allen Orten*, in all places. *All* is not followed by the definite article as in English: all the boys, not *alle die Knaben*, but *alle Knaben*; nor has it the signification of *whole*: *all the year* is expressed by *das ganze Jahr*; *all the day*, *der ganze Tag*; *in all London*, *in ganz London*. In some instances it has the signification of *every*: *alle Jahre*, every year; *alle Tage*, every day; *alle vier Jahre*, every four years; *alle zwei Monate*, every two months!?

Sämmtlich and *gesammt* are declined like adjectives: *der sämmtliche Vorrath*, all the store together; *die sämmtlichen Glieder der Familie*, all the members of the family.

By adding *erlei* to the following roots of indefinite numerals, *manch*, *all*, *viel*, *mehr*, *kein*, the following indefinite variative numerals are formed: *mancherlei*, of many kinds; *allerlei*, *vielerlei*, *mehrerlei*, *keinerlei*.

By adding *mal* to the following: *jedes*, *etliche*, *einige*, *manch*, *alle*, *viel*, *mehr*, the following indefinite reiterative numerals are formed: *jedesmal*, every time, each time; *etlichemal*, *einigemal*, *manchmal*, *vielmal*, *mehrimal*. But *vielmal* and *mehrimal*, like *niemal* and *jemal*, never and ever, generally take *s*: *vielmals*, *mehrimals*, *niemals*, *jemals*.

By adding *fach*, or *fältig* to *viel* and *mannich* (*manch*) the following indefinite multiplicatives are formed: *vielfach*, many-fold; *mannichfach* or *mannigfältig* (most frequently spelt *mannigfältig*).

In German there are no words to express the meaning of *either*, *neither* (*one of two*, *not one of two*): the former is

expressed by einer von beiden, the latter by keiner von beiden; nor is there any German word for *any*: *any body* is expressed by *Lebemann*; *anything*, by *alles*; *anywhere* (*everywhere*), by *überall*; *any one* (*some one*), by *irgend jemand*; *anywhere*, (*somewhere*), by *irgendwo*; *at any time* (*at some time*), by *zu irgend einer Zeit*.

SECTION III.

THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns are divided into five classes: 1. The Personal, Reflective, and Reciprocal;—2. The Possessive;—3. The Demonstrative;—4. The Relative and Interrogative;—5. The Indefinite.

CHAPTER I.

1.—*Personal, Reflective, and Reciprocal Pronouns.*

Pronouns are words used for nouns. Personal pronouns are words used for names of persons or things: I, thou, he, she, it, we, you (ye), they.

Reflective pronouns are words used for names of persons or things, when they are the objects of an action expressed by a verb, and identical with the subjects: as, I love myself, thou teachest thyself, he honors himself. *I* is subject, *myself* object, but identical with subject. The action of the subject expressed by the verb, passes over to the object; but as the object is the same with the subject the action reflects.

Reciprocal pronouns are words used for names of persons or things, when subject and object of an action expressed by a verb, are mutually active and passive: as, we love each other, or one another; they attract each other. The action

of the subject, expressed by the verb, passes over to the object; then the object becomes subject and subject becomes object, and the action again passes over to the object. Many English grammarians do not seem to have a clear idea of *reflective* and *reciprocal*. M'Culloch and some others call the *reflective* pronouns *reciprocal*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First Person.

Sing.

N. *Ich*, I.

G. *Meiner*, or *mein*, of me.

D. *Mir*, to me.

A. *Mich*, me.

Plur.

Wir, we.

Unter, of us.

Uns, to us.

Uns, us.

Second Person.

N. *Du*, thou.

G. *Deiner*, or *dein*, of thee.

D. *Dir*, to thee.

A. *Dich*, thee.

Ihr, you.

Euer, of you.

Euch, to you.

Euch, you.

Third Person.

N. *Er*, he; *Sie*, she; *Es*, it. *Sie*, they.

G. { *Seiner*, or *Ihrer*, or *Seiner*, or } *Ihrer*, of them.
 { *sein*, of him; *ihr*, of her; *sein*, of it. } *Ihrer*, of them.

D. *Ihm*, to him; *Ihr*, to her; *Ihm*, to it. *Ihnen*, to them.

A. *Ihn*, him; *Sie*, her; *Es*, it. *Sie*, them.

Note.—The genitive cases, *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, are obsolete forms.

REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

There is, in German, a special reflective and reciprocal pronoun for the third person only; and as there must be a subject before a reflective or reciprocal pronoun can be used, it cannot have a nominative case.

Sing.		
N. _____		
G. { S einer, or { s ein, of himself;	S herr, or i hr, of herself;	S einer, or s ein, of itself.
D. S ich, to himself;	to herself;	to itself.
A. S ich, himself;	herself;	itself.
Plur.		
N. _____		
G. S herr, of themselves.		
D. S ich, to themselves.		
A. S ich, themselves.		

For the first and second persons sing. and plur., the personal pronouns are in German, as in Latin, used as reflective, and in the plural as reciprocal : *ich liebe mich*, I love myself, *amo me* ; *du ehrest dich*, thou honorest thyself; *er röhmt sich*, he praises himself; *wir waschen uns*, we wash ourselves; *ihr lobet euch*, you praise yourselves; *sie betrügen sich*, they deceive themselves (reflective). The reflective pronoun must be put in that case which the verb requires. *Spotten*, to mock; *gedenken*, to remember, govern the genitive case; consequently, *du spottest seiner*, thou mockest thyself; *ihr gedenket euer*, you remember yourself. *Wir kennen uns*, we know one another; *ihr verstehet euch*, you understand one another; *sie unterstützen sich*, they assist one another (reciprocal). When the connexion of the sentence does not clearly show whether the pronoun is reflective or reciprocal, the reciprocal is indicated by the word *einander*, one another: *wir verstehen uns einander*; *sie verstehen sich einander*; and in this case the pronoun is frequently left out: *wir verstehen einander*, *sie verstehen einander*. *Einander* is not declined; but when the genitive is required, it is expressed in this manner: *wir wollen einer des andern Last tragen*, we will bear each other's burden.

The reflective pronouns, *myself*, *thyself*, &c., must not be confounded with the indefinite, *myself*, which is expressed in German, by *selbst*: *er that es selbst*, he did it himself. In

this sentence, *himself* is not reflective; it merely lays additional stress on *he*.

Observations.

1. The genitive plural of the personal pronouns is used with numerals, when not a part of a number, but the whole number is expressed: *es waren unser zwölf*, there were twelve of us; *es waren ihrer zwanzig*, there were twenty of them. *Unser Einer*, therefore, does not signify *one of us*, *einer von uns*, but *a person like us, in our condition*. When a part of a number is expressed, the preposition *von* with the dative case is used; *zwanzig waren zusammengekommen*; *aber zwölf von uns gingen wieder weg*, twenty had assembled, but twelve of us went away again.

2. The genitive of these pronouns coalesces with the following prepositions, which govern that case, forming one word: *wegen*, *halben*, *um-willen*, on account of, for the sake of; but in *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, *ihrer*, *t* is changed into *t*, and between *unser* and *euer* and the preposition, *t* is inserted: *meinetwegen*, on my account; *seinethalben*, on his account; *um ihretwillen*, for her sake; *unsertwegen*, *euerthalben* (see the prepositions).

3. The dative of the personal and reflective pronouns with an article before the substantive is used instead of a possessive pronoun, when the person is affected, or a strong reference to the person expressed: *ich habe mit die Hand verwundet*, I have wounded my hand; *er hat sich aus Unvorsichtigkeit einen Finger abgeschossen*, he has shot one of his fingers off through carelessness; *ich habe es ihm in die Hand gegeben*, I have given it into his hand.

4. When the personal pronouns refer to an objective case the demonstrative *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*, may be employed instead: *ich habe meinen Sohn nach Deutschland geschickt*, *damit derselbe Deutsch lerne*, I have sent my son to Germany, that he

may learn German. But when more than one person or object occurs in the sentence to which the personal pronoun may refer, the subject should be represented by a personal pronoun, and the object by *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*: *der Lehrer liebt seinen Schüler, aber derselbe dankt ihm nicht dafür*, the master loves his pupil, but he does not thank him for it.

5. As the inanimate objects and abstract ideas are either masc. or fem. or neut., the personal pronouns *er*, *sie*, *es*, must be used accordingly: *as, dieser Hut ist neu, aber er (not es) ist nicht fein*, this hat is new, but it is not fine. *Wo ist meine Feder? Ich habe sie (not es) nicht gesehen*, where is my pen? I have not seen it. *Was ist die Liebe? Sie ist eine der edelsten Tugenden*, what is charity? it is one of the noblest virtues.

6. The neuter gender of the third personal pronoun *es* is only used in the nominative and accusative, when it represents an inanimate object or an abstract idea. For the other cases the demonstrative *dessen*, *dem*, or *desselben*, *demselben*, are used: *er bietet mir Geld an, aber ich bedarf dessen (not seiner) nicht*, he offers me money, but I am not in want of it.

7. The personal pronoun is seldom used with a preposition preceding, when it represents an inanimate object or an abstract idea. Either the demonstrative pronoun *derselbe*, *dieselbe*, *dasselbe*, or the demonstrative adverb *da*, which coalesces with the preposition, is used instead: *ich habe eine Feder, aber ich kann mit derselben, or damit nicht schreiben*, I have a pen, but I cannot write with it. *Wo ist mein Ball? Wer hat darauf getreten?* Where is my ball? Who has trodden upon it? *Gott hat uns das Gebot gegeben: du sollst deinen Nächsten lieben als dich selbst; aber viele Menschen achten nicht darauf*, God has given us the commandment: thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself; but many persons pay no attention to it. The adverb *da* with a preposition is always used instead of the dat. and acc. of the neuter of the third personal pronoun when it is applied indefinitely: *Sie können sich darauf verlassen*, you may rely upon

it; ich habe nichts davon gehört, I have heard nothing of it; wir haben nichts dagegen, we have nothing against it; ich finde nichts darin, I find nothing in it. Prepositions which govern the genitive, cannot coalesce with da; not davwegen, but deßwegen; they require the pronoun dessen or des: das Wetter ist schlecht; trotz dessen ist er ausgegangen, the weather is bad; in spite of it he has gone out. Damit, with it; daraus, out of it; darauf, upon it; davon, from it; dadurch, thereby; darüber, thereon; dagegen, against it; darin, in it; darunter, under it; darnach, after it. The letter r is inserted between da and the preposition, when the latter begins with a vowel or n.

8. Es is also used as an indefinite pronoun, joined with all genders and numbers: es regnet, it rains; es ist ein Mann, it is a man; es ist eine Frau, es sind Frauen; ist es ein Mann? sind es Frauen? welche sind es? which are they? es folgten viele, there followed many. It is, likewise, very frequently used, especially in poetry, when the subject of a sentence is to be pointed out with emphasis, and to be placed after the verb: es lebe der König, long live the king; es ist ein Betrug entdeckt worden, a fraud has been discovered; es thue ein jeder, was ihm gefüllt, let every one do what he pleases. Es reden und träumen die Menschen viel von bessern künftigen Tagen, men talk and dream much of better days to come.—Schiller. When the indefinite pronoun es is the object, in English so is used instead: er hat es mehr als einmal gesagt, he said so more than once. It is often used where it is entirely superfluous: er übernahm es, mich davon zu benachrichtigen, he undertook to inform me of it.

9. Es is sometimes contracted with other pronouns and monosyllables: ich's for ich es; mir's for mir es; ist's for ist es; geht's for geht es; hat's for hat es; wenn's for wenn es.

10. For the sake of euphony denselben, the same, is frequently used for ihn, and dieselbe for sie: as, er hat eine Schwester, kennen Sie dieselbe? he has a sister, do you

know her? dieser Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen denselben empfehlen, this wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

11. In Luther's time the reflective pronoun was not in use; we find, therefore, in his translation of the Bible, the third person of the personal pronoun employed for the reflective: des Menschen Sohn ist nicht gekommen, daß er ihm (sich) dienen lasse. Matth. xx. 28.

12. When pronouns refer to persons, denoted by words of the neuter gender, although the natural sex is not doubtful, as diminutives (das Göhnchen, das Xöchterlein, or das Weib, the woman), they generally agree with the natural sex, and not with the gender of the words: was macht Ihr Göhnchen? ich hoffe, er ist besser, how does your little son do? I hope he is better; Sie (ein Cananäisch Weib) kam, und fiel vor ihm nieder. Matth. xv. 25. When the sex is doubtful, as in Kind, child, the pronoun agrees with the gender of the word.

13. In addressing one another, the Germans use the second and third singular, and the second and third plural, but with a particular discrimination. The second person singular is used in addressing God. It implies familiarity founded upon affection and fondness; and is employed by parents and children, brothers and sisters, husbands and wives, addressing one another. With friends it is a mark of intimacy or acquaintancehip from early years, since children never use any other person than the second singular in addressing one another. This most natural mode of address is now becoming more customary in Germany than was formerly the case. The third person singular and the second plural, but especially the former, are used in addressing inferiors, servants, &c. The third person plural is used in polite conversation of people of education. In writing, the pronoun of address has a capital initial letter. Wollen Sie mit mir gehen? will you go with me? Ich habe es Dir gegeben, I have given it to you. Ich danke Ihnen, I thank you.

CHAPTER II.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are formed from the genitive cases singular and plural of personal pronouns, and are :—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
1st pers. sing.	mein,	meine,	mein, my.
2nd "	dein,	deine,	dein, thy.
3rd "	m. sein,	seine,	sein, his.
3rd "	f. ihr,	ihrer,	ihr, her.
3rd "	n. sein,	seine,	sein, its.
1st pers. plur.	unser,	unsere,	unser, our.
2nd "	euer,	eure,	euer, your.
3rd "	ihr,	ihrer,	ihr, their.

In the singular they are declined like the indefinite article; in the plural like an adjective of the first form of inflection. Sing. N. mein Vater, G. meines Vaters, D. meinem Vater, A. meinen Vater; Plur. N. meine Augen, G. meiner Augen, D. meinen Augen, A. meine Augen. Unser Haus, unsers Häus- es, unserm Hause, unser Haus; unsere Häuser, unserer Häuser, unsern Häusern, unsere Häuser. Ihr Buch, her or their book; ihre Nadel, her needle; ihr Sohn, her son.

Observations.

- When these pronouns are used as predicates, and simply signify possession, in which case the stress of the sentence lies on the substantive, they are, like adjectives, not declined : der Garten ist mein, die Wiese ist dein, das Haus ist sein. Unser ist

die Arbeit, aber der Lohn ist euer. But when the stress lies on the pronoun, it has the characteristic termination of the gender of that substantive of which it is the predicate: dieser S \ddot{u} th ist meiner, nicht deiner, this hat is mine, not thine; diese Geber ist meine; dieses Buch ist meines; in this case it is frequently preceded by the definite article: dieser S \ddot{u} th ist der meine; diese Geber ist die meine; dieses Buch ist das meine; and still more frequently mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr, take the additional syllable ig: der meinige, die meinige, das meinige; der unfrige, die unfrige, das unfrige, &c. The latter form, however, is never used without the definite article. Die Seinigen, Defini- gen, Ihrigen, &c., in the plural number, signify, like the Latin *mei, tui, sui, &c.*, *those belonging to me, thee, you, &c.*: er und die Seinigen befinden sich w \ddot{o} hl, he and his family are well; wie befinden sich die Ihrigen? how are you all at home? Dion. *Dionysium tyrannum salvum esse propter necessitudinem magis etiam suorum causa studebat*.—Corn. Nepos. Dion. 1. Das Meinige, das Seinige, das Ihrige, &c., in the neuter singular signifies *my, his, our property, &c.*: er hat das Seinige verloren, he has lost his property.

2. These pronouns are, like the adjectives, used as substantives, either with or without the definite article: dein H \ddot{a} us ist gro β , meines (or das meinige) aber ist klein, und das seinige ist sch \ddot{o} n. They then take the marks of the genders, meiner, meine, meines; and frequently they receive the form of an adjective: der meinige, &c.

3. When unser and euer increase by inflection, the e before r is frequently elided.

4. Dero and Thro were used in ancient and ceremonious language instead of Ihr, in addressing persons of distinction. Seine, Seiner, are abbreviated Se., St.; Euer, Ew.; Se. Majest \ddot{u} t, der K \ddot{o} nig; St. Majest \ddot{u} t, dem K \ddot{o} nige; Ihre Ma- jest \ddot{u} t, die K \ddot{o} nigin; Ihre Durchlaucht, your serene highness.

5. The definite article is, as in French, used instead of a possessive pronoun, when the sense of the sentence cannot be mistaken : *ich werbe daß Buch in die Tasche stecken*, I shall put the book into my pocket ; *stecken Sie es in die Tasche*, put it into your pocket ; *ich habe ein Messer in der Hand*, I have a knife in my hand ; *er hat einen Hut auf dem Kopfe*, he has a hat on his head. And the dative of the personal or reflective pronouns with the article is, as in French, used, as stated in page 88, 3, instead of the possessive pronoun, when the person is affected, or a strong reference to the person is expressed : *diese Sorgen liegen mir beständig im Kopfe*, these cares are constantly in my head ; but, *der Philosoph Stilpo sagte: alles, was ich habe, liegt in meinem Kopfe* (not *liegt mir im Kopfe*), the philosopher Stilpo said, all that I possess is in my head.

6. In the expression, *zu seiner Zeit*, *in due season*, the pronoun originally referred to God. But like the Hebrew יְמִינָךְ, it became a phrase, meaning *at the proper time*; and therefore the pronoun does not agree with the subject of the sentence in which this phrase occurs. *Aller Augen warten auf dich*, und du gibst ihnen Speise *zu seiner Zeit*, (יְמִינָךְ), the eyes of all wait upon thee, and thou givest them their meat in due season. Pa. cxlv. 15; civ. 27. *Lasset uns gutes thun, und nicht müde werden*; denn *zu seiner Zeit* (καιρῷ γὰρ οὐδὲν) werden wir auch erndten ohne Aufhören.—Gal. vi. 9. (See Acts i. 7.)

7. The possessive pronouns are not used in German in sentences like the following :—he is a friend of mine, an acquaintance of ours. We use the personal pronouns : *er ist ein Freund von mir*, *ein Bekannter von uns*.

CHAPTER III.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns either point out a subject, or distinguish one from another. They are—

1. **Dieser, diese, dieses** (contracted **dies**), this (Lat. *hic*), also, the latter.
2. **Jener, jene, jenes**, that (Lat. *ille*), also, the former.
3. **Der, die, das**, that.
4. **Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige**, that (Lat. *is*).
5. **Derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe**, the same.
6. **Solcher, solche, solches**, such.

Dieser, diese, dieses, and **jener, jene, jenes**, are declined like an adjective in the first form of inflection. (Decline them on paper.)

Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, and **derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe**, are compounds; each component is declined, the former like the definite article, the latter like an adjective in the second form of inflection: gen. **desjenigen, derjenigen, desjenigen**; **des-selben, derselben, desselben**; dat. **demjenigen, derjenigen, dem-jenigen**; **demselben, derselben, demselben**; acc. **denjenigen, diejenige, dasjenige**; **denselben, dieselbe, dasselbe**. Plur. **die-jenigen, derjenigen, denjenigen, diejenigen**; **dieselben, derselben, denselben, dieselben**.

Solcher, solche, solches, is declined like an adjective. It is often preceded by the indefinite article: **ein solcher Mann, eine solche Frau, ein solches Kind**. It is also put before the article, and in this case it remains unaltered: **solch ein Mann, solch eine Frau, solch ein Kind**; gen. **solch eines Mannes, solch einer Frau, solch eines Kindes**.

Der, die, das, is declined in the following manner:—

	Sing.		Plur.
N. <i>der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das.</i>	<i>die.</i>
G. <i>des, or</i>	<i>der, or</i>	<i>des, or</i>	<i>der, derer, or</i>
	<i>deß, or deß, deren,</i>	<i>deß, or deß.</i>	<i>deren.</i>
D. <i>dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem,</i>	<i>den, or denen.</i>
A. <i>den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>das.</i>	<i>die.</i>

Observations.

1. The demonstrative pronoun *that*, has three different significations, as will be seen in the following sentences: *That tree which stands in the corner of my garden is a good tree. I have bought the horse of my neighbour, and also that of his son. That tree which bears fruit is a good tree.* In each of these sentences *that* must be expressed by a different pronoun.

Jener, jene, jenes, is used to point out a definite person or thing: *jener Baum, welcher in der Ecke meines Gartens steht, ist ein guter Baum,* that tree, which stands in the corner of my garden is a good tree; *jener Mann ist der Gärtner meines Nachbars,* that man is the gardener of my neighbour. *Der, die, das,* is used to avoid the repetition of a substantive: *ich habe das Pferd meines Nachbars und auch das seines Sohnes gekauft,* I have bought the horse of my neighbour, and also that of his son; *die Straßen von London sind schöner als die von Paris,* the streets of London are more beautiful than those of Paris. It is also used in an indefinite manner: *ich habe das nie gehört,* I have never heard that; *das weiß ich nicht,* that I do not know; *ich erinnere mich nicht des Umstandes,* I do not remember that circumstance. *Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige,* is used to point out, or to distinguish indefinite persons or things, and must be followed by the relative pronoun: *derjenige Baum, welcher Früchte trägt, ist ein guter Baum,* that

tree (any tree) which bears fruit, is a good tree; *derjenige Mann, welcher grausam ist, kann nicht gut seyn*, that man (any man) who is cruel, cannot be good. It can, however, not be denied that *der, die, das*, is often used for *jene, jene, jenes*, as well as for *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*. But the student should accustom himself to use the proper pronouns.

2. In English, the pronouns which express *dieser, diese, dieses* (Latin *hic*), *jener, jene, jenes* (Latin *ille*), *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige* (Latin *is*), are not used substantively, with the exception of the indefinite neuter: *as, this is not true; that is a mistake*. The personal pronouns are used instead: *he who stands in that corner is my friend; he who is contented is rich; the happiness of him who fears God, is greater than the happiness of him who lives without God. There was once an old man. He (this old man) had two daughters. A father planted two trees. To them (to these two trees) he gave the names of his two sons.* In German as well as in Latin the demonstrative pronouns are used: *jener, (a definite person) welcher in jener Ecke steht, ist mein Freund; derjenige, (indefinite, any) welcher zufrieden ist, ist reich; die Glückseligkeit desjenigen, welcher Gott fürchtet, ist größer als die Glückseligkeit desjenigen, welcher ohne Gott lebt. Es war einmal ein alter Mann. Dieser hatte zwei Töchter. Ein Vater pflanzte zwei Bäume. Diesen gab er die Namen seiner zwei Söhne.* The numeral *one* which is put in English after these pronouns when used without a substantive, cannot be translated into German: *this one is good, but that one is bad, dieser, diese, dieses ist gut, aber jener, jene, jenes ist schlecht.*

3. The neuter gender, *dieses, jenes, das*, is used, like the neuter of the third person of the personal pronoun *es*, to express an indefinite idea, without any distinction of gender and number; *dieses* is then generally contracted into *dies*: *dies ist ein schöner Vogel, this is a beautiful bird; dies sind*

reife Erdbeeren, these are ripe strawberries; jenes sind gebratene Kastanien, those are roasted chestnuts; das sind gute Zeichen, those are good signs.

4. *Der, die, das*, has in the genitive singular and plural, and in the dative plural, other forms besides that of the definite article. The form of the definite article is used before a substantive: *ich erinnere mich nicht des Umstandes*, I do not remember that circumstance. The other form is required when the pronoun is used substantively: *traue niemals denen, welche dir schmeicheln*, never trust those who flatter thee; *ich kann mich dessen nicht erinnern*, I cannot remember that. There is also a difference between *derer* and *deren* in the genitive plural: *derer* is used when a relative refers to it: *schäfe die Freundschaft derer, welche dich manchmal tadeln*, value the friendship of those who sometimes blame thee; but, *hütte dich vor falschen Menschen, es gibt deren viele*, beware of false men, there are many of them.

5. It has been mentioned (page 88) that the genitive and dative cases of the demonstrative pronoun in the neuter gender, are used instead of the third personal, when inanimate objects are represented. The genitive *dessen*, *deren*, *desse[n]*, is also employed instead of the possessive pronoun, when it refers to the object, not to the subject of the sentence, (like the Latin *ejus*) to avoid ambiguity: *er malte seinen Bruder, und dessen Sohn*, he painted his cousin, and his (the cousin's) son; *sie malte ihre Schwester, und deren Tochter*. It is likewise preferred to the possessive pronoun, when the latter refers to inanimate objects: *der Baum und dessen Zweige und Blätter*, the tree and its twigs and leaves.

6. *Derselbige* and *der nämliche* are sometimes used instead of *derselbe*.

7. The adverb *eben* gives an additional force to the demonstrative pronoun, like the English *very*: *eben derselbe Mann*, the very same man; *eben diese Blume*, this very flower.

8. The demonstrative adverbs *hier*, *here*; *da*, *there*, are frequently employed instead of demonstrative pronouns when they are connected with prepositions which govern the dative or accusative case, and represent inanimate objects or abstract ideas; and *always* when these pronouns are used indefinitely with such prepositions. They form with the preposition one word, of which the adverb is the first component. *Hier* represents *dieser*, *e*, *es*; *da*, *jener*, *e*, *es*; the former sometimes loses the final *r* before a consonant, and the latter receives *r* before a vowel and *n*: as, *hiermit*, herewith; *hieraus*, hereout; *davon*, therefrom; *damit*, therewith; *darüber*, thereby; *darnach*, thereafter. Prepositions which govern the genitive case, do not coalesce with these adverbs; they require the genitive of the pronoun: *deswegen*, on that account; *trotz dessen*, in spite of that.

9. Of *beß*, *der*, and *gleich*, compounds have been formed, which are used like demonstrative and relative pronouns: *beßgleichen*, *bergleichen*, but they are indeclinable: *ich habe keinen Umgang mit Bergleichen Leuten*, I have no intercourse with such-like people; *bergleichen Häuser* habe ich nie gesehen, such-like houses I have never seen; *Brot*, *beßgleichen* ich nie geschmeckt habe, bread, the like of which I have never tasted. *Deß* and *der* are also compounded with *Fall*, case; *Gestalt*, form; *Maß*, measure, to form adverbs: *beßfalls*, for that reason; *bergestalt*, in such a manner; *bermaßen*, in such a degree; *beßgleichen*, likewise. *Dermalen* for *damals*; *derinst* for *einst* also occur.

CHAPTER IV.

THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are either definite or indefinite. They are definite when they refer to definite persons or things, or when they are used adjectively before substantives. They are indefinite when they are applied to the most general and indefinite idea of persons or things.

(A)

The definite relative and interrogative pronoun, referring to persons as well as to inanimate objects, is—

Sing.	Plur.
N. <i>welcher</i> , <i>welche</i> , <i>welches</i> .	<i>welche</i> , who, which.
G. <i>welches</i> , <i>welcher</i> , <i>welches</i> .	<i>welcher</i> .
D. <i>welchem</i> , <i>welcher</i> , <i>welchem</i> .	<i>welchen</i> .
A. <i>welchen</i> , <i>welche</i> , <i>welches</i> .	<i>welche</i> .

Instead of *welcher*, *e*, *es*, the demonstrative *der*, *die*, *das*, is frequently employed, and declined in the following manner:—

Sing.	Plur.
N. <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> .	<i>die</i> .
G. <i>dessen</i> , <i>deren</i> , <i>desse[n]</i> .	<i>deren</i> .
D. <i>dem</i> , <i>der</i> , <i>dem</i> .	<i>denen</i> .
A. <i>den</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>das</i> .	<i>die</i> .

Examples.—Ich wünsche das Buch zu sehen, *welches Sie mir gestern zeigten*, I wish to see the book which you showed me yesterday; *welches Buch wünschen Sie zu sehen?* which book do you wish to see? ich habe den Mann gesehen, von *welchem Sie gestern sprachen*, I have seen the man of whom you spoke yesterday; die Federn, *die* (or *welche*) *Sie mir schickten*, sind sehr schön, the pens which you sent me are very beautiful.

Note 1.—The pronoun *der*, *die*, *das*, is always used after the first and second personal pronouns, when these pronouns, for the sake of emphasis, are repeated after the relative, in which case the verb agrees with the personal pronoun: as, *ich, der ich ihn sah*, I (masc.) who saw him; *ich, (sem.) die ich ihn sah*. *Du, der du uns segnest*, *bist unser Vater im Himmel*; thou who blessest us, art our Father in heaven; *wir, die wir spielten*, we who played; *ihr, die ihr unartig gewesen seyd*, ye who have been naughty. Also after the third personal pronoun when employed instead of the second, in addressing a person: *Sie, die Sie mir bestimmten*, you who agreed with me. When the pronoun is not repeated, the

nominative of the relative requires the verb in the third person: *du warst es, der* or *welcher es mir sagte.*

Note 2.—When the genitive of the definite relative pronoun is required, *deffen, deren, bessien,* is preferred to *welches, er, es,* when used without a substantive, because the latter, having the same terminations as the masculine and neuter of the nominative, might cause ambiguity. But this genitive never stands after the word by which it is governed: *der Mann, deffen* (not *welches*) *haus ich sah,* the man whose house I saw; *die Frau, deren* (not *welcher*) *Kind krank ist,* the woman whose child is ill; *die Liebe, deren Uebung unsere Pflicht ist,* *ist eine edle Tugend,* charity, the practice of which is our duty, is a noble virtue. But no article can stand between the genitive of the relative and the word which governs it. The genitive of *welcher, e, es,* is used when the pronoun stands before a substantive to which it belongs like an adjective: *in welches Menschen Herz Gott schaut, er sieht darin viele Fehler,* in what man's heart God may look, he sees therein many faults.

Note 3.—In common conversation *welcher, e, es,* is sometimes, though incorrectly, used for the antiquated *etwelcher, e, es,* synonymous with *einiges, einige:* *haben Sie noch Hühner?* have you still fowls? *ja, ich habe noch welche,* i. e. *einige,* yes, I have still some; or, *ich habe deren noch.*

Note 4.—The use of *als, as,* before a relative pronoun, in an explanatory capacity, like the Latin *quippe* before *qui, als* *welcher, als der,* is becoming more and more obsolete. Also the use of the adverb *so,* for *welcher, e, es,* is antiquated; but it frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible. (1 Cor. xi. 19. 1 Peter, iii. 1.)

Note 5.—The relative pronoun is never omitted in German: the book you love so much is not to be had, *das Buch, welches Sie so sehr lieben, ist nicht zu haben.*

Note 6.—The relative adverb *wo,* is frequently used with prepositions which govern the dative or accusative case, instead

of the relative pronoun, when it refers to inanimate objects or abstract ideas: *as, das ist eine Tugend, woran, or an welcher ein Christ erkannt wird,* that is a virtue by which a Christian is known. (See note 6, page 104.)

(B)

The indefinite relative and interrogative pronoun is *wer*, applied to persons without distinction of sex; *was*, applied to inanimate objects. It has neither feminine gender nor plural number: for when either is required, the pronoun cannot be indefinite. This pronoun is never used adjectively, as the English *what*; what kindness, not *was* Güte, but *welche* Güte; what man, not *wer* Mann, but *welcher* Mann. It is declined as follows:—

N. <i>wer</i> , who.	<i>was</i> , what.
G. <i>wessen</i> (or <i>weß</i>), whose.	<i>wissen</i> (or <i>weß</i>), of what.
D. <i>wem</i> , to whom.	_____
A. <i>wen</i> , whom.	<i>was</i> , what.

Examples.—Können Sie mir sagen, *wer* dieses gethan hat? can you tell me who has done this? *wen* haben Sie gesehen? whom have you seen? *wessen Pferd* haben Sie gekauft? whose horse have you bought? *ich weiß nicht, was* er sagte, I do not know what he said; Sie haben mir nicht gesagt, *wem* Sie *das Geld* gaben, you have not told me to whom you gave the money; *wer* meinen Freund K. kennt, muß ihn lieben, whoever knows my friend K. must love him.

Note 1.—The indefinite relative pronouns *wer* and *was*, are followed by the demonstrative *der* and *das*, when a particular stress is to be laid upon it: *wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen*, or *muß fühlen*, he who will not hear must feel; *was heute wahr ist, das muß auch morgen wahr seyn*, what is true to-day, must also be true to-morrow; *wer gar zu viel bedenkt, wird wenig leisten*, whoever considers too much, will perform little.—(*Schiller's Tell.*) The relative *wer* cannot be used

after *der*: not *der*, *wer nicht hören will*, *muß fühlen*, but *derjenige, welcher nicht hören will*, *muß fühlen*. The demonstrative must not be omitted when it is not in the same case with the relative: *wer da weiß gutes zu thun, und thut es nicht, dem ist es Sünde*, to him that knoweth to do good and doeth it not, it is sin. (*Jam. iv. 17.*)

Note 2.—*Was* is always used after the neuter of the indefinite demonstrative pronoun *das* either expressed or understood, and after the indefinite numerals *alles*, *etwas*, *manches*, *nichts*, *viel*, *wenig*: *ich sage, was ich weiß*, I say what I know; *alles, was ich habe*, all that I have; *das ist etwas, was ich nicht verstehe*, that is something which I do not understand.

Note 3.—*Was* is sometimes used in the most indefinite manner for *wer*: *früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will*, he practises early who wishes to become a master.—(*Schiller's Tell*). It also occurs in the signification of *warum*, why (Greek *rī*): *was schlägst du mich?* why dost thou strike me?

Note 4.—The adverb *da* is frequently inserted after *der*, *die*, *das*, and *wer*, *was*, when employed as indefinite relatives: *wer da weiß gutes zu thun, und thut's nicht, dem ist's Sünde*; *alles, was da lebt und webt*, all that lives and moves. This *da* cannot be translated into English.

Note 5.—*Was für ein*, what, is used as a relative and interrogative pronoun, to express the species or quality of a person or thing (Latin *qualis*). *Ich weiß nicht, was für ein Mann er ist*, I do not know what kind of man he is; *was für Wein ist dies?* what sort of wine is this? *Ein* has the termination of the genders when used substantively: *was für einer ist es?* Only *ein* is declined, and *was für* remain unaltered: genitive, *was für eines*, *er*, *es*; dative, *was für einem*, *er*, *em*, &c. *Ein* is omitted before the plural number; also before names of materials: *was für Bücher?* *was für Wein?* *Was für ein*, and *was für* are also employed to express surprise and admiration: *was für ein Mann!* *was für ein Glück!* In

this signification, however, *welch* before the indefinite article, and *welcher*, *e*, *es*, without the article, are likewise used : *welch* ein Mann ! genitive, *welch* eines Mannes ! *welch* ein Glück ! *welche* Schönheit. *Was* and *für* are sometimes separated by the insertion of other words: *was* der Mann auch *für* große Thaten mag gethan haben, not what the man may have done for great deeds, but whatever great deeds the man may have done.

Note 6.—The relative and interrogative adverb *wo*, where, is, like the demonstrative adverb *da*, always used with prepositions which govern the dative or accusative case, instead of the indefinite neuter *was*, *wem*; and *r* is inserted when the preposition begins with a vowel or *n*: *as*, *worin*, *wherein*; *woraus*, *whereout*; *wornach*, *whereafter*; *worüber*, *whereon*; *woburch*, *whereby*; *können Sie mir sagen, wovon* (not *von* *wem*) *er gesprochen hat?* can you tell me of what he has spoken ? *von wem* would mean, of whom.

Note 7.—The adverb *ever*, after these pronouns, is expressed in German by *auch* and *immer*, in sentences with the subjunctive mood or an auxiliary verb of mood. *Auch* is preferred when *immer* which has the signification of always may cause ambiguity: *wer es auch gesagt haben mag, es ist nicht wahr*, whoever may have said it, it is not true; *was es immer sey*, whatever it may be.

General Remarks.

He who is contented is rich, may be translated by *derjenige, welcher zufrieden ist, ist reich* (see the Demonstrative Pronoun); but as *he who* stand for *whoever*, it may also be translated, *wer zufrieden ist, ist reich*, or *der ist reich*. *Whatever* has sometimes the signification of *all that, alles was*; and must be rendered by those two words when it is preceded by a preposition: *in whatever you do follow the precepts of your Lord, in allem, was du thust, folge den Vorschriften deines Herrn*. But when *whatever* is used adjectively before a

substantive, it must be translated by *welcher*—*auch*: in whatever hands these letters may fall, in *welche Hände* diese Briefe *auch* fallen.

CHAPTER V.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

These are: *einer*, *e*, *es*, one, some one; *keiner*, *e*, *es*, no one; *jemand*, somebody, anybody; *niemand*, nobody; *etwas*, something, anything; *nichts* (contraction of *nicht etwas*), nothing; and *man* (French *on*).

Einer and *keiner* are sometimes used instead of *jemand* and *niemand*: *ist einer getötet worden?* *nein, keiner*, has anybody been killed? no, no one.

These pronouns are used as substantives only, whilst the indefinite numerals are used also as adjectives.

Jemand and *niemand* take *es* in the genitive; in the dative they either remain unaltered or take *en*; the accusative is like the nominative: *jemand*, genitive *jemanbes*, dative *jemand* or *jemanden*, accusative *jemand*.

Etwas and *nichts* are indeclinable; as pronouns, they are only used substantively: *ich habe dir etwas zu sagen*, I have something to say to you; *ich habe nichts erhalten*, I have received nothing. In common conversation, *was* is used for *etwas*: *hast du was erhalten?*

Man, one, they, people, occurs only in the nominative case. When another case is required, it is formed from *einer*: *man lacht gewöhnlich*, wenn einem *etwas lächerliches* begegnet, people generally laugh when something ridiculous occurs to them; *wenn man Geld verloren hat*, so thut *es* einem gewöhnlich leid, when one has lost money, one is generally sorry for it; *es ist unmögl*, mit diesem *Manne* zu sprechen; er will nie auf einen hören, it is useless to speak to this man, he will never listen

to you (i. e. to one). The possessive pronoun referring to man is *sein*: *man ist froh, wenn man seine Arbeit gethan hat*, a person is glad when he has done his work. *Man* is frequently employed in German, with the verb in the active voice, when in English the passive is used: *man hat ihn ergriffen*, he has been caught.

Note.—The indeclinable word *selbst* or *selber* (self), has two significations, (*a*) *self*: *der Knig selbst*, the king himself; *ich selbst sah ihn*, I myself saw him; (*b*) *even*: *selbst sein Vater konnte nichts mit ihm machen*, even his father could do nothing with him. *Sch selbstvierter*, or *selbvierter*, *ich selbstfnster*, means, I and three, four others, I myself the fourth, the fifth. It is used with the adverb *da*, and the preposition *von*: *dasselbst*, there, at the same place; *von selbst*, of itself.

SECTION IV.

T H E V E R B S .

1. *Auxiliary Verbs of Tenses.*
2. *The Conjugation of the Regular Transitive Verb.*
3. *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.*
4. *Irregular Verbs.*
5. *Intransitive and Neuter Verbs.*
6. *Reflective Verbs.*
7. *Impersonal Verbs.*
8. *Compound Verbs.*

Preliminary Remarks.

1. The principal parts of the verb in the active voice are: 1, The Infinitive Mood. 2, The Present Tense. 3, The Imperfect; and 4, The Preterite Participle. If the verb be regular, the formation of these parts is very simple. From the infinitive mood which always ends in *en*, *lieben*, *to love*,

the first person of the present tense is formed by dropping the n: *ich liebe*, I love; from the present, the imperfect is formed by adding te: *ich liebete* (contracted *liebte*); and from the imperfect, the participle, by dropping the final e, and putting the augment ge before it: *geliebt*. From these parts all other tenses and moods are formed.

2. The terminations of the persons of the present and imperfect are as follows:—

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.
Sing.		Sing.	
1 e.	1 e.	1 ete, or te.	1 ete.
2 est, or st.	2 est.	2 etest, or test.	2 etest.
3 et, or t.	3 e.	3 ete, or te.	3 ete.
Plur.		Plur.	
1 en.	1 en.	1 eten, or ten.	1 eten.
2 et, or t.	2 et.	2 etet, or tet.	2 etet.
3 en.	3 en.	3 eten, or ten.	3 eten.
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Sing.		Plur.	
2 e.		en.	
3 e.			
Plur.		Plur.	
1 en.		1 eten, or ten.	1 eten.
2 et, or t.		2 etet, or tet.	2 etet.
3 en.		3 eten, or ten.	3 eten.
PARTICIPLES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres. end.		Pret. et, or t.	

Note.—The e before the st or t of the indicative and imperative moods, and the preterite participle, is generally omitted if the word can be pronounced without difficulty: as, *liebte*; but it should never be omitted between st and the hissing sounds, s, ſ, z; nor between gn and st or t: *segnete*, not *segnte*; *leugnete*, not *leugnte*. Nor can any regular verb lose the e which has a t or d for its last radical.

consonant: *as*, *fürchten*, *fürchtet*, *gefürchtet*; *blenden*, *blendet*, *geblendet*.

3. The perfect, pluperfect, and future tenses are formed by means of auxiliary verbs.

4. In the German language, there is no special form for that tense, which in the Greek verb is called the Aorist; a tense which is used to express a past action or event without any relation to another, and without representing that action or event as still existing in its consequences. In German, as in Latin, the perfect is used instead. *Ich habe geschrieben*, I have written, may be expressed by *ἴγεαψα* and *ἴγεαφα*; but the former merely denotes that there was a time when I wrote; while the latter signifies that my writing is finished, completed. (See the use of the tenses in the Syntax.)

5. Besides the above mentioned moods (the indicative, the subjunctive, the imperative, and the infinitive), there is a conditional mood of the present, the perfect, the first and second future. That of the present and perfect is, *in form*, the subjunctive mood of the imperfect and pluperfect, and that of the future is formed by the subjunctive mood of the third auxiliary, as will be apparent from the paradigm of the verb; but no notice will here be taken of the conditional mood of the present and perfect. Its use will be explained in the Syntax.

6. A supine is formed by putting the preposition *zu* before the infinitive; and a future participle, by putting that preposition before the present participle: *zu lieben*, *zu liebend*, of loving, to be loved. (See the use of the infinitive and participle in the Syntax.)

7. The whole of the passive voice is formed by means of an auxiliary verb.

Note.—The form of the verb in the third person singular being the same for the masculine feminine and neuter, the pronouns for the feminine and neuter will be omitted in all paradigms, to avoid the unnecessary repetition of *er*, *sie*, *es*.

CHAPTER I.

AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSES.

Auxiliary verbs of tenses are those which are used for the formation of certain tenses, and without which no complete conjugation can be formed. Of such there are three in German: (a) *haben*, to have; (b) *seyn*, to be; (c) *werden*, to become. They are all irregular.

These three auxiliary verbs are also real verbs, as in the following examples: *ich habe genug davon*, I have enough of it; *ich bin zufrieden*, I am contented; *er wird reich*, he becomes rich. *Haben* is conjugated by *haben*, *seyn* by *seyn*, *werden* by *seyn*: *ich habe genug davon gehabt*, I have had enough of it; *ich bin zufrieden gewesen*, I have been contented; *er ist reich geworden*, he has become rich.

Note.—Though *haben* has the signification of *besitzen*, to possess, yet it has no passive: *ich habe ein Haus*, I have a house; but not *ein Haus wird von mir gehabt*. We, therefore, cannot say: recourse must be had; we say: *Zuflucht muß genommen werden*, recourse must be taken.

(a) *H a b e n*, TO HAVE.

Principal parts:—*Haben, habe, hatte, gehabt*.

Indicative.

<i>Ich habe</i> , I have.	<i>Du hast</i> , thou hast.
<i>Er hat</i> , he has.	<i>Wir haben</i> , we have.
<i>Ihr habt</i> , ye have.	<i>Sie haben</i> , they have.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Ich habe</i> , I may have.	<i>Du habest</i> , thou mayst have.
<i>Er habe</i> , he may have.	<i>Wir haben</i> , we may have.
<i>Ihr habet</i> , ye may have.	<i>Sie haben</i> , they may have.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

IMPERFECT.

Ich hatte, I had.
 Du hattest, thou hadst.
 Er hatte, he had.
 Wir hatten, we had.
 Ihr hattet, ye had.
 Sie hatten, they had.

Ich hätte, I might have.
 Du hättest, thou mightst have.
 Er hätte, he might have.
 Wir hätten, we might have.
 Ihr hätten, ye might have.
 Sie hätten, they might have.

PERFECT.

Ich habe gehabt, I have had. Ich habe gehabt, I may have had.
 Du hast gehabt, thou hast Du hast gehabt, thou mayst
 had, &c. &c. have had, &c. &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte gehabt, I had had. Ich hätte gehabt, I might have
 had.
 Du hattest gehabt, thou hadst Du hattest gehabt, thou mightst
 had, &c. have had, &c.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde haben, I shall have. Ich werde haben, I shall have.
 Du wirst haben, thou wilt have. Du werdest haben, &c.
 Er wird haben, he will have. Er werde haben, &c.
 Wir werden haben, we shall, &c. Wir werden haben, &c.
 Ihr werdet haben, ye will have. Ihr werdet haben, &c.
 Sie werden haben, they will, &c. Sie werden haben, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde gehabt haben, I Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall
 shall have had. have had.
 Du wirst gehabt haben, thou Du werdest gehabt haben, thou
 wilt have had, &c. wilt have had, &c.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

*Ich würde haben, I should have.
Du würdest haben, thou wouldst have.
Er würde haben, he would have.
Wir würden haben, we should have.
Ihr würdet haben, ye would have.
Sie würden haben, they would have.*

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

*Ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had.
Du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had.*

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Habe (du), have (thou).</i>	<i>Haben wir, let us have.</i>
<i>Habe er, let him have.</i>	<i>Habt (ihr), have (ye).</i>
	<i>Haben sie, let them have.</i>

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. Haben, to have.
Perf. Gehabt haben, to have had.
Fut. Haben werden, to be about to have.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Habend, having. Pret. Gehabt, had.

Note.—Instead of the first person plural of the imperative mood, the imperative mood of the auxiliary verb of mood lassen, with the infinitive is most frequently employed: lieben wir, is expressed either by laß uns lieben, or laßt uns lieben, or lassen Sie uns lieben, according to the person or persons addressed. This remark refers to all the verbs.

(b) *Seyn, to be.*

The principal parts of this auxiliary verb are derived from different roots, and are therefore quite irregular *Seyn, bin, war, gewesen.*

Indicative.

Ich bin, I am.
 Du bist, thou art.
 Er ist, he is.
 Wir sind, we are.
 Ihr seid, ye are.
 Sie sind, they are.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Ich sey, I may be.
 Du seyest (seyst), thou mayst be.
 Er sey, he may be.
 Wir seyen (seyn), we may be.
 Ihr seyet, ye may be.
 Sie seyen (seyn), they may be.

IMPERFECT.

Ich war, I was.
 Du warest (wart), thou wast.
 Er war, he was.
 Wir waren, we were.
 Ihr wartet (wart), ye were.
 Sie waren, they were.

Ich wäre, I might be.
 Du wärest (wärft), thou, &c.
 Er wäre, he might be.
 Wir wären, we might be.
 Ihr wäret (wårt), ye might be.
 Sie wären, they might be.

PERFECT.

Ich bin gewesen, I have been. Ich sey gewesen, I may have been.
 Du bist gewesen, thou hast Du seyest gewesen, thou mayst
 been, &c. have been, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war gewesen, I had been. Ich wäre gewesen, I might have
 been.
 Du warest (wart) gewesen, Du wärest (wårft) gewesen, thou
 thou hadst been, &c. mightst have been, &c.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde seyn, I shall be. Ich werbe seyn, I shall be.
 Du wirst seyn, thou wilt be, &c. Du werbest seyn, thou wilt be, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall
 have been. have been.
 Du wirst gewesen seyn, thou Du werbest gewesen seyn, thou
 wilt have been, &c. wilt have been, &c.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

*Ich würde seyn, I should be.
Du würdest seyn, thou wouldst be, &c.*

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

*Ich würde gewesen seyn, I should have been.
Du würdest gewesen seyn, thou wouldst have been, &c.*

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sey (bu), be (thou).</i>	<i>Seyn wir, let us be.</i>
<i>Sey er, let him be.</i>	<i>Seyt (ihr), be (ye).</i>
	<i>Seyn sie, let them be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. Seyn, to be.
Perf. Gewesen seyn, to have been.
Fut. Seyn werben, to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Gegenb, being. Perf. Gewesen, been.

*Note.—An antiquated form of the infinitive *wesen*, is now only employed as a substantive: *das Wesen, ein Wesen*, the being, a being; and an antiquated form of the present participle *wesend*, is found in two adjectives, *anwesend*, present; *abwesend*, absent. The participle *seyend*, is very rarely used by correct writers.*

(c) *Werden, to become.*

Principal parts:—*Werben, werbe, wurde, geworden.*

This auxiliary verb has a special form for the singular of the aorist: *ich warb, du warbst, er ward*; but as no other verb has this peculiarity, it may be dispensed with; most authors always use *wurde*. The preterite participle is *ge-*

worben, when it is used as a real verb; but *worben* when employed as an auxiliary verb, to avoid the re-occurrence of the augment *ge*. This auxiliary is used to form the future of the active and the whole of the passive voice.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

<i>Sch werbe, I become.</i>	<i>Sch werbe, I may become.</i>
<i>Du wirst, thou becomest.</i>	<i>Du werdest, thou mayst become.</i>
<i>Er wird, he becomes.</i>	<i>Er werde, he may become.</i>
<i>Wir werden, we become.</i>	<i>Wir werden, we may become.</i>
<i>Ihr werbet, ye become.</i>	<i>Ihr werbet, ye may become.</i>
<i>Sie werden, they become.</i>	<i>Sie werden, they may become.</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>Sch wurde, I became.</i>	<i>Sch würde, I might become.</i>
<i>Du wurdest, thou becamest.</i>	<i>Du würdest, thou mightst, &c.</i>
<i>Er wurde, he became.</i>	<i>Er würde, he might become.</i>
<i>Wir wurden, we became.</i>	<i>Wir würden, we might become.</i>
<i>Ihr wurdet, ye became.</i>	<i>Ihr würdet, ye might become.</i>
<i>Sie wurden, they became.</i>	<i>Sie würden, they might become.</i>

PERFECT.

<i>Sch bin geworden, I have become, &c.</i>	<i>Sch sey geworden, I may have become, &c.</i>
---	---

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Sch war geworden, I had become, &c.</i>	<i>Sch wäre geworden, I might have become, &c.</i>
--	--

FIRST FUTURE.

<i>Sch werbe werden, I shall become, &c.</i>	<i>Sch werde werben, I shall be- come, &c.</i>
--	--

SECOND FUTURE.

<i>Sch werbe geworden seyn, I shall have become, &c.</i>	<i>Sch werde geworden seyn, I shall have become, &c.</i>
--	--

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde werden, I should become, &c.,

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde geworden seyn, I should have become.

IMPERATIVE.

Werde (bu), become (thou). Werben wir, let us become.

Werde er, let him become. Werbet (ihr), become (ye).

Werden sie, let them become.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Werben, to become.

Perf. Geworden seyn, to have become.

Fut. Werden werden, to be about to become.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Werbend, becoming. Pret. Geworden, become.

CHAPTER II.

THE CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERB.

The Verb is regular when the vowel or diphthong of the radical syllable remains the same in all its parts, and the imperfect ends in *te* and the participle in *et* or *t*.

Transitive Verbs have an active and a passive voice.

Those verbs are called *transitive* which express an action that passes over to an object: as, ich liebe den Knaben, I love the boy; ich lobt seinen Fleiß, I praise his industry. The perfect and pluperfect of all transitive verbs are made by *haben*.

Note.—All simple derivative verbs are regular: as, heiligen, to sanctify, from *heilig*, holy. But whether all regular verbs are derivatives is doubtful.

(a) *Active Voice.*

Lieben, TO LOVE.

Principal parts:—Lieben, liebe, liebte, geliebt.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

Ich liebe, I love.
Du liebst, thou lovest.
Er liebt, he loves.
Wir lieben, we love.
Ihr liebt, ye love.
Sie lieben, they love.

Ich liebe, I may love.
Du liebest, thou mayst love.
Er liebe, he may love.
Wir lieben, we may love.
Ihr liebet, ye may love.
Sie lieben, they may love.

IMPERFECT.

Ich liebte, I loved.
Du liebtest, thou lovedst.
Er liebte, he loved.
Wir liebten, we loved.
Ihr liebtet, ye loved.
Sie liebten, they loved.

Ich liebete, I might love.
Du liebetest, thou mightst, &c.
Er liebete, he might love.
Wir liebeten, we might love.
Ihr liebetet, ye might love.
Sie liebeten, they might love.

PERFECT.

Ich habe geliebt, I have loved, Ich habe geliebt, I may have
&c. loved, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte geliebt, I had loved, Ich hätte geliebt, I might have
&c. loved, &c.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde lieben, I shall love, Ich werde lieben, I shall love,
&c. &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall
have loved, &c. have loved, &c.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde lieben, I should love.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde geliebt haben, I should have loved.

IMPERATIVE.

Liebe (du), love (thou). Lieben wir, let us love.

Liebe er, let him love. Liebet (ihr), love (ye).

Lieben sie, let them love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Lieben, to love.

Perf. Geliebt haben, to have loved.

Fut. Lieben werden, to be about to love.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Liebend, loving. Pret. Geliebt, loved.

Conjugate in the same way the following transitive and intransitive verbs: loben, to praise; leben, to live; taufen, to buy; fühlen, to feel; eilen, to hasten; danken, to thank.

L e i t e n , TO LEAD.

Principal parts:—Leiten, leite, leitete, geleitet.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Ich leite, I lead.

Ich leite, I may lead.

Du leitest, thou leadest.

Du leitest, thou mayst lead.

Er leitet, he leads.

Er leite, he may lead.

Wir leiten, we lead.

Wir leiten, we may lead.

Ihr leitet, ye lead.

Ihr leitet, ye may lead.

Sie leiten, they lead.

Sie leiten, they may lead.

Indicative.

Ich leitete, I led.
 Du leitestest, thou ledst.
 Er leitete, he led.
 Wir leiteten, we led.
 Ihr leitetet, ye led.
 Sie leiteten, they led.

*Subjunctive.***IMPERFECT.**

Ich leitete, I might lead.
 Du leitestest, thou mightst lead.
 Er leitete, he might lead.
 Wir leiteten, we might lead.
 Ihr leitetet, ye might lead.
 Sie leiteten, they might lead.

PERFECT.

Ich habe geleitet, I have led. Ich habe geleitet, I may have led.
 Du hast geleitet, thou hast led. Du hast geleitet, thou mayst
 &c. &c. &c. have led, &c. &c. &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte geleitet, I had led. Ich hätte geleitet, I might have
 led.
 Du hattest geleitet, thou hadst led. Du hättest geleitet, thou mightst
 led, &c. &c. &c. have led, &c. &c. &c.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde leiten, I shall lead. Ich werde leiten, I shall lead.
 Du wirst leiten, thou wilt lead. Du werdest leiten, thou wilt lead,
 &c. &c. &c. &c. &c. &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde geleitet haben, I shall have led. Ich werde geleitet haben, I
 shall have led.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde leiten, I should lead.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde geleitet haben, I should have led.

IMPERATIVE.

Leite (du), lead thou.
 Leite er, let him lead.

Leiten wir, let us lead.
 Leitet (ihr), lead (ye).
 Leiten sie, let them lead.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Leiten, to lead.*Perf.* Geleitet haben, to have led.*Fut.* Leiten werden, to be about to lead.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Leitend, leading. *Pret.* Geleitet, led.

Conjugate in the same way the following transitive and intransitive verbs: fürchten, to fear; achten, to esteem; warten, to wait; antworten, to answer; mieten, to hire; beten, to pray; segnen, to bless; leugnen, to deny; leisten, to render.

Observations.

1. In those verbs which have l or r for their final radical consonant, the e of the termination en is always omitted in prose: as, sammeln for sammelen, to gather; bauern for bauen, to last; also frequently after h: as, blüh'n for blühen, to bloom; seh'n for sehen, to see; geh'n for gehen, to go; but in the latter case an apostrophe ought to be put instead of the e. When the l or r of the above-mentioned verbs is followed by e only as the characteristic termination of the person, the e of the root is left out: as, ich sammle for sammle; ich daure for dauere.

Handeln, TO ACT.

Present.

Ich handle.

Du handelst.

Er handelt.

Wir handeln.

Ihr handelt.

Sie handeln.

Imperfect.

Ich handelte.

&c. &c.

Klettern, TO CLIMB.

Present.

Ich klettere.

Du kletterst.

Er klettert.

Wir klettern.

Ihr klettern.

Sie klettern.

Imperfect.

Ich kletterte.

&c. &c.

2. Verbs of foreign origin ending in *iren* or *ieren*, and some German verbs formed by the termination *ieren*, do not take the augment *ge* in the preterite participle: *dociren*, to teach; *studiren*, to study; *circuliren*, to circulate; *marschiren*, to march; *buchstabiren*, to spell; *regieren*, to reign; *spazieren*, to walk; *barbieren*, to shave; participle *docirt*, *studirt*, &c. But some true German verbs, as, *zieren*, to adorn; *frieren*, to freeze, must not be confounded with them. The augment is also omitted when the infinitive has the prefix *ge*: as, *geloben*, to vow, part. *gelobt*; *gebrauchen*, to use, part. *gebraucht*.

(b) *Passive Voice.*

The passive voice is formed of the preterite participle and the auxiliary verb *werben*. As the verb *to be* is used in English to form the passive, and as this verb is likewise used with preterite participles as a neuter verb, expressing existence, most English students find it very difficult to distinguish between the passive and the neuter. *I am convinced*, may be the passive voice of the verb *to convince*; but it may also be the present tense of the verb *to be* with the preterite participle used adjectively: as, I am not so easily convinced, is passive, because it means, no one so easily convinces me; but, I am convinced it is true, is neuter, because it expresses a state or condition. In the first sentence *werben* must be used, in the second *seyn*: *ich werbe nicht so leicht überzeugt*; *ich bin überzeugt, es ist wahr*. *Das Kind wird angekleidet* (passive), the child is being dressed, some one dresses the child; *das Kind ist angekleidet* (neuter), the child is dressed; *der Fußboden wurde mit schwarzem Tuche bedeckt* (passive), the floor was covered with black cloth, some one was covering it; *der Fußboden war mit schwarzem Tuche bedeckt* (neuter), the floor was covered with black cloth. This subject requires particular attention.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Ich werde geliebt, I am loved. Ich werde geliebt, I may be loved.
Ich werde geleitet, I am led. Ich werde geleitet, I may be led.

IMPERFECT.

Ich wurde geliebt, I was loved. Ich würde geliebt, I might be
loved.

Ich wurde geleitet, I was led. Ich würde geleitet, I might be led.

PERFECT.

Ich bin geliebt worden, I have Ich sey geliebt worden, I may
been loved. have been loved.

Ich bin geleitet worden, I have Ich sey geleitet worden, I may
been led. have been led.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war geliebt worden, I had Ich wäre geliebt worden, I
been loved. might have been loved.

Ich war geleitet worden, I had Ich wäre geleitet worden, I
been led. might have been led.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde geliebt werden, I Ich werde geliebt werden, I
shall be loved. shall be loved.

Ich werde geleitet werden, I Ich werde geleitet werden, I
shall be led. shall be led.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde geliebt worden seyn, Ich werde geliebt worden seyn,
I shall have been loved. I shall have been loved.

Ich werde geleitet worden seyn, Ich werde geleitet worden seyn,
I shall have been led. I shall have been led.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde geliebt werden, I should be loved.

Ich würde geleitet werden, I should be led.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde geliebt worden seyn, I should have been loved.

Ich würde geleitet worden seyn, I should have been led.

IMPERATIVE

Werde (du) geliebt, be (thou) **Werben** wir geliebt, let us be
loved. loved.

Werbe er geliebt, let him be loved.
Werbet (ihr) geliebt, be (ye) loved.

Werde er geleitet, let him be led. Werdet (ihr) geleitet, be (ye) led.

Werden sie geliebt, let them
be loved.

Werden sie geleitet, let them
be led.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Geliebt werden, to be loved.

Geleitet werden, to be led.

Perf. Geliebt worden seyn, to have been loved.

Geleitet worden seyn, to have been led.

Fut. Werben geliebt werben, to be about to be loved.

Werden geleistet werden; to be about to be led.

PARTICIPLE.—*Geliebt*, loved.

Geleitet, led.

Note 1.—The participle *geliebt* belongs to the active as well as to the passive voice.

Note 2.—The passive voice is in German much less in use than in English. The indefinite personal pronoun man, with the active, is frequently used, instead of the passive in English: man hat noch nichts entdeckt, nothing yet has been discovered. Also reflective verbs are frequently employed to express the passive: der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden, the key has been found. (See the reflective verbs.)

Note 3.—The participle of the auxiliary worden is, in the perfect and pluperfect, sometimes left out; but it is more correct to use it.

CHAPTER III.

AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

Auxiliary verbs of mood are those which convey no idea in themselves, but give certain modifications to a *real* verb, by expressing the *possibility*, or *necessity*, or *lawfulness*, or *willingness*, or *permission* of what is indicated by that verb. They are :—*ich mag*, I may; *ich will*, I will; *ich soll*, I shall, or ought, or am to; *ich kann*, I can; *ich darf*, I dare; *ich muß*, I must; *ich lasse*, I let. They require the verb which they modify, in the infinitive; and when the participle of the past tenses is preceded by such an infinitive, this participle is changed into the infinitive: *ich habe ihn sehen können* (not *gekonnt*), I have been able to see him. But when the infinitive is not expressed, the participle is retained: as, *warum sind Sie nicht gekommen?* Ich habe nicht gekonnt, why did you not come? I was not able.

The verbs *may*, *will*, *shall*, *ought*, *can*, *must*, are very defective in English. They have neither an infinitive nor a preterite participle, and, consequently, no other tenses but the present and imperfect can be formed. In German, however, they have a perfect conjugation, which produces a great difference in the use of these verbs in the two languages; and the student must not expect to be able to use these verbs correctly, unless he makes himself thoroughly acquainted with their nature. Whenever a compound tense is required, recourse must, in English, be had either to a synonymous word, or to a transposition of the auxiliary: as, pres. *I can*; imperf. *I could*; perf. *I have been able*; fut. *I shall be able*; pres. *I must*; imperf. *I must*, *I was obliged*; perf. *I have been obliged*; pres. *I will*; imperf. *I would*; perf. *I have been willing*, or *I have wished*. There is, however, no synonymous word for *ought*; when, therefore, the pluperfect

is required, it is expressed by putting the auxiliary before the infinitive which *ought* modifies: as, *he ought to have done it*. In this sentence, *to have done*, is not the perf. inf. but the pres., and *he ought*, is not the imperf. but the subj. of the pluperf. and the sentence is to be translated: *er hätte es thun sollen*, not *er sollte es gethan haben*. (Latin *debuisset* or *debuit facere*, not *debet* or *deberet fecisse*). *May* and *can* are frequently used in the same way: as, *I could have done it* (i.e. I should have been able to do it), *ich hätte es thun können*, not *ich könnte es gethan haben* (Latin *potuissem facere*, not *possem fecisse*); *he might have come*, *er hätte kommen können* (Latin *potuisset venire*, not *posset venisse*). These verbs are all irregular, and as a perfect acquaintance with them is of great importance, I shall first state the conjugation of each, and then add the necessary observations on the use and signification of them.

1. *Ich mag*, I may, I like; inf. mögen.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich mag.</i>	<i>Subj.</i> <i>Ich möge.</i>
	<i>Du magst.</i>	<i>Du mögest.</i>
	<i>Er mag.</i>	<i>Er möge.</i>
	<i>Wir mögen.</i>	<i>Wir mögen.</i>
	<i>Ihr möget</i> (or <i>mögt</i>).	<i>Ihr möget.</i>
	<i>Sie mögen.</i>	<i>Sie mögen.</i>
<i>Imperf. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich mochte.</i>	<i>Ich möchte.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe gemocht.</i>	<i>Ich habe gemocht.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte gemocht.</i>	<i>Ich hätte gemocht.</i>
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde mögen.</i>	<i>Ich werde mögen.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde gemocht haben.</i>	<i>Ich werde gemocht haben.</i>
	<i>1st Conditional.</i> <i>Ich würde mögen.</i>	
	<i>2nd</i> ————— <i>Ich würde gemocht haben.</i>	

Ich mag arbeiten, I may work; *ich mochte arbeiten*, I might work; *ich habe arbeiten mögen*, I have been allowed to work; *ich werde arbeiten mögen*, I shall be allowed to work.

Observations.

Mögen signifies :—1. *To be permitted; to be at liberty;* but differs from dürfen, to be allowed: er mag lachen, means, he may laugh; he receives permission from another; er darf lachen, means, nobody can forbid him to laugh; wir mögen nicht in jenes Zimmer gehen, we are not permitted to go into that room; Sie mögen mich morgen erwarten, you may expect me to-morrow (see können); mag ich sehen, was Sie thun? may I see what you are doing? Mögen implies personal permission of another; whilst dürfen implies an unquestionable liberty. Wir haben nicht in das Zimmer gehen mögen, we have not been allowed to go into the room.—2. *Chance or possibility, or probability;* especially in the subjunctive of the imperfect (which is, as it has been mentioned, also the conditional of the present): es möchte regnen, it might rain; er möchte kommen, he might come. In the subjunctive mood of that tense it expresses also an *inclination*: ich möchte es bezweifeln, I am inclined to doubt it.—3. *A wish, desire;* especially in the subjunctive of the present and imperfect: möge er lange leben, may he live long; möge es der Himmel geben, may Heaven grant it; ich möchte wohl etwas davon haben, I should like to have some of it.—4. *To like;* ich mag es nicht thun, I do not like to do it; ich habe es nicht thun mögen (not gemocht), I have not liked to do it. In this signification it is often applied to what is eaten or drunk, without an infinitive: ich mag diesen Wein nicht, I do not like this wine: ich habe ihn nie gemocht (not mögen), I have never liked it.

Note.—In the signification *to be able*, it is antiquated; but frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible: mag (δύναται) auch ein Blinder einem Blinden den Weg weisen?—(Luke, vi. 39.) Vermögen with the preposition zu, is now used: ich vermag es nicht zu thun, I am not able to do it.

2. *Ich will*, I will, I am willing; inf. *wollen*.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich will.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich wollte.</i>
	<i>Du willst.</i>		<i>Du wolltest.</i>
	<i>Er will.</i>		<i>Er wollte.</i>
	<i>Wir wollen.</i>		<i>Wir wollten.</i>
	<i>Ihr wollet (wollt).</i>		<i>Ihr wolltet.</i>
	<i>Sie wollen.</i>		<i>Sie wollten.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ich wollte.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich wollte.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe gewollt.</i>		<i>Ich habe gewollt.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte gewollt.</i>		<i>Ich hätte gewollt.</i>
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde wollen.</i>		<i>Ich werde wollen.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde gewollt haben.</i>		<i>Ich werde gewollt haben.</i>

1st Conditional. *Ich würde wollen.*

2nd ————— *Ich würde gewollt haben.*

Wir wollen spielen, we will play; *wir wollten spielen*, we would play; *wir haben spielen wollen*, we have been willing to play; *wir werden spielen wollen*, we shall be willing to play.

Obs.—This auxiliary is never used to denote future time, not being an auxiliary verb of tenses. It expresses:—1. *Will, intention, inclination*: *ich will lesen*, I will read; *er will gehen*, he will go; *ich habe spielen wollen* (not *gewollt*), I have wished to play.—2. The subjunctive of the imperfect is used to express a wish, the realization of which is either impossible or considered as doubtful, like the Latin *velle*: *ich wollte, du könntest jetzt kommen*, I wish thou couldst come now.—3. It sometimes conveys the meaning, *to maintain, assert*: *er will den Kometen, welcher erwartet wird, schon gesehen haben*, he maintains (he will have it) that he has already seen the comet which is expected (like the Latin *velle*: see Virg. *Aen.* i. 630). *Ipse hostis Teucros insigni laude ferebat, seque ortum antiqua Teucrorum a stirpe volebat*. Cicero pro Archia poet. v. 10. *quod semper se Heracleensem esse voluit*. *Vult, quod nemo negat, quidquid ortum sit, interire*.—4. It is used to express

a command in strong terms: *wollt ihr vom Platze! be gone!*
willst du stille seyn! be quiet! will you be quiet!—5. It is often used elliptically: *er will es*, it is his will.

Note 1.—Of *wollen*, an imperative mood is formed: as, *wolle nur*, do but have the will.

Note 2.—*I will*, and *we will*, must be translated by *ich will*, *wir wollen*; but as *thou wilt*, *he will*, *you will*, *they will*, may be the auxiliary verb to form the future, as well as the auxiliary verb of mood, the student must first ascertain in which signification the verb is used, before he can translate it. *He will do it*, may mean, *er will es thun*, or *er wird es thun*. *They will go*, may mean, *sie wollen gehen*, or *sie werben gehen*. In the same way in the imperfect, *he would do it*, *but he could not*, *er wollte es thun*, aber *er konnte nicht*; *he would do it, if he could*, *er würde es thun*, wenn *er könnte*. This subject requires an accurate knowledge of the use of these verbs in English.

3. Ich soll, I shall, I ought, I am to; inf. sollen.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich soll.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich solle.</i>
	<i>Du sollst.</i>		<i>Du sollest.</i>
	<i>Er soll.</i>		<i>Er solle.</i>
	<i>Wir sollen.</i>		<i>Wir sollen.</i>
	<i>Ihr sollet (sollt).</i>		<i>Ihr sollet.</i>
	<i>Sie sollen.</i>		<i>Sie sollen.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ich sollte.</i>		<i>Ich sollte.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe gesollt.</i>		<i>Ich habe gesollt.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte gesollt.</i>		<i>Ich hätte gesollt.</i>
<i>1st. Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde sollen.</i>		<i>Ich werde sollen.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde gesollt haben.</i>		<i>Ich werde gesollt haben.</i>
	<i>1st Conditional.</i>	<i>Ich würde sollen.</i>	
	<i>2nd —————</i>		<i>Ich würde gesollt haben.</i>

Du sollst lesen, thou shalt read, or thou art to read; *du solltest lesen*, thou wast to read, or thou oughtst to read; *du hättest lesen sollen*, thou oughtst to have read.

Obs.—**Sollen** signifies:—1. To be obliged by *moral* necessity, enforced by the command or will of another: *ich sollte es thun*, I was to do it; *du sollst Gott, deinen Herrn, lieben von ganzem Herzen*, thou shalt love God, thy Lord, with thy whole heart; *er soll gehen*, he is to go; *wer soll gehen?* who is to go? *soll ich es haben?* am I to have it? *Sie sollen es thun*, you shall do it; *ich sollte es thun*, I ought to do it.—2. Duty: (Latin *debere*) as, *er sollte es thun*, he ought to do it; *er hätte es thun sollen* (not *gesollt*), he ought to have done it; *wir hätten ihn warnen sollen*, we ought to have warned him; *wir sollten einander lieben*, we ought to love each other; ought only occurs with the infinitive of the present, as in the first sentence, or with the infinitive of the perfect, as in the second. In the first place it is to be translated by *sollte*, in the second by *hätte*—*sollen*.—3. To be admitted, to be supposed: *du sollst mich nicht beleidigt haben*, I admit that thou didst not offend me.—4. To be said, reported: (Latin *dici*), *er soll ein gelehrter Mann seyn*, he is said to be a learned man; *das Parlament soll sich am 10ten dieses Monats versammeln*, it is said Parliament will assemble on the 10th of this month; *dieser Umstand soll sich nie zugetragen haben*, it is said that this circumstance never occurred.—5. The imperfect is used to express:—(a) a condition of a *definite* act or event, and a positive assertion dependant on the fulfilment of the condition: *wenn er kommen sollte*, so will ich es ihm sagen, if he should come, I will tell him so; the positive assertion is, I will tell him so, and the condition, if he should come. This differs from *wenn er käme*, so würde ich es ihm sagen, for in this sentence the assertion is not positive, but conditional. *Sollte das Wetter sich ändern*, so werde ich ausgehen, should the weather change, I shall go out; *wenn das Wetter sich änderte*, so würde ich ausgehen;—(b) a question implying either surprise or doubt: *sollte das wahr seyn?* can that be true?—6. **Sollen** is often used elliptically, an infinitive being

understood: (a) *thun*, to do; *was soll ich?* what am I to do? what am I wanted for? (b) *heissen*, to mean: *was soll das?* what is the meaning of that? *was soll diese Rede?* was sollen diese Wörter? (c) *dienen*, to serve: *wogu soll diese Klage?* what purpose does this complaint serve? *was soll mir ein eitler Titel?* of what use is a vain title to me?

Note.—*I shall do it*, cannot be translated by *ich soll es thun*, but by *ich werde es thun*; because I cannot give a command to myself. *Ich soll es thun*, must be translated by *I am to do it*. But *shall I do it?* must be translated by *soll ich es thun?* for I ask whether another person will give the command—*you shall do it*. *I ought to do it*, cannot be translated by *ich soll es thun*, but by *ich sollte es thun*, for *ought* is not the present, but the imperfect of *I owe*. Always bear in mind that the conjugation of the future is, *I shall*, *thou wilt*, *he will*, *we shall*, *you will*, *they will*, and that *he shall* cannot be the future, whilst *I shall* must be the future.

4. Ich kann, I can, I am able; inf. können.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich kann.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich können.</i>
	<i>Du kannst.</i>		<i>Du könnenst.</i>
	<i>Er kann.</i>		<i>Er können.</i>
	<i>Wir können.</i>		<i>Wir können.</i>
	<i>Ihr könnet (könnnt).</i>		<i>Ihr könnet.</i>
	<i>Sie können.</i>		<i>Sie können.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ich konnte.</i>		<i>Ich könnte.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe gekonnt.</i>		<i>Ich habe gekonnt.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte gekonnt.</i>		<i>Ich hätte gekonnt.</i>
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde können.</i>		<i>Ich werde können.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde gekonnt haben.</i>		<i>Ich werde gekonnt haben.</i>
	<i>1st Conditional.</i>	<i>Ich würde können.</i>	
	<i>2nd</i>	<i>————</i>	<i>Ich würde gekonnt haben.</i>

Er kann zeichnen, he can draw; **er konnte zeichnen**, he could draw; **er hat zeichnen können**, he has been able to draw; **er wird zeichnen können**, he will be able to draw; **er hätte zeichnen können**, he might have been able to draw, or he could have drawn.

Obs.—**Können** denotes:—1. Physical and moral possibility: **ich kann lesen und schreiben**, I can read and write; **ich habe heute nicht schreiben können** (not gekonnt), I have not been able to write to-day; **er kann jetzt wieder gehen**, he can now walk again.—2. A possible contingency, generally expressed in English by *may*: **Sie können mich morgen erwarten**, you may expect me to-morrow (see *mögen*); **er kann es verstanden haben**, he may have understood it; this differs from **er hat es verstanden können**, he has been able to understand it. **Sie könnten mir das Buch wohl geben**, you might, indeed, give me the book; **du hättest es mir wohl sagen können**, thou mightst, indeed, have informed me of it.—3. It is used elliptically, an infinitive being understood: (a) **thun**, to do; **wir können nicht immer, was wir wollen**, we cannot always do what we wish; (b) **sagen**, to say: **der Knabe hat seine Aufgabe nicht gekonnt** (not können), the boy has not been able to say his lesson; (c) **lesen, sprechen, verstehen**, to read, speak, understand: **er kann Deutsch**, he knows German.

5. Ich darf, I dare, I am allowed; inf. dürfen.

Pres. Ind. **Ich darf.**

Du darfst.

Er darf.

Wir dürfen.

Ihr dürftet (dürft).

Sie dürfen.

Subj. **Ich dürfe.**

Du dürfest.

Er dürfe.

Wir dürfen.

Ihr düriset.

Sie dürfen.

<i>Imperf.</i>	Ich durfte.	Ich durfte.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ich habe gedurft.	Ich habe gedurft.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Ich hatte gedurft.	Ich hätte gedurft.
<i>1st Fut.</i>	Ich werde dürfen.	Ich werde dürfen.
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	Ich werde gedurft haben.	Ich werde gedurft haben.
<i>1st Conditional.</i> Ich würde dürfen.		
<i>2nd</i>	—	Ich würde geburft haben.

Sie dürfen reden, they are allowed to speak; sie durften reden, they were allowed to speak; sie haben reden dürfen, they have been allowed to speak; sie werden reden dürfen, they will be allowed to speak.

Obs.—Dürfen signifies:—1. To dare, to venture: ich darf ihm die Wahrheit sagen, I venture to speak the truth to him.—2. To be allowed, not to be restrained: darf ich fragen? may I ask? (this differs from mag ich fragen? see mögen); Sie dürfen es wissen, you may know it; ich habe es nicht thun dürfen (not gedurft), I have not been allowed to do it. With the negative it is to be rendered by *may not*, *must not*, *dare not*: ich darf heute nicht ausgehen, denn ich habe mich erkältet, I must not go out to-day, for I have taken cold.—3. The subjunctive mood of the imperfect denotes, like möchte, a probable contingency, and may be translated by *might*, *may*, *need*, *should*, *would*: es dürfte vielleicht wahr seyn, it might, perhaps, be true.—4. It is also used elliptically: wir dürfen nicht, we are not allowed.

6. Ich muß, I must, I am obliged; inf. müssen.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i> Ich muß.	<i>Subj.</i> Ich müsse.
Du mußt.	Du müssest.
Er muß.	Er müsse.
Wir müssen.	Wir müssen.
Ihr müsstet (müßt).	Ihr müsstet.
Sie müssen.	Sie müssen.

<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ich mußte.</i>	<i>Ich müßte.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe gemußt.</i>	<i>Ich habe gemußt.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte gemußt.</i>	<i>Ich hätte gemußt.</i>
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde müssen.</i>	<i>Ich werbe müssen.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde gemußt haben.</i>	<i>Ich werbe gemußt haben.</i>

1st Conditional. *Ich würde müssen.*

2nd ————— Ich würde gemußt haben.

Du mußt ihm helfen, thou must help him; du mußtest ihm helfen, thou wast obliged to help him; du hast ihm helfen müssen, thou hast been obliged to help him; du wirst ihm helfen müssen, thou wilt be obliged to help him.

Obs.—Müssen has nearly the same signification as the English *must*: wir müssen alle offenbart werden vor dem Richtersthul Christi (2 Cor. v. 10); ein jeder Unterthan muß den Gesetzen des Landes gehorchen, every subject must obey the laws of the land; er muß ein reicher Mann seyn, he must be a rich man; ich muß meinen Freund vertheidigen, I must defend my friend; muß ich es thun? must I do it? ich habe es thun müssen, I have been obliged to do it. It is sometimes translated by *cannot but*, *could not but*: ich mußte ihm seine Bitte gewähren, I could not but grant his request. It is also used elliptically, an infinitive being understood: ich muß heute noch zurück (i. e. gehen), I must return to-day.

7. *Ich lasse*, I let, I make, I order; inf. *lassen*.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich lasse.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich lasse.</i>
	<i>Du lässest.</i>		<i>Du lassest.</i>
	<i>Er läßt.</i>		<i>Er lasse.</i>
	<i>Wir lassen.</i>		<i>Wir lassen.</i>
	<i>Ihr lasset (läßt).</i>		<i>Ihr lasset.</i>
	<i>Sie lassen.</i>		<i>Sie lassen.</i>

<i>Imperf.</i>	Ich ließ.	Ich ließe.
<i>Perf.</i>	Ich habe gelassen.	Ich habe gelassen.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Ich hatte gelassen.	Ich hätte gelassen.
<i>1st Fut.</i>	Ich werde lassen.	Ich werde lassen.
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	Ich werde gelassen haben.	Ich werde gelassen haben.

1st Conditional. Ich würde lassen.

2nd ————— Ich würde gelassen haben.

Imperative. Läßt du, Lasse er, Lassen wir, Lasset ihr, Lassen sie.

Er lässt seinen Sohn unterrichten, he has his son instructed ; er ließ seinen Sohn unterrichten, he ordered his son to be instructed ; er hat seinen Sohn unterrichten lassen, he has had his son instructed ; er wird seinen Sohn unterrichten lassen, he will order his son to be instructed.

Obs.—Lassen signifies :—1. To let, to suffer : ich lasse ihn gehen, I let him go ; ich habe ihn gehen lassen (not gelassen), I have suffered him to go.—2. To make : lasst ihn doch hinausgehen, pray, make him go out.—3. To leave : das lasse ich bleiben, I leave that alone.—4. To let go : ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich denn (Gen. xxxii. 26).—5. To cause, to get, to order, always with the infinitive of the active, although the signification be passive : ich habe meinen Schuhmacher kommen lassen, I have ordered my shoemaker to come ; der König hat den Verbrecher hinrichten lassen, the king has ordered the criminal to be executed ; ich habe mir ein Paar Schuhe machen lassen, I have had a pair of shoes made for me.—6. With the reflective pronoun for the third person, sich, it is to be rendered by *may*, *is to be* : das lässt sich nicht thun, that is not to be done ; davon ließe sich vieles sagen, of that much might be said ; das lässt sich nicht begreifen, that is not to be comprehended.

CHAPTER IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Those verbs are called irregular, which deviate from the formation and conjugation of lieben. This deviation takes place in a large number of verbs in the imperfect and the preterite participle; in several also in the present tense, especially in the second and third persons singular, and in the imperative mood.

The irregular verbs may be divided into two classes:—
 1. Such as have the regular terminations of the imperfect and participle, but change the radical vowel, and also in two, the consonant: as, nennen, to name, imperfect nannte, participle genannt.—2. Such as have not the termination te in the imperfect, and make the participle to end in en: as, singen, to sing, imperfect sang, participle gesungen.

The first class comprises only a small number.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Brennen, to burn,	brannte,	gebrannt.
Bringen, to bring,	brachte,	gebracht.
Denken, to think,	dachte,	gedacht.
Rennen, to know,	kannte,	gekannt.
Rennen, to name,	nannte,	genannt.
Rennen, to run,	rannte,	gerannt.
Senden, to send,	sandte,	gesandt.
Wenden, to turn,	wandte,	gewandt.
Wissen, to know, (ich weiß)	wußte,	gewußt.

Ich brenne, ich brannte, ich habe gebrannt, ich werde brennen, ich werde gebrannt haben.

The second class may be subdivided into three kinds:—

- Such as have three different vowels or diphthongs in the present, imperfect, and the participle;—2. Such as have the same vowel or diphthong in the imperfect and participle, but

a different one from the present;—3. Such as have the same vowel or diphthong in the present and participle, but a different one from the imperfect.

The verbs marked * in the following list are conjugated by *seyn*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
1. <i>Singen</i> , to sing,	sang,	gesungen.
<i>Sinnen</i> , to meditate,	sann,	gesonnen.
<i>Nehmen</i> , to take,	nahm,	genommen.
<i>Bitten</i> , to beg,	bat,	gebeten.
* <i>Gehen</i> , to go,	ging,	gegangen.
<i>Gebären</i> , to bring forth,	gebärt,	geboren.
2. <i>Glimmen</i> , to gleam,	glomm,	geglommen.
<i>Bieten</i> , to offer,	bot,	geboten.
<i>Lügen</i> , to lie,	log,	gelogen.
<i>Heben</i> , to lift,	hob,	gehoben.
<i>Leiden</i> , to suffer,	litt,	gelitten.
<i>Weiden</i> , to avoid,	mied,	gemieden.
3. * <i>Kommen</i> , to come,	kam,	gekommen.
<i>Heissen</i> , to bid,	hieß,	geheissen.
<i>Laufen</i> , to run,	lief,	gelaufen.
<i>Rufen</i> , to call,	rief,	gerufen.
<i>Tragen</i> , to carry,	trug,	getragen.

Note.—Each subdivision might be subdivided again, according to the radical vowels or diphthongs, and the changes which take place in the imperfect and participle. This, however, would be of no practical utility.

Observations on other Irregularities.

1. Those which have—

a in the 1st person present, take & in the 2nd and 3rd sing.

<i>ē</i> (long)	—	ie	—
<i>ĕ</i> (short)	—	i	—

Examples.

a : *ich fange*, I catch ; *du fängst*, *er fängt* ; plural, *wir fangen*.

Exceptions.—*schaffen*, to create ; *mählen*, to grind ; *schallen*, (*er schallen*), to sound ; *laden*, to load.

e (long) : *ich lese*, I read ; *du liesest*, *er liest* ; plur. *wir lesen*, &c.

Exc.—*nehmen*, to take, and *treten*, to tread, take a short

i : *du nimmst*, *er nimmt* ; *du trittst*, *er tritt* ; and *bewegen*, to induce ; *genesen*, to recover ; *heben*, to lift ; *weben*, to weave ; form the present regularly.

e (short) : *ich helfe*, I help ; *du hilfst*, *er hilft* ; pl. *wir helfen*, &c.

Exc.—*gehen*, to go ; *stehen*, to stand ; *du gehst*, &c.

Ich lösche, I extinguish, has—*du löshest*, *er löscht* ; *ich stoße*, I push, *du stößest*, *er stößt*, and *ich komme*, I come, either *du kommst*, *er kommt* ; or, which is more usual, *du kommst*, *er kommt*.

Those which have t or th for their last radical consonant and change a into å, and e into ie or i in the second and third person singular, do not take an additional syllable in the third person singular : as, *schelten*, to scold ; *er schält*, not *er schältert* ; *rathen*, to advise, *er räth*, not *er räthet*, but the other irregular verbs with t, form the third person singular of the present, regularly : *ich biete*, *du bietest*, *er bietet*.

2. All those which change the e of the first person present into ie or i in the second and third, take the same letters in the second person of the imperative mood, and drop the characteristic final e : *liest*, read ; *hilf*, help. The third person singular, and the whole of the plural of the imperative are formed regularly : *lese er*, let him read ; *leset ihr*, read ye. Of all other verbs the imperative is regular ; the unaccented e of the termination is sometimes omitted.

3. The roots of only four of the irregular verbs end in a vowel or diphthong: *hauen*, to hew; *thun* (*thuen*), to do; *schreien*, to cry; *speien*, to spit. The two former take a consonant in the imperfect, *tieb*, *that*; but the two latter only change *ei* into *ie*: *schrie*, *spie*. The following four: *gehen*, to go; *stehen*, to stand; *sitzen*, to sit; *ziehen*, to draw; change their radical final consonant in the imperfect and participle: *gehe*, *ging*, *gegangen*; *stehe*, *stand*, *gestanden*; *sitze*, *sat*, *gesessen*; *ziehe*, *zog*, *gezogen*.

4. Those which change the *long* radical vowel or diphthong into a *short* vowel in the imperfect and participle, double their final radical consonant after the short vowel, but change *d* into *t*: *leide*, suffer, *litt*, *gelitten*; *siebe*, boil, *sott*, *gesotten*; *schleife*, grind, *schliff*, *geschliffen*. The double consonants, *ch*, *ss*, *ft*, however, cannot be doubled: *beisse*, bite, *biss*, *gebissen*; *gleidje*, am alike, *glich*, *gegliichen*. Those which have two final radical consonants, and change the short radical vowel into a long one in the imperfect and participle, lose one of the radical consonants after the long vowel: *komme*, come, *kam*, *gekommen*; *bitte*, beg, *bat*, *gebeten*.

5. The third person singular of the imperfect, is always like the first: *ich bat*, *er bat*. The second ends in *est* or *st*. The terminations of the plural are *en*, *et*, *en*.

6. The subjunctive mood of the imperfect is formed by changing *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and those which have no termination of the tense in the indicative, take *e* in the subjunctive: *ich bringe*, I bring, *brachte*, *brächte*; *ich denke*, I think, *dachte*, *dächte*; *ich bitte*, I beg, *bat*, *bäte*; *ich habe*, I lift, *hob*, *höbe*; *ich singe*, I sing, *sang*, *sänge*; *ich laufe*, I run, *lief*, *liefe*. The following verbs, however,—*nennen*, to name; *kennen*, to know; *rennen*, to run; *brennen*, to burn; *wenden*, to turn; *senden*, to send,—form the subjunctive mood of the imperfect, as if the verb were regular: *ich nenne*,

imperfect indicative nannte, subjunctive nennete; ich sende, I send, imperfect indicative sandte, subjunctive sendete.

Some had formerly not those vowels in the imperfect which now occur in that tense, though they are still irregular. Of these verbs the subjunctive mood of the imperfect is formed from the antiquated tense, by changing a, o, u, into å, ö, ü.

	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Antiq.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>
befehlen, to command,	befahl,	befohl,	beföhle.
beginnen, to begin,	begann,	begonn,	begönnne.
bergen, to hide,	barg,	burg,	bürge.
gebären, to bring forth,	gebar,	geber,	geböbre.
gelten, to be worth,	galt,	golt,	gölte.
rinnen, to run, flow, .	rann,	ronn,	rönnne.
spinnen, to spin,	spann,	sponn,	spönnne.
stehen, to stand,	stand,	stund,	stündne.
stehlen, to steal,	stahl,	stöhl,	stöhle.
sterben, to die,	starb,	sturb,	stürbe.
verderben, to be spoiled,	verbarb,	verburb,	verbürbe.

8. Those verbs which have ie or ü for their radical vowel, formerly changed these vowels frequently into eu in the second and third person singular of the present, and second singular of the imperative, which is still the case in poetry: bieten, to offer, beutst, beut (not beutet); fließen, to flow, fleußt, (Exod. iii. 8.) imperative fleuß; ziehen, to draw, imperative zeuch; trügen, to deceive, treugt; lügen, to lie, leugt, &c.

9. The verb essen, to eat, formerly dropped the e of the augment: geffen instead of geessen; but now g is inserted between the two e's: gegessen. Wissen, to know, is, like the auxiliary verbs of moods, irregular in the singular of the present: ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß; plural regular, wir wissen, &c.

THE CONJUGATION OF TWO IRREGULAR VERBS.

Halten, to hold; *geben*, to give.

Indicative.

Ich halte, gebe.
Du hältst, gibst.
Er hält, gibt.
Wir halten, geben.
Ihr haltet, gebt.
Sie halten, geben.

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

Ich halte, gebe.
Du haltest, gebest.
Er halte, gebe.
Wir halten, geben.
Ihr haltet, gebet.
Sie halten, geben.

IMPERFECT.

Ich hielt, gab.
Du hielst, gabst.
Er hielt, gab.
Wir hielten, gaben.
Ihr hieltet, gabet.
Sie hielten, gaben.

Ich hielte, gäbe.
Du hieltest, gäbest.
Er hielte, gäbe.
Wir hielten, gäben.
Ihr hieltet, gäbet.
Sie hielten, gäben.

PERFECT.

Ich habe gehalten, gegeben. Ich habe gehalten, gegeben.

PFLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte gehalten, gegeben. Ich hätte gehalten, gegeben.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde halten, geben. Ich werde halten, geben.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde gehalten, gegeben haben.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde halten, geben.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde gehalten, gegeben haben.

IMPERATIVE.

Halte, gib (du).
Halte, gebe er.
Halten, geben wir.
Haltet, gebet (ihr).

INFINITIVE.

Halten, geben.
Gehalten, gegeben haben.
Halten, geben werden.

PARTICIPLES.

Haltend, gebend.
Gehalten, gegeben.

AN ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE IRREGULAR
VERBS.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Baden, to bake	bädst bäckt	but	gebaden
Bedürfen, to need	bedarf bedarfst bedarf	bedurfte	bedurft
Befehlen, to command	befiehlt befiehlt	befahl	befohlen
Beflecken (sich), to apply one's self	—	beßlich	beßlichen
Beginnen, to begin	—	begann	begonnen
Beißen, to bite	—	biß	gebissen
Beragen, to conceal	birgst birgt	barg	geborgen
Bersten, to burst	—	barfst borst	geborsten
Besinnen (sich), to recol- lect one's self	—	besann	besonnen
Besitzen, to possess	—	besaß	besessen
Betrügen, to deceive	—	betrog	betrogen
Bemegen, to induce	—	bewog	bewogen
Biegen, to bend	—	bog	gebogen
Bieten, to bid	—	bot	geboten
Binden, to bind	—	band	gebunden
Bitten, to beg	—	bat	gebeten
Blasen, to blow	bläseft bläset	blies	geblasen
Bleiben, to remain	—	blieb	geblieben
Bleichen, to fade	—	blích	geblíchen
Braten, to roast	brätst brät	briet	gebraten
Brechen, to break	brichst bricht	brach	gebrochen

INITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
-, to burn	—	brannte	gebrannt
to bring	—	brachte	gebracht
to think	—	dachte	gedacht
o bargain, hire	—	dung	gebungen
, to thrash	brishest brischt	droſch	gebroſchen
to urge	—	brang	gedrungen
,en, to receive	empfängſt empfängt	empſing	empfangen
ylen, to recom- mend	empſiehſt empſiehlt	empſahl	empfohlen
Empfinden, to perceive	—	empfand	empfunden
Entrinnen, to escape	—	entrann	entronnen
Erbleichen, to grow pale	—	erblich	erblichen
Ergreifen, to seize	—	ergriff	ergriffen
Erküren, to choose	—	erkor	erkoren
Erlöſchen, to become extinct	erliſchest erliſcht	erloſch	erloſchen
Erschallen, to sound	—	erscholl	erschollen
Erschrecken, to be frightened	erschriechſt erschriecht	erschraek	erschrocken
Erwägen, to consider	—	erwog	erwogen
Essen, to eat	iſſest iſſet or iſt	aß	gegessen
Fahren, to drive, to go in a vehicle	fährſt fährt	fuhr	gefahren
Fallen, to fall	fällſt fällt	fiel	gefallen
Fangen, to catch	fängſt fängt	ſing	gefangen
Fechten, to fight	fichtſt ſicht	ſocht	geföchten
Finden, to find	—	fand	gefunden
Flechten, to twist	flichtſt ſicht	flocht	geflochten
Fliegen, to fly	—	flog	geflogen

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Gliehen, to flee	—	floh	geslohen
Gließen, to flow	—	floss	geslossen
Gressen, to devour, eat	frishest frisst	fraß	gestreissen
Grieren, to freeze	—	fror	gefroren
Gähren, to ferment	—	gohr	gegohren
Gebären, to bring forth	gebärist gebärt	gebar	geboren
Geben, to give	giebst giebt	gab	gegeben
Gebieten, to command	—	gebot	geboten
Gedeihen, to prosper	—	gedieh	gediehen
Gehen, to go	—	ging	gegangen
Gelingen, to succeed (impers.)	—	gelang	gelungen
Gelten, to be worth	gültst ilt	galt	gegolten
Genesen, to recover	—	genas	genesen
Genießen, to enjoy	—	genoß	genossen
Geschehen, to happen (impers.)	geschieht	geschah	geschehen
Gewinnen, to gain	—	gewann	gewonnen
Gießen, to pour	—	goß	gegossen
Gleichen, to be alike	—	glich	gegliehen
Gleiten, to slide	—	glitt	geglitten
Glimmen, to shine faintly	—	glomm	geglommen
Graben, to dig	gräßt gräbt	grub	gegraben
Greifen, to seize	—	griff	gegriffen
Halten, to hold	hältst hält	hielt	gehalten
Hängen, to hang (<i>int.</i>)	hängst hängt	hing	gehängen
Hauen, to hew	—	hieb	gehauen
Heben, to lift	—	hob	gehoben

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Heißen, to be called	—	hiess	geheißen
Helfen, to help	hilfst hilfst	half	geholfen
Kreisen, to scold	—	kiff	gekissen
Kennen, to know	—	kannte	gekannt
Klimmen, to climb	—	klomm	geklimmen
Klingen, to sound	—	klang	geklungen
Kneifen, to pinch	—	kniff	geknissen
Kommen, to come	—	lam	gekommen
Kreischen, to cry	—	krisch	gekrischen
Kriechen, to creep	—	kroch	gekrochen
Laden, to load	—	lud	geladen
Laufen, to run	läufst läuft	lief	gelaufen
Leiden, to suffer	—	litt	gelitten
Leihen, to lend	—	lieh	geleihen
Lesen, to read	liestest liestet	las	gelesen
Liegen, to lie, to be situated	—	lag	gelegen
Lügen, to lie, to utter a falsehood	—	log	gelogen
Mahlen, to grind	—	mahlte	gemahlen
Weiden, to avoid	—	mied	gemieden
Meißen, to milk	—	molk	gemolken
Messen, to measure	misstest misst	maß	gemessen
Nehmen, to take	nimmst nimmt	nahm	genommen
Nennen, to name	—	nannte	genannt
Pfeifen, to whistle	—	pifff	gepfiffen
Pflegen, to foster	—	pflög	gepflogen
Preisen, to extol	—	pries	gepriesen
Quellen, to spring forth	quillst quillt	quoll	gequollen

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Rathen, to advise	râthst râth	rieth	gerathen
Reiben, to rub	—	rieb	gerieben
Reißen, to tear	—	riß	gerissen
Reiten, to ride	—	ritt	geritten
Rennen, to run	—	rannte	gerannt
Riechen, to smell	—	roch	gerochen
Ringen, to wrestle	—	rang	gerungen
Rinnen, to coagulate	—	rann	geronnen
Rufen, to call	—	rief	gerufen
Salzen, to salt	—	—	gesalzen
Sausen, to drink like brutes	säufst säufst	soff	gesoffen
Saugen, to suck	—	sog	gesogen
Schaffen, to create	—	schuf	geschaffen
Scheiden, to separate	—	schied	geschieden
Scheinen, to appear	—	schien	geschiene
Schelten, to scold	schiltst schilt	schalt	gescholten
Scheren, to shear	—	schor	geschoren
Schieben, to shove	—	schob	geschoben
Schießen, to shoot	—	schoss	geschossen
Schinden, to flay	—	schund	geschunden
Schlafen, to sleep	schlafst schlafst	schließt	geschlaſſen
Schlagen, to beat	schlägst schlägt	schlug	geschlagen
Schleichen, to sneak	—	schlich	geschlichen
Schleifen, to grind	—	schliff	geschliffen
Schließen, to shut	—	schloß	geschlossen
Schlingen, to twine	—	schlang	geschlungen
Schmeißen, to fling	—	schmiß	geschmissen
Schmelzen, to melt	schmildest schmilzt	schmolz	geschmolzen
Schneiden, to cut	—	schnitt	geschnitten

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Schrauben, to screw	—	ſchrob	geschroben
Schreiben, to write	—	ſchrieb	geschrieben
Schreien, to cry	—	ſchrie	geschrien
Schreiten, to stride	—	ſchritt	geschritten
Schwärzen, to fester	—	ſchwor	geschworen
Schweigen, to be silent	—	ſchwieg	geschwiegen
Schwellen, to swell	ſchwillſt ſchwillt	ſchwoll	geschwollen
Schwimmen, to swim	—	ſchwamm	geschwommen
Schwinden, to vanish	—	ſchwand	geschwunden
Schwingen, to swing	—	ſchwang	geschwungen
Schwören, to swear	—	ſchwor	geschworen
Sehen, to see	ſiehſt ſieht	ſah	gesehen
Senden, to send	—	ſandte	gesandt
Sieben, to boil	—	ſott	gesotten
Singen, to sing	—	ſang	gesungen
Sinken, to sink	—	ſank	gesunken
Sinnen, to meditate	—	ſann	gesonnen
Sitzen, to sit	—	ſaß	gesessen
Spalten, to split	—	—	gespalten
Speien, to spit	—	ſpie	gespieen
Spinnen, to spin	—	ſpann	gesponnen
Sprechen, to speak	ſpricht ſpricht	ſprach	gesprochen
Sprießen, to sprout	—	ſproß	gesproffen
Springen, to spring	—	ſprang	gesprungen
Stechen, to sting	ſteichſt ſteicht	ſtach	gestochen
Stehen, to stand	—	ſtand	gestanden
Stehlen, to steal	ſteichſt ſteicht	ſtahl	gestohlen
Steigen, to mount	—	ſtieg	gestiegen
Sterben, to die	ſterbſt ſterbt	ſtarb	gestorben

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Gieben, to fly like dust	— —	stob	gestoben
Stinken, to stink	— —	stank	gestunken
Stoßen, to push	stößest stößt	stieß	gestoßen
Streichen, to stroke	— —	strich	gestrichen
Streiten, to contend	— —	stritt	gestritten
Thun, to do	thue, thust thut	that	gethan
Tragen, to carry	trägst trägt	trug	getragen
Treffen, to hit	triffst trifft	traf	getroffen
Treiben, to drive	— —	trieb	getrieben
Treten, to tread	trittst tritt	trat	getreten
Zriesen, to drop	— —	troff	getroffen
Zrinken, to drink	— —	trank	getrunken
Zrügen, to deceive	— —	trog	getrogen
Zerbieten, to forbid	— —	verbot	verboten
Zerbleichen, to fade	— —	verblich	verblichen
Zerberben, to be spoiled (neut.)	verdirbst verdirbt	verdarb	verdorben
Zerdriessen, to vex (imp.)	— —	verdroß	verdroffen
Zergessen, to forget	vergissst vergißt	vergaß	vergeffen
Zergleichen, to compare	— —	verglich	verglichen
Zerlieren, to lose	— —	verlor	verloren
Zermdggen, to be able	vermag vermagst vermag	vermochte	vermocht
Zachsen, to grow	wächtest wächst	wuchs	gewachsen
Zaschen, to wash	wáshest wáscht	wusch	gewaschen
Zágen, to weigh (act.)	— —	wog	gewogen
Weben, to weave	— —	wob	gewoben

INFINITIVE.	PRES.ENT.	IMPERF.	PARTICIPLE.
Weichen, to yield	—	wich	gewichen
Weisen, to show	—	wies	gewiesen
Wenden, to turn (<i>neut.</i> and <i>refl.</i>)	—	wandte	gewandt
Werben, to sue	wirbst wirbt	warb	geworben
Werfen, to throw	wirfst wirft	warf	geworfen
Wiegen, to weigh (<i>neut.</i>)	—	wog	gewogen
Winnen, to wind	—	wand	gewunden
Wissen, to know	weiß, weißt weiß	wußte	gewußt
Ziehen, to accuse	—	zieh	geziehen
Ziehen, to draw	—	zog	gezogen
Zwingen, to compel	—	zwang	gezwungen.

In the list of the irregular verbs, the auxiliary verbs of tenses and moods have been omitted ; they will be found in their own places.

Several verbs which have both a transitive and intransitive signification, are regular as transitives, irregular as intransitives. They will be found in the next chapter.

Of a great number of the irregular verbs, compounds have been formed (see Chap. VIII). The simple verbs only will be found in the list ; though the compounds share the same irregularities. The following compounds, however, are regular : *berennen*, to storm ; *rathsälagen* and *berathsälagen*, to counsel ; *willfahren*, to comply with. Also *veranlassen*, to occasion (from *Anlaß*, occasion), is regular.

Bewegen, to move (physically, e. g. a table) ; *bleichen*, to bleach ; *pflegen*, to be accustomed ; *schleifen*, to demolish, to drag along ; *schaffen*, and its compound *verschaffen*, to procure ; *weichen*, to soften, are regular with these significations, but with the significations which have been given in the list they are irregular.

CHAPTER V.

INTRANSITIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

Neuter verbs are those which ascribe to the subject a *state*, *condition*, which is neither active nor passive; and intransitive verbs are those which express an action that does not pass over to an object. Of the first description are: *ich schlafe*, I sleep; *ich stehe*, I stand; *ich ruhe*, I rest; *ich sitze*, I sit, &c. Of the second description are: *ich gehe*, I walk; *ich kämpfe*, I fight; *ich reite*, I ride; *ich rede*, I speak, &c. When the time, during which such a state lasts, or the object of an action which does not pass over to the object, is mentioned, it is expressed by the accusative case: as, *ich schlafe die ganze Nacht*, I sleep the whole night; *ich sitze eine Stunde*, I sit an hour; *ich gehe eine Meile*, I walk a mile; *ich kämpfe einen guten Kampf*, I fight a good fight; *ich reite ein weißes Pferd*, I ride a white horse; *ich rede eine verständliche Sprache*, I speak an intelligible language.

From their nature they cannot have a passive voice. Some of those, however, which express an action, occur in the passive form as impersonal verbs, like the Latin *venitur*, *ventum est*, *itur*, *festinatur*: *as*, *es* wird geredet, gesungen, gespielt, there is talking, singing, playing.

The following have both a transitive and intransitive signification. In the transitive signification they are regular, and conjugated by *haben*; in the intransitive irregular, and conjugated by *sein*, with the exception of *schweinen*:

TRANSITIVE.	IMP. & PART.	INTRANSITIVE.	IMP. & PART.
Backen, to bake.	backte, gebakt.	Backen, to be baked.	but, gebacken.
Braten, to roast.	bratete, gebratet.	Braten, to roast.	briet, gebraten.

TRANSITIVE.	IMP. & PART.	INTRANSITIVE.	IMP. & PART.
Erschrecken, to frighten.	erschreckte, erschreckt.	Erschrecken, to be frightened.	erschrak, erschrocken.
Löschen, to extinguish.	löschte, gelöscht.	Erlöschen, to become ex- tinct.	erlosch, erloschen.
Schmelzen, to melt.	schmolzte, geschmolzt.	Schmelzen, to melt.	schmolz, geschmolzen.
Schweigen, ¹ to silence.	schweigte, geschweigt.	Schweigen, to be silent.	schwieg, geschwiegen.
Schwellen, ² to cause to swell.	schwollte, geschwollt.	Schwellen, to swell.	schwoll, geschwollen. ⁴
Sieden, to boil.	siedete, gesiedet.	Sieden, to boil.	sott, gesotten.
Berberben, ³ to destroy.	verderbte, verderbt.	Berberben, to be spoiled.	verbarb, verborben. ⁵
Berwirren, to confuse.	verwirrte, verwirrt.	Berwirren, to be confused.	verworr, verworren.

¹ Pet. iii. 10.² Der Wind schwollte die Segel.³ Deut. ix. 26.—2 Chron. xx. 23, iii. 27.⁴ Das Bein ist geschwollen.⁵ Isa. xxxviii. 17.

From the following intransitive verbs, transitives have been formed, with a *causative* signification, like that of the Piel or Hiphil form of the Hebrew verb: נָלַל, he has learned: P. נָלַל, he has taught; נָסַע, he has gone out; H. נָשַׁרְתִּי, he has led out. The transitives are regular, and conjugated by haben; the intransitives irregular, and those marked * are conjugated by seyn.

INTRANS.	IMP. & PART.	TRANS.	IMP. & PART.
Biegen, to bend.	bog, gebogen.	Beugen, to bend.	beugte, gebeugt.
*Ersaufen, to be drowned.	ersoff, ersoffen.	Ersäufen, to drown.	ersäufte, ersäuft.
*Fallen, to fall.	fiel, gefallen.	Fällen, to fell.	fällte, gefällt.
*Fließen, to flow.	flöß, geflossen.	Flößen, to make flow.	flößte, geflößt.
Hängen, to be suspended.	hing, gehängen.	Hängen, to hang.	hängte, gehängt.
Liegen, to lie.	lag, gelegen.	Legen, to lay.	legte, gelegt.
Saugen, to suck.	sog, gesogen.	Säugen, to suckle.	säugte, gesäugt.
Sitzen, to sit.	saß, gesessen.	Setzen, to place.	setzte, gesetzt.
Springen, to spring.	sprang, gesprungen.	Sprengen, to blow up.	sprengte, gesprengt.
Stehen, to stand.	stand, gestanden.	Stellen, to place.	stellte, gestellt.
*Stieben, to fly like dust.	stob, gestoben.	Stäuben, to raise dust.	stäubte, gestäubt.
Schwimmen, to swim.	schwamm, geschwommen	Schwemmen, ¹ to make swim.	schwemmte, geschwemmt.
*Sinken, to sink.	sank, gesunken.	Senken, to make sink.	senkte, gesenkt.
Trinken, to drink.	trank, getrunken.	Tränken, to give to drink.	tränkte, getränkt.

¹ Psalm vi. 7.

INTRANS. IMP. & PART.

***Verschwinden**, verschwand,
to vanish. **verschwunden**.

Wiegen, to wag,
weigh, to have gewogen.
weight.

TRANS. IMP. & PART.

Verschwenben, verschwendete,
to waste. **verschwendet**.

Wägen, to wägte,
weigh, to as- gewägt.
certain weight.

Some intransitives and neuters are used as reflectives in phrases like the following: *er arbeitet und läuft sich todt*, he kills himself by working and running; *viele Menschen spielen sich arm*, many people become poor by gambling; *er hat sich krank getrunken*, he has become ill by drinking; *er schlafst sich dumm*, he becomes stupid by sleeping too much; *jener hat sich müde gestanden*, and *dieser steif gesessen*, the former has become tired by standing, and the latter stiff by sitting; *dieser Mann steht sich gut*, this man is well off.

Gebete sollen sie für ihn gen Himmel senden,
Und sollen wund sich knien an den Altären.

Schiller's Turandot.

Some intransitives and neuters are conjugated with **haben**, others with **seyn**, others with **haben** and **seyn**.

1. With **haben**: all those which express an active state or condition of the subject, without changing its state or condition: *as, arbeiten*, to work; *ächzen*, to groan; *atmen*, to breathe; *bebēn*, to tremble; *betteln*, to beg; *bellen*, to bark; *blühen*, to blossom; *bluten*, to bleed; *dauern*, to last; *eilēn*, to hasten; *fechten*, to fight; *fehlen*, to err, to fail; *fliegen*, to fly; *gähren*, to ferment; *gehörchen*, to obey; *glänzen*, to shine; *glimmen*, to glimmer; *grünēn*, to grow green; *horchen*, to listen; *irren*, to err; *klagen*, to complain; *klingen*, to sound; *lachen*, to laugh; *rauchen*, to smoke; *reiten*, to ride on horse-back; *scheinen*, to shine; *scherzen*, to jest; *schreien*, to cry out; *springen*, to jump; *schwanken*, to waver; *schweben*, to soar;

weinen, to weep ; zaubern, to delay : *as, ich habe gearbeitet ; ich habe geathmet ; meine Nase hat geblutet, my nose has bled ; die Blume hat geblüht, the flower has bloomed ; wir haben gesehlt, we have committed a fault ; der Knabe hat gesprungen ; die Sonne hat geschienen.*

Note 1.—In some verba, it is difficult to see the active state or condition : as in *gefallen*, to please ; *gehören*, to belong ; *gelten*, to have value ; *gleichen*, to resemble ; *ruhen*, to rest ; *schlafen*, to sleep ; *sitzen*, to sit ; *stehen*, to stand ; *schweigen*, to be silent ; *währen*, to last ; *wohnen*, to dwell. However, the subjects of these verbs are considered to be more in a state of doing (an active) than in a state of suffering (a passive state). For instance, in *ich stehe*, I stand, *ich schläfe*, the subject is considered doing something, whilst in *ich falle*, I fall, *ich sterbe*, it is considered suffering something (passive). *Das Bild gefällt mir*, the picture pleases me, it works upon me with a pleasing quality ; *das Buch gehört mir*, the book belongs to me, affords possession to me ; *der Sohn gleicht seinem Vater*, the son resembles his father, possesses the resemblance of his father ; *das Buch gilt einen Thaler*, the book has, possesses, the value of a dollar ; *der Regen währt eine Stunde*, the rain lasted an hour, had the continuance of an hour. Such verba are, therefore, conjugated with *haben* : *es hat mir gefallen* ; *es hat mir gehört* ; *es hat gegolten* ; *er hat geglichen* ; *ich habe geruht*.

Note 2.—The following, however, are always conjugated with *seyn* : *begegnen*, to meet, to happen ; *bleiben*, to stay, remain ; *folgen*, to follow ; *gehen*, to go ; *gelingen*, (*impersonal*) to succeed ; *geschehen*, (*imp.*) to come to pass ; *kommen*, to come ; *landen*, to land ; *weichen*, to yield, to give way : *as, ich bin begegnet*, I have met ; *es ist begegnet*, it has happened ; *wir sind gegangen* ; *es ist mir gelungen*, I have succeeded ; *nichts ist geschehen*, nothing has happened ; *sie sind eine Stunde geblieben*, they have stayed an hour ; *unser Lehrer ist gekommen*,

our master is come; das Schiff ist gelandet, the vessel has landed; der Feind ist gewichen, the enemy has yielded.

2. With seyn: all those which express either a state of suffering (a passive state) of the subject, or a change or transition from one state into another: as, bersten, to burst; fallen, to fall; fließen, to flow; frieren, to freeze; sinken, to sink; schwinden, to vanish; schwollen, to swell; sterben, to die; wachsen, to grow; einschlafen, to fall asleep; verblühen, to fade; ausschlagen, to get buds; genesen, to recover; ausarten, to degenerate; erblaissen, to grow pale; erkalten, to grow cold; erröthen, to blush; erschrecken, to be frightened; gerathen, to get into, also to succeed; verarmen, to grow poor; verhungern, to starve; entschlafen, to expire; umkommen, to perish: as, der Mann ist vom Hause gefallen, the man has fallen from the house; genug des Blutes ist geslossen, enough of blood has flown; das Wasser ist gefroren, the water is frozen; (but es hat diese Nacht gefroren, there has been a frost in the night, for this implies activity,) das Glas ist geborsten, the glass is burst; das Schiff ist gesunken, the vessel is sunk; sein Vater ist gestorben, his father has died, &c.

3. Those which express motion, produced by the acting power of the subject, are conjugated with haben and seyn: with haben, when motion without any reference, or with a reference to time or manner is expressed; with seyn, when a reference to a place or space is denoted: eilen, to hasten; laufen, to run; fliegen, to fly; hüpfen, to hop; reiten, to ride on horseback; reisen, to travel; klettern, to climb; spazieren, to walk; springen, to jump; steigen, to ascend; schwimmen, to swim; kriechen, to crawl: as, ich habe geeilt, I have hastened; ich bin nach Hause geeilt, I have hastened home; Sie haben eine Stunde geritten, you have had an hour's ride; Sie sind nach Cheltenham geritten, you have rode to Cheltenham; der Mann hat viel gereist, the man has travelled much; der Mann ist nach Deutschland gereist; der Knabe

hat gesprungen, um sich Bewegung zu machen, the boy has jumped to have exercise; der Knabe ist vom Stuhle gesprungen, the boy has jumped from the chair; dieser Mann hat eine ganze Stunde geschwommen, this man has been swimming a whole hour; er ist von einer Brücke zur andern geschwommen, he has swum from one bridge to the other; der König ist vom Throne gestiegen, the king has descended from his throne; die Armee ist von Leipzig nach Dresden gezogen, the army has moved from Leipzig to Dresden; mein Vogel ist weggeflogen, my bird has flown away; der Dieb ist mir entsprungen, the thief has escaped from me; mein Vater ist noch nicht abgereiset, my father has not yet departed (the prefixes of the last verbs imply locality; see the compound verbs).

Note.—A list of compound verbs, conjugated with *seyn*, will be found in the chapters on those verbs.

THE CONJUGATION OF TWO INTRANSITIVE VERBS CONJUGATED WITH *Seyn*.

Kommen, to come; *bleiben*, to remain.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Ich komme, bleibe.

Ich komme, bleibe.

IMPERFECT.

Ich kam, blieb.

Ich käme, bliebe.

PERFECT.

Ich bin gekommen, geblieben. Ich sey gekommen, geblieben.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war gekommen, geblieben. Ich wäre gekommen, geblieben.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde kommen, bleiben. Ich werde kommen, bleiben.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde gekommen, geblieben. Ich werde gekommen, geblieben
seyn.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde kommen, bleiben.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde gekommen, geblieben seyn.

&c. &c. &c.

CHAPTER VI.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs expressing an action, the subject and object of which are identical, are called reflective. Most of the transitive verba are, therefore, capable of being made reflective: as, *ich wasche mich*, I wash myself; *er liebt sich*, he loves himself. There are, however, in German, several verbs which are only reflectives, having no meaning without the reflective pronoun, like the English, *I betake myself*, *I bethink myself*. Most of them require the reflective pronoun in the accusative case; a few in the dative.

The following require the accusative:—

Sich anschicken, to prepare.	Sich enthalten, to abstain.
— aufschwingen, to rise.	— entschließen, to resolve.
— äußern, to intimate.	— erbarmen, to have mercy.
— bedanken, to thank for.	— freuen, to rejoice.
— bedenken, to consider.	— grämen, to grieve.
— befinden, to find one's self.	— rühmen, to boast.
— beflehen, to endeavour.	— unterstehen, to venture.
— begeben, to resign.	— schämen, to be ashamed.
— behelfen, to make shift.	— sehnen, to long.
— besinnen, to reflect.	— widersegen, to resist.
— bewerben, to sue.	

Ich schicke mich an, du schickst dich an, er schickt sich an, wir schicken uns an, ihr schicket euch an, sie schicken sich an (see the compound verbs separable); *ich befinde mich, du befindest dich, er befindet sich* (see the compound verbs inseparable).

The following require the dative:—

Eich anmaßen, to presume. **Sich schmeicheln**, to flatter one's self.
 — einbilben, to imagine. — widersprechen, to contradict
 — getrauen, to be confident. one's self.

Ich schmeichle mir. Du schmeichelst dir. Er schmeichelt sich, &c.

Er maßt sich viel an, he presumes much; *du hast dir das eingebildet*, you have fancied that; *ich getraue mir nicht, es zu thun*, I do not venture to do it; *Sie widersprechen Sich selbst*, you contradict yourself.

The following verbs have a different signification when used as reflectives:—

Bedenken, to consider; **sich bedenken**, to pause for the purpose of reflection.

Berufen, to call to an office; — **berufen**, to appeal to.

Bescheiden, to assign; — **bescheiden**, to be contented with.

Finden, to find; — **finden** (in etwas), to accommodate one's self to a thing.

Fürchten, to fear; — **fürchten**, to be afraid of.

Hüthen, to guard; — **hüthen**, to beware.

Machen, to make; — **machen** (an etwas), to set about a thing.

Stellen, to place; — **stellen**, to feign, pretend.

Verantworten, to answer for; — **verantworten**, to defend one's self.

Vergehen, to pass away; — **vergehen**, to commit a fault.

Verlassen, to leave; — **verlassen**, to rely upon.

Bedenken Sie Sich nicht; ich berufe mich auf ihn; er kann sich in sein Glück nicht finden; wir fürchten uns vor dem Wetter; ich hütte mich vor bösen Leuten; er macht sich an die Arbeit; der Mann stellt sich arm; wir müssen uns verantworten; er hat sich oft vergangen; ich verlasse mich auf Ihr Versprechen.

A few intransitives are used as such, and as reflectives in the same signification: *irren*, and *sich irren*, to be mistaken; *zanken*, and *sich zanken*, to quarrel; *streiten*, and *sich streiten*, to contend. *Scheuen*, to shun, is a transitive and reflective: *ich scheue das Licht nicht*, I do not shun the light; *ich scheue mich nicht vor der Wahrheit*, I am not afraid of the truth. (See the intransitives used as reflectives, page 151.)

Observations.

1. Reflective verbs must be distinguished from transitives and intransitives with the plural of the reciprocal pronouns *uns*, *euch*, *sich*: as, *Freunde*, *wir werden uns wiedersehen*, friends, we shall see one another again; *die Knaben lieben sich*, the boys love one another; *Kinder*, *ihr müsst euch nicht hassen*, children, you must not hate one another; *wir begegneten uns diesen Morgen*, we met one another this morning.—(See the Reflective Pronouns, page 87 and 88.)

2. The reflective form is generally employed in German instead of the passive, when the active object is not expressed: as, *das Buch hat sich gefunden*, the book has been found; but not *das Buch hat sich von mir gefunden*, for *das Buch ist von mir gefunden worden*, because the active object, *von mir*, is expressed; *die Frage beantwortet sich leicht*, the question is easily answered; *die Frage wurde von mir beantwortet*, the question was answered by me; *dies lässt sich nicht begreifen*, that is not to be comprehended; *das versteht sich*, that is a

matter of course; in seine grüne Rinden drückt sich ein Name leicht, der nicht mehr ist zu finden, wenn sie verborrt und bleicht, a name is easily impressed in its green bark, which is no more to be found, when it gets dry and withers.—(*Turandot.*)

CONJUGATION.

Sich schämen, to be ashamed.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Ich schäme mich.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Ich schäme mich.</i>
	<i>Du schämst dich.</i>		<i>Du schämest dich.</i>
	<i>Er schämt sich.</i>		<i>Er schäme sich.</i>
	<i>Wir schämen uns.</i>		<i>Wir schämen uns.</i>
	<i>Ihr schämt euch.</i>		<i>Ihr schämet euch.</i>
	<i>Sie schämen sich.</i>		<i>Sie schämen sich.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ich schämte mich.</i>		<i>Ich schämete mich.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ich habe mich geschämt.</i>		<i>Ich habe mich geschämt.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ich hatte mich geschämt.</i>		<i>Ich hätte mich geschämt.</i>
<i>1st Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde mich schämen.</i>		<i>Ich werde mich schämen.</i>
<i>2nd Fut.</i>	<i>Ich werde mich geschämt haben.</i>		<i>Ich werde mich geschämt haben.</i>
		<i>1st Conditional.</i>	<i>Ich würde mich schämen.</i>
		<i>2nd</i>	<i>—</i> <i>Ich würde mich geschämt haben.</i>
		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Schäme du dich.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **Sich schämen.**

Perf. **Sich geschämt haben.**

Fut. **Sich schämen werden.**

Participle. **Sich schägend.**

CHAPTER VII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Verbs which occur only in the form of the third person singular, the subject of which is expressed by the indefinite pronoun *es*, are properly called impersonal: as, *es regnet*, it rains; *es schneit*, it snows; *es donnert*, it thunders; *es blät*, it lightens; *es friert*, it freezes; *es thaut*, it thaws; *es hagelt*, it hails; *es reift*, there is a hoar frost.

2. There occur, in German, impersonal verbs which express an intransitive action, the subject of which has the form of an object: as, *es durstet mich*, or *mich durstet*, I thirst; *es hungert mich*, or *mich hungert*, I hunger; *es friert mich*, or *mich friert*, I am chilled; *es schaudert mich*, or *mich schaudert*, I shudder; *es graut mir* (*mich*), or *mir* (*mich*) *graut*, I am afraid. These verbs express a *feeling*: as, *es friert mich*, I feel very cold; whilst *ich friere*, I freeze (*das Wasser friert*), expresses a *condition*.

3. Some verbs assume the form of impersonal verbs: as, *es freuet mich*, I rejoice; *es däucht mir*, *es dunkt mich*, it seems to me (the former is preferred when we speak of ideas, the latter when of visible objects); *es ahnt mir*, I forebode; *es beliebt mir*, I please; *es gelüstet mich*, I covet; *es gilt*, it concerns; *es heißt*, it is said; *es scheint*, it appears. The subject of these verbs is expressed by a subordinate sentence: as, *es freut mich, daß ich ihn gesehen habe*, or *ihn gesehen zu haben*, I rejoice to have seen him; *mir däucht, daß dieser Gas Wahrheit enthält*, it seems to me that this sentence contains truth; *mich dunkt, daß diese Farbe mehr roth als braun ist*, it seems to me that this colour is more red than brown; *es beliebte ihnen, in das andre Zimmer zu gehen*, they pleased to go into the other room; *es scheint, daß es*

bald regnen wird, it appears, that it will soon rain ; es gilt dein Leben, your life is at stake ; es hieß, er denk' ihn ganz darum zu fürzen, mit einem Bischofshut ihm abzuinden, it was said, he intended to deprive him entirely of it, to pay him with a bishop's mitre.—(*Schiller's Tell.*)

4. *Es gibt*, *there is*, or *there are*, is used to express indefinite existence : es gibt Menschen, welche nicht sehen können, there are men who cannot see ; es gibt Straßen in London, welche zwei Meilen lang sind, there are streets in London, which are two miles long ; es gibt keinen Wein, welcher tausend Jahre alt ist, there is no wine which is a thousand years old. Definite existence is expressed by *seyn* : es sind mehr als zwölf hundert tausend Einwohner in London, there are more than twelve hundred thousand inhabitants in London ; es ist kein Wein in dieser Flasche, there is no wine in this bottle.

Note.—The existence is *indefinite*, whenever *there exists* or *there exist*, may be used for *there is*, or *there are*.

5. The passive voice of intransitive verbs is, in German, used impersonally when the subject of the verb is to be expressed indefinitely : as, es wird viel davon geredet, there is much talk about it : wir hatten gestern Abend Gesellschaft, und es wurde viel gesungen und gespielt, we had last night company, and there was much singing and playing.

6. Most of the impersonal verbs are conjugated by *haben* : es donnert, es donnerte, es hat gebonnert, es wird donnern. *Geschehen*, to happen, is irregular and conjugated by *seyn* : es geschieht, es geschah, es ist geschehen, es wird geschehen.

7. Of a few verbs, impersonal reflectives have been formed : es giebt sich, it will come ; es fragt sich, it is the question ; es trägt sich zu, it occurs ; es gehört sich, it behoves ; es sieht sich an, it may be looked at.

Das Spiel des Lebens sieht sich heiter an,
Wenn man den sichern Schatz im Herzen trägt.

Schiller's Wallenstein.

CHAPTER VIII.

COMPOUND VERBS.

This chapter comprises verbs which are compounded with prepositions, prefixes, or nouns. They are either singly or doubly compounded; either separable or inseparable, i. e. the preposition, particle, or noun is, according to certain rules, separated from the verb or not; or separable and inseparable, according to their signification. I therefore divide them into five classes. The first class will comprise all the prepositions and particles, which are, according to certain rules, separated from the verb; but only one verb will be annexed to each, though several verbs are compounded with them. The second will comprehend all the particles and prepositions which are never separated from the verb, with one verb only joined to each. The third will contain those which are, according to their signification, either separated or not. The fourth will comprise the compound prefixes composed of a preposition and particle, with one verb joined to each, which verbs are called doubly compounded. The fifth will contain those which are compounded with a noun. If the simple verb is irregular, the compound is so likewise; and as many compound verbs are intransitive, neuter, and reflective, the rules given in the chapters on these verbs must be applied here also.

FIRST CLASS (separable).

Verbs singly compounded separable.

PREPOSITIONS OR PARTICLES.	COMPOUNDS.	SIMPLE VERBS.
ab (off),	absegnen, to depose.	seḡen, to place.
an (on),	anstellen, to institute.	stellen, to place.

PREPOSITIONS OR PARTICLES.	COMPOUNDS.	SIMPLE VERBS.
auf (up),	*aufgehen, to rise.	gehen, to go.
aus (out),	auslassen, to leave out.	lassen, to leave.
bei (by),	beistehen, to assist.	stehen, to stand.
bevor (before),	bevorstehen, to impend.	stehen, to stand.
dar, da (there),	darreichen, to offer.	reichen, to reach.
ein (in),	einkaufen, to buy in.	kaufen, to buy.
empor (up),	emporheben, to lift up.	heben, to lift.
fort (on, away),	fortbauern, to continue.	bauern, to last.
heim (home),	*heimkehren, to return.	kehren, to turn.
her (to, to- wards you),	herbringen, to bring to you.	bringen, to bring.
hin (along, from	hinbringen, to take along. you),	bringen, to bring.
mit (with),	mitnehmen, to take with you.	nehmen, to take.
nach (after),	*nachfolgen, to follow after.	folgen, to follow.
nieder (down),	niederlegen, to lay down.	legen, to lay.
ob (on),	obliegen, to be incumbent on (<i>impers.</i>).	liegen, to lie.
um (signifies loss,	*umkommen, to perish.	kommen, to come.
elliptically used),	i. e. ums Leben kommen.	
vor (before),	vorgeben, to pretend.	geben, to give.
weg (away),	*wegbleiben, to stay away.	bleiben, to stay.
zu (to),	zureden, to encourage.	reden, to speak.
zurück (back),	zurückrufen, to recall.	rufen, to call.
zusammen (to- gether),	zusammenfegen, to put to- gether.	fegen, to put.

Those marked * are conjugated by seyn.

Note.—Notice the difference of signification in *fortbauern*, to continue; *fortfahren*, to continue; and *fortfegen*, to continue. *Fortbauern* expresses the continuance of a state or existence; *fortfahren*, the continuance of an action which has

no object; *fortsezgen*, the continuance of an action which has an object: *die Musik dauert fort*, the music continues; *wir fahren fort, zu arbeiten*, we continue to work; *wir setzen unsere Arbeit fort*, we continue our work.

Prepositions and particles which are separated from the verb, have the full accent, and when so separated, stand, not only after the verb, but also after all the words in the sentence which are governed by or depend on it. The separation takes place in the imperative, in the present and imperfect, unless such a pronoun or conjunction as removes the verb to the end of the sentence, begin the same: as, *stehe deinem Nächsten in der Not \ddot{u} bei*, assist thy neighbour in his distress; *die Sonne ging diesen Morgen um sechs Uhr auf*, the sun rose this morning at six o'clock; *ich lasse eine Seite aus*, I leave out a page. When such a pronoun or conjunction, as removes the verb to the end of the sentence, begins the same, the verb and prefix are joined: as, *als die Sonne diesen Morgen aufging*, so verschwand der Nebel, when the sun rose this morning, the fog disappeared; *ich habe Raum, weil ich eine Seite auslasse*, I have space, because I leave out a page. The augment *ge* of the preterite participle, and the preposition *zu*, by which a supine is formed of the infinitive, stand between the prefix and verb; and though the preposition *zu* is never joined to an infinitive of a simple verb, it always coalesces with the verb and the prefix into one word: *die Sonne ist schön aufgegangen*, the sun has risen beautifully; *es ist Zeit anzufangen*, it is time to begin.

This will be more fully explained in the chapter on the Arrangement of Words.

CONJUGATION OF A COMPOUND VERB SEPARABLE.

ACTIVE.

Anfangen, to begin.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Ich fange an.
Du fängst an.
Er fängt an.
Wir fangen an.
Ihr fangt an.
Sie fangen an.

Subjunctive.

Ich fange an.
Du fangest an.
Er fange an.
Wir fangen an.
Ihr fanget an.
Sie fangen an.

IMPERFECT.

Ich fing an.

Ich finge an.

PERFECT.

Ich habe angefangen.

Ich habe angefangen.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich hatte angefangen.

Ich hätte angefangen.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde anfangen.

Ich werde anfangen.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde angefangen haben.

Ich werde angefangen haben.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde anfangen.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde angefangen haben.

IMPERATIVE.

Fange (du) an, &c.

INFINITIVE.

anfangen.
angesangen haben.
ansangen werden.

PARTICIPLES.

anfangend.
angesangnen.

PASSIVE.

Abgesezt werden.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

Ich werde abgesezt. Ich werbe abgesezt.

IMPERFECT.

Ich wurde abgesezt. Ich würde abgesezt.

PERFECT.

Ich bin abgesezt worden. Ich sey abgesezt worden.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war abgesezt worden. Ich wäre abgesezt worden.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde abgesezt werden. Ich werbe abgesezt werden.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werbe abgesezt worden
seyn. Ich werbe abgesezt worden
seyn.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde abgesezt werden.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde abgesezt werden seyn.

NEUTER.

Ausgehen.

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

PRESENT.

Ich gehe aus.

Ich gehe aus.

IMPERFECT.

Ich ging aus.

Ich ginge aus.

PERFECT.

Ich bin ausgegangen.

Ich sey ausgegangen.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war ausgegangen.

Ich wäre ausgegangen.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde ausgehen.

Ich werde ausgehen.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde ausgegangen seyn. Ich werde ausgegangen seyn.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde ausgehen.

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

Ich würde ausgegangen seyn.

IMPERATIVE.

Gehe (du) aus.

INFINITIVE.

ausgehen, ausgegangen seyn, ausgehen werden.

PARTICIPLES.

ausgehend, ausgegangen.

COMPOUND, NEUTER AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS
SEPARABLE, CONJUGATED BY Seyn.

Abfahren, to drive off, to depart: sie sind diesen Morgen abgefahren. abfallen, to fall off: die Blätter sind abgefallen. abkommen, to get away: er ist auf eine Stunde abgekommen. ablaufen, to turn out: es ist nicht gut abgelaufen. abreisen, to depart, set off: mein Vater ist diesen Morgen abgereist. abscheiden, to depart this life: viele Freunde sind in diesem Jahre abgeschieden. abweichen, to deviate: sie sind vom rechten Wege abgewichen. abziehen, to march off: die Armee ist abgezogen.

Aubrechen, to break: der Tag war noch nicht angebrochen. ankommen, to arrive: wann sind Sie angekommen? anwachsen, to grow, to increase: die Rechnung ist angewachsen.

Aufbleiben, to sit up: ich bin gestern Abend bis elf Uhr aufgeblieben. auftreten, to rise: wann sind Sie diesen Morgen aufgestanden? aufwachen, to awake: ich bin um fünf Uhr aufgewacht. auffahren, to go up, to ascend: Christus ist aufgeflogen gen Himmel. auffallen, to strike: dieses ist mir nie aufgefallen. aufkommen, to come up, to come into vogue: eine neue Mode ist aufgekommen. aufleben, to come to life again: er ist nicht wieder aufgelebt. ausschießen, to shoot up: der Baum ist schnell aufgeschossen. aufsteigen, to ascend: ein dicker Rauch ist aufgestiegen. auftreten, to step up: sie sind alle aufgetreten. aufwachsen, to grow up: die Kinder sind schnell aufgewachsen.

Ausfahren, to go out in a carriage: meine Mutter ist ausgefahren. ausfallen, to turn out: es ist schlecht ausgefallen. ausgehen, to go out: sie sind vor einer Stunde ausgegangen. auschlagen, to get buds: die Bäume sind ausgeschlagen. austreten, to step out: der Fluss ist ausgetreten. auswandern, to emigrate: viele Menschen sind nach Amerika ausgewandert. ausweichen, to evade: er ist mir immer ausgewichen. ausziehen, to march out, to move out of a house: sie sind ausgezogen.

Einfallen, to fall in, to occur : das Haus ist eingefallen ; es ist mit niemals eingefallen. **einlaufen**, to come in : gute Nachrichten sind eingelaufen. **einschlafen**, to fall asleep : wir sind eingeschlafen. **eintreffen**, to arrive : sie sind eingetroffen. **eingehen**, to move into : die Soldaten sind in die Stadt eingezogen ; wir werden bald in unser neues Haus einziehen.

Emporkommen, to get up : dieser Mann ist emporgekommen.

Forteilen, to hasten away : er war fortgeeilt. **fortfliegen**, to fly away : mein Vogel ist fortgeflogen. **fortgehen**, to go away : warum sind Sie fortgegangen ?

Hertreten, to step to a person : sie waren hergetreten.

Hinfallen, to fall down : der Knabe war hingefallen. **hingehen**, to go to, to elapse : er ist hingegangen, um ihn zu sehen ; viele Jahre sind hingegangen, ohne daß ich ihn sah. **hinkommen**, to come to : ich weiß nicht, wo er hingekommen ist. **hinkriechen**, to creep to : das Kind ist zu ihm hingekrochen.

Mitgehen, to go with a person : sie sind mit uns gegangen.

Nacheilen, to hasten after : wir sind ihm nachgeeilt. **nachgehen**, to go after : der Sohn ist dem Vater bald nachgegangen. **nachkommen**, to come after. **nachschleichen**, to sneak after. **nachspringen**, to spring after.

Niederfahren, to descend : Christus ist niedergefahren zur Hölle. **niederkommen**, to fall down : der Diener ist vor seinem Herrn niedergefallen. **niedersinken**, to sink down : er war niedergesunken. **niederstürzen**, to fall down : er ist auf seinem Wege niedergestürzt.

Umfallen, to fall down ; die Kutsche ist umgefallen. **umgehen**, to go about, to have intercourse : wir sind zwei Meilen umgegangen. **umkehren**, to turn back : du bist zu früh umgekehrt. **umziehen**, to move into another house : unser Nachbar ist gestern umgezogen.

Vordringen, to press forward : der Feind ist vorgedrungen.

vorfallen, to occur : nichts von Wichtigkeit ist vorgefallen. vorkommen, to seem : es ist mir so vorgekommen.

Wegeilen, to hasten away. wegfallen, to fall away : der Mann ist seit einiger Zeit sehr weggeflogen. wegfliegen, to fly away : mein Vogel ist weggeflogen. weggehen, to go away : er ist weggegangen, ohne ein Wort zu sagen. weglauen, to run away : der Gefangene war weggelaufen. wegziehen, to march away.

Zufrieren, to freeze over : der Fluß ist zugefroren. zugehen, to proceed, to take place : das ist nicht recht zugegangen.

Zurückbleiben, to stay behind : die Kinder sind zurückgeblieben. zurückgehen, to go back ; zurückfallen, to fall back ; zurückkehren, to return ; zurückkommen, to come back ; zurücktreten, to step back.

Zusammenfahren, to start : er ist vor Schrecken zusammengefahren. zusammenkommen, to assemble. zusammentreffen, to meet together. zusammentreten, to step together.

SECOND CLASS.

Verbs singly compounded inseparable.

These verbs are formed by prefixing *be*, *er*, *ver*, *ent*, *zer*, *miß*, *hinter*, and *wider*, to simple verbs. I shall premise a few observations on the nature of these prefixes.

The prefix *be* (1) changes *intransitive* verbs into *transitive*s : *as*, *weinen*, to weep ; *beweinen*, to weep for ; *klagen*, to complain ; *beklagen*, to bewail ; *folgen*, to follow ; *befolgen*, to follow, to obey ; *reden*, to speak ; *bereden*, to persuade ; *antworten*, to answer ; *beantworten*, to answer (a letter) :—(2) it changes the relation of the simple verb to the object, when prefixed to transitive verbs : *as, ich male Blumen auf den Tisch*, I paint flowers on the table ; *ich bemalte den Tisch mit Blumen*, I cover the table with flowers by painting ; in the same way,

streuen and bestreuen, to strew ; legen, to lay, and belegen, to lay upon, to cover ; pflanzen and bepflanzen, to plant ; schenken and bescherten, to present ; stehlen, to steal, and bestehlen, to rob (a person) :—(3) it is used to form verbs from *substantives* and *adjectives* & as, from Flügel, wing ; Gabe, gift ; Mühe, pain ; Glück, happiness ; Mitleid, compassion ; Seele, soul ; frei, free ; lustig, merry ; günstig, favorable ; the following verbs are formed : beflügen, to furnish with wings ; begaben, to endow ; bemühen, to trouble ; beglücken, to make happy ; bemitleiden, to compassionate ; beseeeln, to animate ; befreien, to liberate ; belustigen, to amuse ; begünstigen, to favor.

The prefix *er* expresses :—1. *Acquisition for the subject* : as, erbetteln, to acquire by begging ; erjagen, to obtain by hunting ; erarbeiten, to obtain by working ; erzwingen, to obtain by compulsion ; erbenken, to find out by meditation ; ersfinden, to invent, to find out what *really* exists ; ersinnen, to invent, to find out what exists *only in idea* : erleben, to experience ; erlernen, to acquire by learning.—2. *Acquisition for the object* : as, erklären, to explain, to make clear to another person ; erhellen, to light up ; erzeigen, to show, to render.—3. *Progress towards or the getting into a certain state* : as, erstarken, to get strong ; erwecken, to awake ; erwärmen, to get warm ; erröthen, to blush ; erkranken, to become ill.

The prefix *ver* denotes :—1. *Loss, disadvantage to the subject* : as, verspielen, to lose by gambling ; vertäubeln, to trifle away ; verschlafen, to lose by sleeping ; versäumen, to lose by delaying, to neglect ; vertrinken, to spend in drinking.—2. *Loss, disadvantage to the object* : as, verführen, to seduce ; verleiten, to misguide ; versagen, to deny ; verweigern, to refuse.—3. *Rgress, or the getting into a bad state* : as, verblühen, to fade ; verwelken, to wither ; verschmachten, to be famished ; verbluten, to bleed to death ; verbleichen, to grow pale ; verfallen, to decay ; verwöhnen, to spoil (a child).—

4. *Error, mistake*: as, *sich verschreiben*, to commit an error in writing; *sich verrechnen*, to misreckon; *sich versehen*, to make a mistake.—5. *A change or transition*, most frequently for the worse: as, *verrücken*, to move out of its proper place; *verschieben*, to push out of its place; *verwechseln*, to change, to take one thing for another; *verpflanzen*, to transplant.—6. *Union, connexion*: as, *verbinden*, to unite, to bind together; *versammeln*, to gather together; *verbrüdern*, to connect by a brotherly tie; *verschwören*, to conspire.—7. It is used to form verbs from substantives and adjectives: as, from *Gott*, God; *Mittel*, medium, means; *Mauer*, wall; *dunkel*, dark; *alt*, old; *arm*, poor, the following verbs are formed: *vergöttern*, to deify, idolize; *vermitteln*, to mediate; *vermauern*, to immure; *verbunkeln*, to darken; *veralten*, to grow old, obsolete; *verarmen*, to become poor.

Ent implies:—1. *Negation, deprivation*, when it is prefixed to verbs derived from substantives or adjectives: as, *entehren*, to dishonor; *enthaupten*, to behead; *entfesseln*, to free from fatters; *entkleiden*, to deprive of clothing; *entschuldigen*, to exculpate; *entvölkern*, to depopulate; *entheiligen*, to profane.—2. *Separation*, when it is prefixed to transitive or intransitive verbs: as, *entsagen*, to renounce; *entfliehen*, to fly from, to escape; *entgehen*, to escape; *entführen*, to seduce; *entreißen*, to snatch from.—3. *Origin*: as, *entstehen*, to arise from; *entspringen*, to spring from; *entzünden*, to inflame.

Note 1.—In some verbs the signification of this prefix is not clear: as, *entsprechen*, to answer, to correspond (perhaps an abbreviation for *entgegen*, opposite; for one thing answers (*entspricht*) another, when it is found like it, by being placed opposite to it); *entbieten*, to send word, to send an offer to a person (*entgegen*, towards); *enthalten*, to contain, most probably for *inhalten*; for the substantive is *Inhalt*, contents.

Note 2.—In the following words and their derivatives, the prefix *emp* occurs before *f*: *empfangen*, to receive; *empfinden*,

to perceive ; empfehlen, to recommend. The original prefix was probably ent, with the signification of ein, in, inne, and entgegen ; the t was changed into p before f, because b, p, f, belong to the same class of consonants ; and then n was changed into m before p, like the Greek ν into μ before a p sound : λιντάω into λιμπάω. (See my ‘*Conjugation of the Greek Verb*,’ page 2.)

The prefix zer denotes *dissolution* and *destruction* ; as, zerlegen, to divide into pieces, to carve ; zerstreuen, to scatter ; zerstören, to destroy ; zertreten, to tread in pieces ; zerreiben, to rub to atoms ; zerfallen, to fall to pieces.

The prefix miß has the signification of the English prefixes *mis*, *dis*, *ill* : mißbeuten, to misinterpret ; mißfallen, to displease ; mißhandeln, to ill-treat.

Hinter signifies *behind*, *back*, and *behind one's back* : and wider, against : as, hinterlassen, to leave behind ; hintergehen, to deceive ; widersprechen, to contradict ; widerstehen, to resist.

PREPOSITIONS OR PARTICLES.		COMPOUNDS.	SIMPLE VERBS.
be,	beweisen,	to prove.	weisen, to shew.
ent,	entehren,	to dishonor.	ehren, to honor.
emp,	empfangen,	to receive.	fangen, to catch.
er,	erhalten,	to preserve.	halten, to hold.
hinter,	hintergehen,	to deceive.	gehen, to go.
miß,	mißfallen,	to displease.	fallen, to fall.
ver,	*vergehen,	to pass away.	gehen, to go.
wider,	widerrathen,	to dissuade.	rathen, to advise.
zer,	zerstreuen,	to disperse.	streuen, to strew.

These prepositions and particles are unaccented, and never disjoined from the verb. The verbs compounded with them do not take the augment ge in the preterite participle ; and the zu of the supine stands before the compounds as before the simple verbs : ich empfange ; ich habe deinen Brief empfangen ; ich hatte das Vergnügen, deinen Brief zu empfangen.

Ich beweise, ich bewies, ich habe bewiesen, ich hatte bewiesen, ich werde beweisen, ich werde bewiesen haben ; ich vergehe, ich verging, ich bin vergangen, ich war vergangen, ich werde vergehen, ich werde vergangen seyn. Ich entschließe mich, I resolve, ich entschloß mich, ich habe mich entschlossen, ich hatte mich entschlossen, ich werde mich entschließen.

COMPOUND INTRANSITIVE AND NEUTER VERBS INSEPARABLE, CONJUGATED BY *Seyn.*

Bekommen, to agree with : die Speise ist mir nicht wohl bekommen.

Entfallen, to slip from : sein Name ist mir entfallen. *entfahren*, to escape from : kein Seufzer ist ihm entfahren. *entscheiden*, to escape by flight; *entgehen*, to escape by going; *entlaufen*, to escape by running; *entschlüpfen*, to escape by slipping away; *entspringen*, to escape by springing; *entweichen*, to escape by yielding; *entwischen*, to escape by gliding away; *entschlafen*, to fall asleep, to expire : er ist sanft entschlafen.

Erbllassen, to grow pale; *erfolgen*, to ensue; *ergehen*, to happen to ; *erscheinen*, to appear; *erwachen*, to awake.

* *Veralten*, to become antiquated ; *verarmen*, to grow poor ; *verbleichen*, to grow pale ; *verblühen*, to fade ; *verfallen*, to decay ; *verfaulen*, to rot ; *verfliegen*, to evaporate ; *vergehen*, to pass away ; *verhungern*, to starve ; *verjähren*, to become invalid by time; *verboden*, to become desolate ; *verrauchen*, to pass away in smoke ; *verreisen*, to go on a journey ; *verrostten*, to be consumed by rust ; *verschallen*, not to be heard of ; *verscheiden*, to depart this life ; *verschwinden*, to vanish ; *versiegen*, to dry up ; *versinken*, to sink ; *verstrecken*, to pass away, to elapse ; *verstummen*, to grow dumb ; *vertrocknen*, to dry up ; *verwachsen*, to become decrepit ; *verwelken*, to fade.

Zerfallen, to fall to pieces ; *zerpringen*, to burst ; *zerstieben*, to be scattered like dust.

THIRD CLASS.

Verbs separable and inseparable.

The prefixes of these verbs are all prepositions, except *wieder*, *again*, which is an adverb. When the verb is separable, the prefix has the accent; when inseparable, it is unaccented. The separables are treated like those of the first class, and the inseparables like those of the second.

SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
Dürchbringen, to force through, part. durchgebrungen.	Dürchdringen, to penetrate, part. durchdrungen.
Dürchreisen, to travel through, part. durchgereiset.	Dürchreisen, to traverse, part. durchreiset.
Uebersetzen, to leap over, part. übergesetzt.	Uebersetzen, to translate, part. übersezt.
Uebergehēn, to go over, part. übergegangen.	Uebergehēn, to pass over, part. übergangen.
Umgēhēn, to make a round about way; also to have intercourse, part. umgegangen.	Umgēhēn, to avoid, part. umgangen.
Umkleiden, to change dress, part. umgekleidet.	Umkleiden, to clothe, part. umkleidet.
Unterhälten, to keep under, part. untergehalten.	Unterhälten, to entertain, part. unterhalten.
Unterschieben, to shove under, part. untergeschoben.	Unterschieben, to substitute falsely, part. unterschoben.
Untergehēn, to perish, part. untergegangen.	Unternēhmēn, to undertake, part. unternommen.
Wiederholēn, to fetch back, part. wiedergeholt.	Wiederholēn, to repeat, part. wiederholt.

FOURTH CLASS.

Verbs doubly compounded.

Verbs belonging to this class have a compound prefix, the components of which are either a preposition and particle or two prepositions, (ein is in compounds used for in). They comprise three kinds: (a) those, the *compound* prefix of which is disjoined from the verb; these are treated like those of the first class, the compound prefix being considered as a simple one; (b) those, the prefix of which has a separable preposition for its first component, and an inseparable particle for its second; the preposition of these is disjoined from the verb, but not the inseparable particle; and as an inseparable particle is prefixed to the verb, they do not take the augment *ge*; but the *zu* of the supine stands between the preposition and particle, as in those of the first class: *as, anerkennen*, to acknowledge; *ich erkenne an, ich habe anerkannt, anzuerkennen*; (c) those the compound prefix of which is never disjoined from the verb.

(A)

COMPOUND PREFIXES.

anheim (to home),
dabei (there by),
daher (there from),
dahin (there to),
davon (there off),
einhör (about),
herab (down ; her sig-
nifies towards you,
hin, from you),
heran (on),
heraus (out),

COMPOUND VERBS.

anheimstellen, to refer to.
dabeistehen, to stand by.
daherkommen, to come to you.
dahineilen, to hasten from you.
davonlaufen, to run off.
einhergehen, to go about.
herabspringen, to leap down.
heranführen, to lead on.
herausholen, to fetch out.

COMPOUND PREFIXES.

herbei (to you),
herein (in),
herüber (over),
herum (round),
herunter (down),
hervor (forth),
herzu (to),
nebenein (besides
into),

umher (about),
umhin (about),
voran (before on),
voraus (before out),
vorbei (before by)
vorher (before),
vorüber (before over),
überein (over to one),

Note 1.—All those composed with *her*, except *bei* and *vor*, take *hin* when a motion from the subject is expressed: as, *hinalassen*, to let down; *hinan*, *hinaus*, *hinein*, *hinüber*, *hinder*, *hinzu*.

Note 2.—*Herum* and *umher* are frequently confounded with each other though they have different significations. *Herum* denotes a movement from a certain place, and a return to the same; but *umher* expresses only a movement to several places: as, *er ging bei seinen Freunden herum*, *um Geld zu sammeln*, he went round by his friends to collect money; *wir gingen in der Stadt umher*, *um die Merkwürdigkeiten derselben zu sehen*, we went about the town to see the curiosities of the same.

Examples.—*Ich stelle anheim*, *ich habe anheimgestellt*, *ich werde anheimstellen*; *ich komme überein*, *ich bin übereingekommen*, *ich werde übereinkommen*; *er ist umhergegangen*, *wir sind herumgegangen*.

COMPOUND VERBS.

herbeirufen, to call towards you.
hereinbringen, to bring in.
herüberkommen, to come over.
herumlaufen, to run round.
herunterfallen, to fall down.
hervorbringen, to produce.
herzueilen, to hasten to you.
nebeneinkommen, to enter.—

(Rom. v. 20.)

umhergehen, to go about.
umhinkönnen, to forbear, help.
vorangehen, to go before.
voraussegen, to suppose.
vorbeikommen, to pass by.
vorhersagen, to foretell.
vorübergehen, to go over.
übereinkommen, to agree

(B)

PREPOSITIONS
AND PARTICLES.

COMPOUNDS.

aner,	anerkennen, to acknowledge.
anver,	anvertrauen, to entrust.
aufser,	auserziehen, to bring up.
vorbe,	vorbehalten, to reserve.

Examples.—Ich behalte mir vor, ich behielt mir vor, ich habe mir vorbehalten, ich hatte mir vorbehalten, ich werde mir vorbehalten; ich erkenne an, ich erkannte an, ich habe anerkannt, ich hatte anerkannt, ich werde anerkennen.

Note.—Some verbs have the appearance of being doubly compounded: as, verunreinigen, to soil; verabscheuen, to detest; veranlassen, to occasion; but they are formed from nouns by means of a simple prefix, from unrein, impure; Abschœu, horror; Anlaß, occasion.

(C)

PREPOSITIONS
AND PARTICLES.

COMPOUNDS.

anbe,	anbelangen or anbetreffen, to concern.
aufer,	auferbauen, to build up, to edify.
aufer,	auferstehen, to rise from the dead.
aufer,	auferlegen, to enjoin.
außer,	außerlesen, to select.
außer,	außerwählen, to choose.

Note.—These are never used when their position requires the separation: we say, was mich anbetrifft, but not es anbetrifft mich, nor es betrifft mich an; in this case the first or second component of the prefix is always omitted: es betrifft mich, it concerns me; der Herr ist wahrhaftig auferstanden (Luke xxiv. 34). So die Todten nicht auferstehen (1 Cor. xv. 16); er hat mir ein wichtiges Werk auferlegt, er legte mir ein wichtiges Werk auf.

FIFTH CLASS.

Verbs compounded with Nouns.

Of these some are (*a*) separable, some (*b*) inseparable:—

(a) SEPARABLE.

fehlslägen, to miscarry;	es schlägt fehl.
freisprechen, to acquit;	ich habe ihn freigesprochen.
gleichkommen, to equal;	er wird ihm nicht gleichkommen.
losreißen, to tear off;	ich reiße es los.
stattfinden, to take place;	es hat stattgefunden.

(b) INSEPARABLE.

These take the augment *ge* in the preterite participle, like simple verbs, except those compounded with *voll*.

lustwandeln, to walk;	ich lustwandle, ich habe gelustwandelt.
rechtfertigen, to justify;	ich habe gerechtfertigt.
rathsählen, to counsel;	wir haben gerathsählt.
frohlocken, to exult;	ich frohlocke, ich habe gefrohlockt.
handhaben, to handle;	ich handhabe, ich habe gehandhabt.
frühstückn, to breakfast;	ich frühstücke, ich habe gefrühstückt.
liebkosen, to caress;	ich liebkose, er hat geliebkoset.
liebäugeln, to exchange fond looks, to ogle;	ich liebäugle, sie haben geliebäugelt.
mutmaßen, to suspect;	ich mutmaße, wir haben gemuthe-
	maßt.
vollziehen, to execute (an order);	ich vollziehe, ich habe vollzogen.
willfahren, to comply with;	ich willfahre, ich habe gewillfahrt.
weissagen, to prophesy;	er hat geweissagt.

SECTION V.

THE ADVERBS.

1. An adverb is a part of speech which defines or modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. The following classes of adverbs may be formed :—1. Of place: *hier*, here; *wo*, where; *dort*, there; *dasselbst*, in that place; &c.—2. Of time: *jetzt*, now; *gestern*, yesterday; *heute*, to day; *morgen*, to-morrow; *übermorgen*, the day after to-morrow; *vorgestern*, the day before yesterday; *oft*, often; &c.—3. Of number and order: *einmal*, once; *erstens*, first; &c.—4. Of quantity: *viel*, much; *genug*, enough; &c.—5. Of manner and quality: *weise*, wisely; *langsam*, slowly; &c.—6. Of doubt: *vielleicht*, perhaps; &c.—7. Of affirmation and negation: *ja*, yes; *wahrlich*, verily, truly; *gewiß*, certainly; *nein*, no; *nicht*, not; &c.—8. Of interrogation: *wie?* how? &c.—9. Of comparison: *sehr*, very; *mehr*, more.

2. Almost all adjectives are now employed as adverbs of manner and quality without undergoing any alteration: as, *dieser Mann hanbelt klug*, this man acts prudently; *er rennet schnell*, he runs fast.

3. Adverbs are formed—(a) from substantives; (b) from adjectives; (c) from verbs, by the addition of the syllables *lich*, *haft*, and *icht*.

(a) From substantives: *glücklich*, happily; *friedlich*, peaceably; *wörtlich*, verbally; *ängstlich*, anxiously; *betrüglich*, deceptfully; *freundschaftlich*, amicably; *sündhaft*, sinfully; *ſcherhaft*, jocosely; *meisterhaft*, masterly; *ſalzicht*, tasting like salt; *kupfericht*, looking like copper; from *Glück*, *Friede*, *Wort*, *Angst*, *Betrug*, *Freundschaft*, *Sünde*, *Scherz*, *Meister*, *Salz*, *Kupfer*.

(d) From adjectives: *weislich*, wisely; *fälschlich*, falsely; *bekanntlich*, as it is well known; *wahrhaft*, truly; *boßhaft*, maliciously; from *weise*, *falsch*, *bekannt*, *wahr*, *boße*. Those ending in en insert t: *gelegentlich*, opportunely; *gesittentlich*, intentionally; *wissentlich*, knowingly; from *gelegen*, *gesitten*, *wissen* (*wissen* is an infinitive).

(e) From verbs: *sterblich*, mortally; *glaublich*, credibly; *beweglich*, moveably; *begreiflich*, conceiveably; *fasslich*, comprehensibly; *thunlich*, practicably. The following do not occur without the negative prefix un: *unaufhörlich*, incessantly; *unauslöschlich*, inextinguishably; *unentgeltlich*, gratis; *unübersteiglich*, insurmountably; *unvergleichlich*, incomparably; *unwiderstehlich*, irresistibly.

Note 1.—Those adverbs ending in *lich* and *haft* which are formed from substantives or verbs, are also employed as adjectives: *ein glücklicher Mensch*, a happy man; *eine wörtliche Uebersetzung*, a verbal translation; *ein sterbliches Geschöpf*, a mortal creature; *eine begreifliche Sache*, a comprehensible thing (*folglich*, consequently, is a conjunction, and never used as an adjective); also those ending in *haft*, and formed from adjectives: *ein krankhafter Zustand*, a diseased condition; *ein boßhaftes Kind*, a malicious child; but not those ending in *lich*, and formed from adjectives: *ein weiser Rath*, a wise counsel, not *ein weislicher Rath*; *ein kluger Mann*, a prudent man, not *ein klüglicher Mann*; *eine falsche Aussage*, a false deposition; not *eine fälschliche*; *ein treuer Freund*, a faithful friend, not *ein treulicher*. The following, therefore, are adverbs only, and they do not define adjectives: *neulich*, lately; *erstlich*, in the first place; *freilich*, to be sure; *gewißlich*, certainly; *sicherlich*, assuredly; *schwerlich*, hardly; *wahrlich*, verily, truly; *gänzlich*, totally; *gütlich*, in a kind manner; *reichlich*, richly; *treulich*, faithfully; *ein wahrhaft guter Mensch*, a truly good man, not *ein wahrlich guter Mensch*.

Note 2.—Those ending in *icht* are also used as adjectives,

but differ in signification from those ending in *ig*, and formed from the same substantives: *eine salzige Suppe*, a soup tasting of salt; *eine salzige Suppe*, a soup containing salt; *wollig*, consisting of wool; *wollicht*, resembling wool; *kupferig*, *kupfericht*.

Note 3.—Some diminutive adjectives ending in *lich*, formed from adjectives, must not be confounded with the adverbs ending in *lich*: *as*, *röthlich*, reddish; *bläulich*, blueish; *ältlieh*, oldish; *süßlich*, sweetly; *kränklich*, sickly; *schwächlich*, weakly.

Note 4.—The adverbial idea of a sentence was formerly, most frequently, expressed by the genitive case; many adverbs, therefore, retain the characteristic letter of that case; and even substantives and adjectives, or numerals in the form of the genitive, are used as adverbs: *bereits*, already; *stets*, constantly; *besonders*, particularly; *anber*s, otherwise; *vergebens*, in vain; *bestens*, in the best manner; *schönstens*, in the finest manner; *ehrestens*, soonest; *erstens*, in the first place; *ungerechterweise*, unjustly; *billigerweise*, fairly; *un-glücklicherweise*, unfortunately; *glücklicherweise*, fortunately; *folgendermaßen*, in the following manner; *einigermaßen*, in some measure; *meistentheils*, for the most part; *allenfalls*, at all events; *keinesweges*, by no means; *unterweges*, on the way; *vielmals*, many times; *vormal*s, formerly; *damals*, at that time.

The adverbial idea must be expressed by the substantive *Weise*, and the adjective in the form of the genitive, when the form of the adverb and the adjective is the same, and the adverb may be mistaken for the adjective: as, *I was unfortunately not at home, not ich war unglücklich nicht zu Hause*, but *unglücklicherweise*. Those substantives and adjectives, which in the form of the genitive are used as adverbs, are also written as two words: *glücklicher Weise*, *folgender Maßen*, *keines Begegs*.

Note 5.—Some substantives of the feminine gender, or used in the plural number, take, contrary to rule, *s* at the end,

when they are, for the sake of forming adverbs, composed with adjectives or pronouns: *meinerseits* (*die Seite*), on my part; *diesseits*, on this side; *jenseits*, on that side; *allerseits*, on all parts; *beiderseits*, on both sides; *allerdings* (*die Dinge*), by all means; *schlechterdings*, by any means.

Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs.

5. Adverbs of manner and quality, and a few of indefinite time and of quantity: *as*, *halb*, soon; *oft*, often; *selten*, seldom; *viel*, much; *wenig*, little; admit the degrees of comparison.

Both degrees are formed in the same way as those of adjectives: *schöner*, *sel tener* (*sel tener*); *schönst*, *sel tenst*. But the difference between the superlative of *comparison* and the superlative of *eminence* must also be observed here.

The superlative of *comparison* does not differ from the predicative form of that of the adjective with *am*: *am schönsten*: *as*, *er schreibt am schönsten*, i. e. *schöner als andere*, he writes most beautifully, i. e. more beautifully than others; *er redete mich am freundlichsten an*, i. e. *freundlicher als andere*, he addressed me most friendly, i. e. more friendly than others; *ich war am höchsten erfreut*, i. e. *höher als andere*, I was most highly rejoiced, i. e. more highly than others.

The superlative of *eminence* is either the superlative in its original form, *freundlichst*, *höchst*; or that form preceded by the preposition *auf*, and the definite article *das* contracted into *aufs*, with the termination of the accusative neuter in the second form of inflection: *as*, *er redete mich höflichst an*, or *er redete mich aufs höflichste an*, he addressed me most politely, i. e. with the greatest politeness; *ich grüße Sie freundlichst*, or *aufs freundlichste*, I send you my most friendly compliments; the latter expresses the highest degree.

The superlative, however, is also produced by putting *höchst* or *äußerst* before the adverb: *ich wurde äußerst freundlich von ihm empfangen*, I was received by him in an extremely friendly manner; *er kommt äußerst selten zu mir*, he comes very seldom to me; *er beträgt sich höchst artig gegen mich*, he behaves very politely towards me.

Note.—The termination *ens* (see Note 4, page 183), is added to the original form of the superlative of several words to express the superlative of eminence: as, *höchstens*, at the highest; *meistens*, at most; *wenigstens*, at least; *spätestens*, at the latest; *frühestens*, at the earliest.

The following are irregular:—

<i>Balb</i> , soon;	<i>comp.</i> <i>eher</i> ,	<i>sup.</i> <i>am ehesten</i> .
<i>Gern</i> , willingly;	— <i>lieber</i> ,	— <i>am liebsten</i> .
<i>Viel</i> , much;	— <i>mehr</i> ,	— <i>am meisten</i> .
<i>Wenig</i> , little;	— <i>minder</i> , or — <i>weniger</i> ,	— <i>am mindesten</i> , or <i>am wenigsten</i> .
<i>Wohl</i> , well;	— <i>besser</i> ,	— <i>am besten</i> .

I shall conclude this section by giving an explanation of some adverbs, which have either no corresponding words in English, or are used in a different way.

Da, there, is sometimes used instead of *dann*, *alsdann*, then: as, *wenn der Mensch sich glücklich fühlt, da vergibt er leicht den gütigen Vater im Himmel*, when man feels himself happy, then he easily forgets the kind Father in heaven. Sometimes it signifies *at hand*: *der Augenblick ist da, mich zu befreien*, the moment is come, to liberate myself.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*)

Hin and *her* have no corresponding words in English; both are compounded with verbs expressing *motion*: *hin* means *along*, from the person that speaks; *her* means to, towards the person that speaks: *wo ist er hingegangen?* where is he gone? *wo kommt er her?* whence does he come? These particles express locality, and must be used in sentences which imply

locality. There is consequently a difference between *er ist ausgegangen*, and *er ist hinausgegangen*; the former simply means, he is gone out, without reference to the place where he was; the latter, he is gone out from the place where he was: as, *ist Ihr Vater zu Hause?* nein, *er ist ausgegangen*, is your father at home? no, he is gone out; *ist Ihr Vater in seinem Zimmer?* nein, *er ist so eben hinausgegangen*, is your father in his room? no, he is just gone out; *wo ist dieses hergekommen?* whence is this come? They are also compounded with other adverbs and prepositions: *hierher*, hither; *dorthin*, thither; *woher*, whence; *wohin*, whither; *daher*, from that place; *dahin*, to that place: as, *kommen Sie hierher*, come hither; *gehen Sie dorthin*, go thither; *woher sind Sie gekommen?* whence did you come? *wohin wollen wir gehen?* where will we go to? After some prepositions, these adverbs take the place of the demonstrative pronouns *dieses*, *das*: as, *vorher*, before that; *vorhin*, before this; *nachher*, afterwards. *Vorher* and *vorhin* have a different signification; *vorher* signifies *before*, in reference to another event: *ich wußte es vorher*, *dass* *er kommen würde*; *vorhin* signifies *before*, in reference to the present time: *was ich sagen kann*, *dass habe ich ihm vorhin gesagt*. For this reason *vorher* is employed as a prefix of a compound verb, but not *vorhin*. *Bisher*, means hitherto; *mithin*, consequently; *umher*, about; *herum*, round; *umhin* occurs in the phrase: *ich kann nicht umhin*, I cannot help, I cannot avoid.

Nun and *jetzt* signify *now*, *at present*. *Jetzt* denotes the actually present time, without the idea of continuance: as, *jetzt schreibt er*, he is writing, i. e. he writes at present; *er ist jetzt im Besitze seines Vermögens*, he is at present in the possession of his fortune. *Nun* denotes a continuance of the present time: *er ist nun im Besitze seines Vermögens* he is now in the possession of his fortune; *nun habe ich nichts mehr zu sagen*, now I have nothing more to say; *jetzt habe*

ich nichts mehr zu sagen, I have nothing more to say at present. *Nun* is also employed like *now*, in the signification of *therefore*, in reference to a sentence which is considered to imply a cause: *du hast mir versprochen, morgen zu mir zu kommen*, *nun mußt du es auch thun*, thou hast promised me to come to me to-morrow, now thou must do it. It frequently expresses the English *well*, in sentences like this: *nun, ich will kommen*, well, I will come; *nun, was haben Sie zu sagen?* well, what have you to say? Sometimes it is used for the conjunction *indem*, since: *ich fürchte mich nicht, nun ich dich bei mir habe*, I am not afraid, since I have thee with me. See the conjunction *nun*.

Sonst is rendered by formerly, otherwise, else. *Sonst war ich selber mit in Feld und Wald*, formerly I was myself with them in the field and forest.—(*Schiller's Tell.*) *Du mußt fleißig seyn, sonst lernst du nichts*, thou must be industrious, otherwise you will learn nothing; *sonst nichts*, nothing else.

Erst signifies—1, *first*: *ich will erst lesen, und dann schreiben*;—2, *not before, till*: *ich bin erst gestern von meiner Reise zurückgekehrt*, I returned from my journey only yesterday; *ich werbe ihn erst morgen sehen*, I shall not see him till to-morrow;—3, *no more than, only*: *ich habe erst die Hälfte von meinen Büchern erhalten*, I have received only the half of my books. In the last signification *erst* is different from *nur*: *erst* implies that something more is expected, whilst *nur* simply defines.

Note—Only in the signification of *no more than*, is also expressed by *nur* and *blos*; and when these adverbs are used in an interrogative sentence, the affirmative answer is most commonly expressed in English by *no*, but in German by *ja*: *have you received only two letters?* *no*; *haben Sie nur zwei Briefe erhalten?* *ja*.

Schon signifies—1, *already*: *er ist schon ausgegangen*, he is already gone out;—2, *not later than*, used with adverbs of time, to give additional force to the adverb, it which signifi-

cation it is often not expressed in English: *er ist schon gestern angekommen*, it was yesterday that he arrived;—3, *as much as*: used with definite and indefinite numerals, to give additional force to the numeral: *er hat schon ein ganzes Glas gehabt*, he has had as much as a whole glass; *schon dreimal*;—4, *certainly, I dare say, I hope*: *ich helfe mir schon selbst*; *geht, gute Leute!* I hope I shall help myself; go, good people!—(*Schiller's Tell.*); *bald wird er es schon einsehen*, I dare say he will soon see it; *ich werde ihn schon davon überzeugen*, I hope I shall convince him of it. In the last signification *schon* implies *confidence, hope*, with respect to a future event, in a sentence containing an assertion; whilst *doch* expresses a hope in an interrogative sentence (see *doch*). *Sie werden schon meinen Brief zur rechten Zeit erhalten*, you will, I dare say, receive my letter at the proper time. *Sie haben doch meinen Brief zur rechten Zeit erhalten?* you have received my letter at the proper time, I hope?

Wenn erst der Boden rein ist von dem Feinde,
Dann wollen wir's in Frieden schon vergleichen.—

Schiller's Tell.

Noch signifies—1, *yet, still*: *er ist noch am Leben*, he is still alive;—2, *neither before nor later*: used with adverbs of time: *ich habe es noch gestern behauptet*, it was but yesterday that I asserted it; *noch diese Woche werden wir es erfahren*, before this week passes we shall learn it; *der Landvoigt wird noch heut' von dort erwartet*—(*Schiller's Tell.*);—3, *more*: used with definite and indefinite numerals: *noch einmal*, once more; *ich bitte mir noch eine Tasse Kaffee aus*, may I ask for another cup of coffee;—4, It stands before *so*, which two words are generally rendered by *ever so, however*: *wenn ich auch noch so glücklich wäre*, if I were ever so fortunate; *wenn ich es auch noch so gern thäte*, however willingly I should do it; *keine noch so heilige Stätte*, no place, however sacred. *Noch nicht*, not yet (we never say *nicht noch*).

Ja signifies—1, *yes*; often followed by *wohl*: ja wohl, certainly;—2, *indeed, you know, you see*: das ist ja ein schlechter Kerl, that is, indeed, a bad fellow; ich habe es dir ja gesagt, you know I have told you; es regnet ja, und wir können deswegen nicht ausgehen, you see it rains, and therefore we cannot go out;—3, it strengthens a negative: ja nicht, on no account.

Auch signifies—1, *also, too*;—2, *even*: auch (selbst) der beste Mensch hat seine Fehler, even the best man has his faults;—3, *ever*: with the indefinite relative pronoun *wer*, was: wer es auch gesagt haben mag, whoever may have said so; was es auch sey, whatever it may be.

Wohl signifies—1, *well*, but differs from *gut*, which is also sometimes expressed by *well*: der Knabe schreibt gut, the boy writes well; das Pferd geht gut, the horse goes well. Wohl refers to what pleases our feelings or senses; *gut* to what is good in itself: in dieser Beziehung hat er wohl gethan, in this respect he has acted well; mein Nachbar hat gut gehandelt, my neighbour has done a good deed; mein Freund ist wohl, my friend is, or feels well; mein Freund ist gut, my friend is good. It implies—2, *possibility, probability*: das ist wohl nicht wahr, that is, perhaps, not true; haben Sie das wohl gehört? have you, perhaps, heard that?—3, it signifies *indeed*, in sentences which express a wish: ich möchte wohl lesen, indeed I should like to read.

Doch signifies—1, *yet*;—2, after an imperative mood it answers to the English *pray*: sagen Sie mir doch, wer jener Herr ist, pray tell me who that gentleman is; sey doch so gut, und zeige mir den Weg, pray be so good as to show me the way;—3, it expresses a *hope*, in interrogative sentences, put in the form of direct sentences: Sie sind doch wohl, you are well, I hope? Sie haben doch meinen Brief erhalten? you have received my letter, I hope? (see *schon*);—4, it is used as a word of exclamation, indeed, to be sure: habe ich doch nie so etwas gesehen!

to be sure, I have never seen such a thing! In some parts of Germany it is used as an affirmation: *Sie haben das nie gesehen. Doch!* You have never seen that. Yes, I have.

Mitten occurs with the prepositions *in*, *auf*, *unter*, *über*, *durch*: *mitten in der Stadt*, in the midst of the town; *mitten auf dem Tische*, in the middle of the table; *mitten unter den Männern*, *mitten über dem Flusse*, mitten durch die Feinde.

Gern, (Latin *libenter*) is expressed by *willingly*, or *with pleasure*, or by the verb *to like*, with the infinitive: *ich thue es gern*, I do it with pleasure; *wir hätten gern etwas davon*, we should like to have some of it; *ich gehe nicht gern aus in schlechtem Wetter*, I do not like to go out in bad weather.

Fort, in the signification of *on, onwards*, in conjunction with verbs, is translated by the verb *to continue*: *sie arbeiteten fort bis zehn Uhr*, they continued to work till ten o'clock. *Fort und fort*, *on and on, continually*, also occurs: *wir müssen fort und fort uns um Hülfe an ihn wenden*, we must continually apply to him for help.

Gerade and *eben* are expressed by *exactly, just*: *er gab mir gerade die Antwort, welche ich erwartete*, he gave me exactly the answer which I expected; *es ist eben* or *gerade nicht schlecht*, it is not exactly bad; *er hat es so eben gethan*, he has done it just now.

Gar, before a negative, is expressed by *at all*; before adjectives and adverbs by *very*: *gar nichts*, nothing at all; *gar kein Geld*, no money at all; *Sie haben gar schöne Blumen*, you have very beautiful flowers; *ich habe es nicht so gar nöthig*, I am not so much in want of it.

Lang, long, is used to express continuance of time: *zwei Tage lang*, for two days; *eine Zeitlang*, a while; *Stunden lang*, for hours.

Überall, with the accent on *über*, signifies *everywhere*: but *ü'berall*, with the accent on *all*, signifies *at all*: as, *solche Menschen findet man überall*, such men are found everywhere;

ist es überall erlaubt in diesen Garten zu gehen? is it at all allowed to go into this garden? Wozu auch überall der fremden Künste? wherefore at all the strange arts?—(*Schiller's Turandot*). Schiller frequently uses this word in the last-mentioned signification in 'Wallenstein.'

Durchaus, absolutely, is often expressed by the verb *to insist upon*: er soll es durchaus thun, I insist upon his doing it.

Immer or immerhin, *always*, is sometimes used to express consent, no objection, either from the person who speaks or the person spoken to: sitzt nur immer! Seimt zusammen! sit, if you like, glue together!—(*Goethe's Faust*.) Lassen Sie mich immer ein Wort gebrauchen, das Sie nicht verstehen, do but allow me to use a word, which you do not understand.—(*Gellert*.) Thun Sie es immerhin, never mind, do it.

Ohnehin, *besides*: es ist ohnehin zu spät. Die ohnehin kleine Zahl wurde noch vermindert. For ohnehin, so is sometimes used: wir haben so der guten Freunde wenig.—(*Schiller's Wallenstein*.)

Mit, *with*, is sometimes used as an adverb for auch: dieses gehört mit zu den Schicksalen des Lebens, this forms part of the fates of life.

Hin und wieder, means *here and there*.

Meinetwegen, sometimes signifies *as far as regards me*: Sie mögen es meinetwegen thun.

Nichts weniger als, nothing less than, is expressed by *any thing but*: es ist nichts weniger als gut, it is any thing but good.

SECTION VI.

THE PREPOSITIONS.

The Prepositions require particular attention, not only on account of the various significations of some of them, but also of the different cases which they govern. Some govern the genitive, others the dative, others the accusative; several the dative and accusative, according to their signification. We therefore divide them into four chapters.

CHAPTER I.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE GENITIVE CASE.

Anstatt, or *statt*, *instead of*: *anstatt* is composed of the preposition *an*, and the substantive *Statt*, *stead*; it is sometimes like the English, separated by the insertion of the case which it governs: *an seines Vaters Statt*, *in his father's stead*. *Anstatt* and *statt* precede the substantive to which they belong.

Halben or *halber*, *on account of*, *for the sake of*; they differ from *wegen*, *on account of*. *Wegen* denotes a motive in an *indefinite* manner; *halben* and *halber* a *particular* motive, which is to be distinguished from another. *Halben* is preferred when the substantive to which it belongs is preceded by an article or pronoun; otherwise *halber*: they always stand after the case which they govern: *der Mensch that vieles des Gelbes halben*, *man does much for the sake of money* (*halben* is used because a particular motive, for the sake of money, not of honor or pleasure, is expressed); *Bergnügen halber*, *for the sake of pleasure*. *Halben* is used with the pronouns (see page

88) : *meinethalben*, on my account ; *unserthalben*, on our account, &c. It occurs abbreviated in *deshalb*, *weshalb*, on that account, on which account ; and in the following four compound prepositions :—

Außerhalb, without, on the outside of.

Innerhalb, within, in the inner part of.

Oberhalb, above, on the upper side of.

Unterhalb, below, on the lower side of.

Diesseits, on this side of: *diesseits des Flusses*, on this side of the river.

Jenseits, on the further side of: *jenseits des Flusses*.

Kraft, by the power of, by, or in virtue of, denotes a moral cause : *Kraft seines Amtes darf er dieses thun*, by the power of his office, he is allowed to do this ; *Kraft des von meinem Vater erhaltenen Auftrages fordere ich das Geld von Ihnen*, by virtue of the charge received from my father, I demand the money of you.

Laut, according to, conformably to, by the tendency of, refers to the contents of words either spoken or written : *Laut des Befehles*, according to the order ; *Laut des Briefes*, according to the letter ; *Laut der Urkunde*, conformably with the document.

Trotz, in spite of: *er ist trotz des schlechten Wetters ausgegangen*, he went out in spite of the bad weather ; *trotz meines Verbotes*, in spite of my prohibition, i. e. bidding defiance to my prohibition. Some authors use it with the dative case.

Vermittelt, by means of: *er hat vermittelt des Einflusses seiner reichen Freunde eine gute Stelle erhalten*, he has obtained a good situation by means of the influence of his rich friends.

Um-willen, for the sake of: refers to a wish or interest ; and the case which it governs always stands between the two words : *ich bitte dich um Gottes willen, es nicht zu thun*, I entreat thee, for God's sake, not to do it ; *um Ihrer Ehre willen sollten Sie es thun*, for the sake of your honor, you ought to do it ; *um des Friedens willen*, for the sake of peace.

Ungeachtet, notwithstanding, may precede or follow its case : *ungeachtet meines Verbotes*, or *meines Verbotes ungeachtet*, notwithstanding my prohibition, i. e. not regarding my prohibition. *Ohngeachtet, ohnerachtet*, and *unerachtet*, are not considered to be correct. *Demungeachtet* is met with : *dessenungeachtet, notwithstanding this*, is correct.

Unweit, near, not far from : *eine große Schlacht wurde unweit Leipzig geliefert*, a great battle was fought not far from Leipzig.

Vermöge, by dint of, by the power of, by means of, denotes a physical cause : *vermöge der Übung*, by dint of practice ; *vermöge seines Fleisches*, by means of his industry ; *das Blei fällt schneller als das Holz vermöge seiner Schwere*, lead falls quicker than wood, in consequence of its weight.

Während, during, expresses duration of time, *während des Krieges*, during the war ; *während des Winters*, during the winter. It is also used as a conjunction.

Wegen, because of, on account of, concerning : denotes a motive in an indefinite manner (see *halben*), and may precede or follow its case : *ich that es wegen meines Vaters*, I did it on account of my father ; *seiner Gesundheit wegen wohnt er auf dem Lande*, on account of his health he lives in the country. The obsolete use of *von* before *wegen* is retained in one expression : *von Rechts wegen, by right*. Formerly it was customary to say, *von wegen seiner Artigkei*t, *on account of his politeness*.—(See page 88.)

Längs, along; längs der Küste, along the coast. It is also found with the dative.

Zufolge, in consequence of, governs the genitive, when it precedes its case, and the dative when it follows it : *zufolge des Befehles*, in consequence of the order : *bem Befehle zufolge*.

Außer governs the genitive case in one instance: *außer Landes*, out of the country ; *mein Freund ist außer Landes*, my friend is abroad, out of the country.

CHAPTER II.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE
DATIVE CASE.

Aus, out of, denotes:—1, a motion from within a place: er kommt aus dem Hause, aus der Kirche, aus Deutschland, he comes out of the house, &c.; er nahm Geld aus dem Brustel, he took money out of the purse. In this signification it is used with the preposition von, from, and then it stands after the substantive: von Frankfurt aus verbreitete sich das Gerücht über ganz Deutschland, from Frankfort the report spread all over Germany;—2, a motive, which springs from a certain quality or state of the mind: manche Menschen sind aus Eitelkeit freigebig, und nicht aus Liebe zu ihren Nächsten, many people are liberal from vanity, and not from love to their neighbours; der Mann hat diesen Schritt aus Noth gethan, the man has taken this step from necessity; aus Geiz will er keinen Wein trinken, from avarice he will drink no wine;—3, a cause or source: vieles lernen wir besser aus Erfahrung als aus Büchern, many things we learn better from experience than from books; aus guten Gründen gehe ich nie zu diesem Manne, for good reasons I never go to this man;—4, the materials of which a thing is made; whence it is used with the verbs, bestehen, to consist of; machen, to make; bereiten, to prepare, &c.; der Mensch besteht aus Leib und Seele, man consists of body and soul; aus nichts hat Gott die Welt gemacht, out of nothing God has made the world; Branntwein wird aus Korn gemacht, brandy is made out of corn.

Außer, out of, on the outside of, (it does not denote motion like aus): das Haus meines Freundes steht außer den Mauern der Stadt, the house of my friend stands outside of the walls of the town; der Kranke ist jetzt außer Gefahr, the patient is

at present out of danger ; ich war außer Stande, etwas für ihn zu thun, I was not in a condition to do any thing for him ; als ich die Nachricht erhielt, war ich außer mir vor Freude, when I received the intelligence, I was beside myself for joy ; niemand außer mir war zugegen, nobody besides myself was present. It is also used as an adverb or conjunction.

Bei, by, near, with, expresses :—1, proximity of place, co-existence in space, like the French *chez* : ich stand bei dem Könige, I stood near the king ; er wohnt bei seinem Bruder, he lives with his brother ; unser Freund war gestern bei mir, our friend was yesterday with me ; mein Sohn arbeitet täglich bei seinem Meister, my son works daily with his master ;—2, co-existence in time : bei meiner Ankunft, on my arrival ; beim Tode seines Vaters, at the death of his father ; bei dieser Gelegenheit, on this occasion ;—3, co-existence in a general way : das ist bei uns nicht Mode, that is not the fashion with us ; bei Gott ist kein Ansehn der Person, with God there is no respect of persons (Eph. vi. 9) ;—4, it serves for reference to an author : beim Silius, in Livy ; and for swearing and protesting . bei Gott, by God ; bei meiner Ehre, upon my honor ;—5, formerly it had the signification of *nearly, about*, in which it frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible : und war eine Wittwe bei vier und achtzig Jahren. (Luke ii. 37.)

Note.—The use of *bei* with the accusative case after verbs of motion, is antiquated ; but occurs frequently in Luther's translation of the Bible.

Binnen, within, not exceeding, is used only in reference to time : binnen 24 Stunden, within 24 hours ; er mußte binnen 24 Stunden die Stadt verlassen, he was obliged to leave the town within 24 hours. It must not be confounded with *within*, in the signification of *during*, in the following sentence : I saw him often within the last six months, ich sah ihn oft in den letzten sechs Monaten.

Entgegen :—1, *opposite to* : *der Strom ist uns entgegen*, the tide is against us;—2, *towards*, so as to meet, united with verbs implying motion: *wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen*, we will go to meet our friend; *er kam mir entgegen*, he came to meet me. It always stands after the case.

Gegenüber, *over against*, *opposite to* : *der Kirche gegenüber*, opposite the church. It stands after the case. The two prepositions are sometimes separated by the insertion of the case: *gegen der Kirche über*; this practice, however, ought not to be imitated.

Längs, *along*: *längs dem Flusse*; sometimes used with the genitive.

Mit, *with*, expresses :—1, participation, company: *ich habe noch niemals mit diesem Manne gesprochen*, I have never yet spoken to this man; *wir haben mit einander gespielt*, we have played with one another; *der Geselle arbeitet mit seinem Meister*, the journeyman works with (i. e. in company with, not only at the house of) his master; *mein Bruder wohnt mit mir in einem Hause*, my brother lives with me in the same house (see *bei*);—2, it denotes an instrument: *wir schneiden mit dem Messer*, we cut with a knife; *er tritt sein Glück mit Füßen*, he tramples his fortune under feet;—3, manner: *ich werde es mit Vergnügen thun*, I shall do it with pleasure; *jedes Unglück muß man mit Geduld ertragen*, one must bear every misfortune with patience.

The following verbs are construed with this preposition: *anfangen*, to begin with; *endigen*, to finish with; *versorgen*, *versehen*, to furnish with; *sich befassen*, to meddle with (damit befasse ich mich nicht); *sich behelfen*, to make shift with; *sich begnügen*, *vorlieb nehmen*, to content one's self with; and most of those compound verbs inseparable which are formed from adjectives and substantives by means of the prefix *be*, and those, the construction of which is changed by that prefix (see the prefix *be*, page 169). *Mit nichts*, signifies *nevermore, by no means*.

Nach, signifies :—1, *after, posterior in time* : nach Neujahr, after New-year's-day; nach diesem, afterwards (Joel ii. 28);—2, *to, in a direction to, towards*, with names of places and verbs of motion: ich reise nach England; wir gehen nach der Stadt, ich kam gestern Abend spät nach Hause (not zu Hause), see hin, p. 183). When motion to a person is expressed, zu is used: ich werde diesen Abend zu (not nach) meinem Vater, Freunde, Nachbar gehen. Zu is likewise used after von, in phrases like these: von Haus zu Haus, from house to house; von Flügel zu Flügel, from wing to wing; von Zeit zu Zeit, from time to time; von Jahr zu Jahr, from year to year, &c.;—3, *according to* : nach der Beschreibung vieler Reisenden, according to the description of many travellers; der Angeklagte ist nach der Aussage der Zeugen schuldig, the defendant is guilty according to the evidence of the witnesses. In this signification it may be put immediately after its substantive, unless a genitive case is connected with it: seiner Meinung nach, in his opinion; nach der Meinung des Vaters (not der Meinung des Vaters nach); dem Unsehn nach, according to appearance; seiner Sprache nach ist er ein Ausländer, according to (to judge by) his language he is a foreigner;—4, *next to* : der Mond wirft nach der Sonne das stärkste Licht auf die Erde, the moon throws, next to the sun, the strongest light on the earth;—5, *of*: der Thee schmeckt nach Rauch, the tea tastes of smoke; das Haus riecht nach Farbe, the house smells of paint;—6, *for, after* : especially with verbs which express a longing for, or a striving after, an object: as, verlangen, to desire; sich sehnen, to long for; streben, to strive after; ringen, to wrestle for; fragen, to ask for; forschen, to enquire into: e.g. ich sehne mich nach meinem Studierzimmer, I long for my study. *Nach und nach* means, by little and little, gradually.

Nebst, together with, denotes a connection into which persons or inanimate objects are brought; but differs in signification from *samt*, *together with*, and *mit, with*: meine beiden Nachbarn nebstd meinen Söhnen waren gestern Abend bei

mir, both my neighbours, together with my sons, were with me last night.

Ob, over, at, on account of, is used only in poetry : alle Redlichen beklagen sich ob dieses Landvogts Geiz, all honest men complain of the avarice of this governor.—(*Schiller's Tell.*) It occurs also with the genitive : ihr seyd verwundert ob des seltsamen Geräths in meiner Hand.—(*Schiller's Jungfrau von Orleans.*) In prose it is antiquated ; but frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible : Psalm xxxviii. 21. Ezek. xiv. 3, 4, 7. Ph. ii. 16.

Sammt, together with, expresses participation, or the sharing of the same fate : Aaron sammt seinen Söhnen sollen ihre Hände auf sein Haupt legen (Exod. xxix. 15) ; er hat um das Wasser ein Ziel gesetzt, bis das Licht sammt der Finsterniß vergehe (Job xxvi. 10) ; welche Christo angehören, die Kreuzigen ihr Fleisch sammt den Lüsten und Begierden (Gal. v. 24) ; er hat sein Haus sammt den Möbeln verkauft, he has sold his house, together with his furniture. It is sometimes, but incorrectly, used with the preposition mit : er hat seine Kutsche mit sammt seinen Pferden verkauft, he has sold his coach, together with his horses.

Seit, since, denotes :—1, commencement of a space of time : seit dem Tode seines Kindes fühlt der Vater sich unglücklich, since the death of his child, the father feels unhappy ;—2, duration of time : er ist seit zwei Jahren nicht in meinem Hause gewesen, he has not been in my house for two years ; Schiller ist schon seit vielen Jahren todt, Schiller has been dead many years.

Von, from, of, by, expresses :—1, motion from (not from within) a place : er kommt von Paris, he comes from Paris ; der Wind wehet von Osten, the wind blows from the east (see her, page 183) ;—2, commencement of space and time : von London bis nach Paris, von Ostern bis Michaelis ;—3, extent of time, with an and auf following : von seiner Kindheit an, from

his infancy (onwards); von seiner Jugend auf, from his youth (upwards). Von Alters her, from ancient times, is an elliptical phrase; von Alters her ist das dein Name (Isa. lxiii. 16);—4, agency (Latin *a*, *ab*): das Buch ist von einem Bischof geschrieben worden, the book is written by a bishop;—5, an external cause: wir sind gestern vom Regen ganz naß geworden, we got quite wet yesterday by the rain; die Haut dieses Kindes ist von der Sonne ganz braun geworden, the skin of this child has got quite brown by the sun;—6, a transition from a certain state or condition: mein Freund ist leider noch nicht von seiner Krankheit genesen, my friend, I am sorry to say, has not yet recovered from his illness; Noah erwachte von seinem Weine (Gen. ix. 24);—7, it is used with the verbs denken, halten, träumen, wissen, sagen, sprechen, hören, &c. &c.: was denken Sie von dem Manne? what do you think of the man? ich weiß nichts von dieser Sache, I know nothing of this affair; ich habe nichts davon gehört, und werde deswegen nicht davon sprechen, I have heard nothing of it, and therefore shall not speak of it (ich werde über die Sache sprechen, means I shall speak on the affair);—8, it is employed to express the genitive case, when that case cannot be denoted either by the inflection of the substantive, or by an article, pronoun or adjective: die Einwohner von Petersburg; eine Versammlung von vierzig Männern; likewise after definite and indefinite numerals, and after the pronouns, derjenige, wer, welcher, to express the partitive genitive: keiner von uns, wer von euch, derjenige von ihnen.

Zu expresses:—1, motion to a person, *to*: ich will zu meinem Nachbar gehen; mein Schneider wird morgen zu mir kommen;—2, motion *towards* a place: nun gehen sie der See zu, um ihren Anschlag auszuführen, now they are going towards the sea to execute their scheme.—(*Goethe's Iphigenia.*) In this signification it always stands after the substantive;—3, rest in a place, *at*: before names of towns and villages, and before Haus, home: zu Paris, at Paris; zu Hause, at home;—4, the manner

of going or travelling: *wir reisen bald zu Wasser, bald zu Lande, bald zu Pferde, bald zu Füße*, we travel sometimes by water, sometimes by land, sometimes on horseback, sometimes on foot;—5, locality in reference to a person, *at*: *er wird die Schafe zu seiner Rechten stellen und die Böcke zu seiner Linken* (Matt. xxv. 33); *sie legten das Geld zu der Apfel Füßen* (Acts iv. 35);—6, locality in reference to a place; generally with verbs compounded with *auf*, *hinauf*, *hinaus*, or *heraus*: *zum Himmel schauen wir hinauf*, we look up to heaven; *er ist zur Thür hinausgegangen*, he is gone out at the door;—7, time, but only before the general expressions which denote an indefinite time: *zur rechten Zeit*, at the proper time; *zu verschiedenen Malen*, at sundry times; *zur bestimmten Stunde*, at the appointed hour. The definite time is expressed by *um*: *um zwei Uhr*, at two o'clock; *um diese Zeit will ich wieder zu dir kommen* (Gen. xviii. 14); *der Hausbater ging aus um die dritte Stunde* (Matt. xx. 3);—8, proportion: *das Pfund zu sechzehn Unzen gerechnet*;—9, a transition into a certain state or condition: *die Franzosen haben Ludwig Philipp zum Könige erwählt*, the French have elected Louis Phillippe for their king; *er hat mich zum Narren gemacht*, he has made a fool of me; *er hat mich zum Besten gehabt*, (a phrase) he has made game of me; *mein Sohn ist zum Kaufmann bestimmt*, and *soll zum Kaufmann auszogen werden*, my son is intended to be a merchant, and shall be brought up for a merchant;—10, design or object, *for*: *der Soldat trägt die Waffen zur Verteidigung seines Landes*, the soldier carries arms for the defence of his country; *viele Menschen reisen zu ihrem Vergnügen, einige zu ihrer Belehrung*, many people travel for pleasure, some for their instruction; *er thut es mir zu Liebe, zu Gefallen*, he does it to show his love to me, to please me; *das Korn ist zur Erndte reif*, the corn is ripe for the harvest;—11, effect: *dieses Gemälde ist zum Entzücken schön*, this painting is beautiful to enrapture one; *es ist zum Erstaunen wunderbar*;—12, motion to a place, in

such phrases as express not only motion, but also a purpose, and after von: ich gehe um elf Uhr zu Bett, I go to bed at eleven o'clock (for the purpose of sleeping); wir gehen nach dem Bette, means we go to the bed; wir gehen zu Tische, we go to dinner; wir gehen nach dem Tische, means we go to the table; wir gehen nach Tische, we go after dinner; der Knabe geht zur Schule, the boy frequents the school; der Knabe geht nach der Schule, the boy is going to the school; der Feldherr ritt von Flügel zu Flügel, the general rode from wing to wing;—13, union: dieser Garten gehört zu meinem Hause, this garden belongs to my house (possession is denoted by the dative: dieser Garten gehört mir, not zu mir); er hat Wasser zum Wein gegossen, he has poured water to the wine;—14, it is used before those numerals which are considered as substantives: as, Hundert, Tausend; sie kamen zu Tausenden, they came by thousands; and in the phrase—etwas zur Hand haben, to be able to lay one's hand on a thing; and zur Hand seyn, to be ready; Frisch, Gefallen, seyd zur Hand.—(Schiller).

Note.—Zu is employed as an adverb, and signifies:—1, the shutting or closing of a thing: mache die Thüre zu, shut the door;—2, motion forward: gehe zu, go on;—3, too: zu viel, too much; das ist zu schlecht, that is too bad.

Zufolge, *in consequence of, according to*, governs the dative when it stands after the substantive.

Zuwider, *against, in opposition to*, always stands after the case: den Gesegen zuwider.

Note—Several of these prepositions occur in the following lines:—

Nach dir schmacht' ich, zu dir eil' ich, du geliebte Quelle du!

Aus dir schöpf' ich, bei dir ruh' ich, seh' dem Spiel der Wellen zu.

Mit dir scherz' ich, von dir lern' ich, heiter durch das Leben wallen,
Angelacht von Frühlingsblumen, und begrüßt von Nachtigallen.

CHAPTER III.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Bis denotes:—1, extent of time, *till*: *ich blieb gestern Abend bis zehn Uhr bei meinem Freunde*, I stayed last night till ten o'clock with my friend;—2, extent of space: *die Entfernung von Hamburg bis Altona ist sehr klein*, the distance from Hamburg to Altona is very short. Movement from place to place is expressed by *nach*: *ich ging von Hamburg nach Altona*, I went from Hamburg to Altona. **Bis** is frequently used with the prepositions *an*, *auf*, *über nach*, *in*, *zu*; but when it is followed by other prepositions the case of the substantive following is governed by them: *bis an die Stadt*, as far as the town; *bis auf den letzten Heller*, up to the last farthing; *bis über die Ohren*, over the ears; *bis nach London*, as far as London; *bis in das Haus*, into the house; *von der Geburt bis zum Grabe*, from the birth to the grave;—3, it is used adverbially to denote an uncertain number, which is either between two given numbers, or one of two: *ich werde zehn bis zwanzig Pfund Untosten haben*, I shall be at the expense of from ten to twenty pounds; *er ist das ganze Jahr nur zwei bis drei Mal in meinem Hause gewesen*, he has been only twice or three times in my house during the whole year.

Note.—**Bis auf** also signifies *except*: *er hat alle seine Pferde verkauft, bis auf zwei*, he has sold all his horses except two.

Durch expresses:—1, motion *through*: *der König ist durch die Stadt gekommen*;—2, the means by which a thing is effected: *durch den Glauben merken wir, daß die Welt durch Gottes Wort fertig ist*, through faith we understand that the world was framed by the word of God (Heb. xi. 3); *niemand lasse sich durch die Schmeicheleien der Menschen täuschen*, let no

one suffer himself to be deceived by the flatteries of men ; viele Menschen bereichern sich durch den Handel, many men enrich themselves by trade;—3, duration of time, when placed after substantives: die ganze Nacht durch, all the night through. In this signification hindurch is also used: das ganze Jahr hindurch.

Note.—Durch und durch signifies *throughout, wholly*: er aber, der Gott des Friedens, heilige euch durch und durch, and the very God of peace sanctify you wholly (1 Thess. v. 23; John xix. 23).

Für denotes:—1, substitution for: mein Freund K. wird nächsten Sonntag für mich predigen, my friend K. will preach for me next Sunday; ich wünsche Kupfer für Silber einzutauseln, I wish to exchange copper for silver;—2, favor, advantage: meine Freunde haben alle für mich gestimmt, all my friends have voted for me; der Soldat kämpft für sein Vaterland, the soldier fights for his native land;—3, restriction: für heute, for to-day; für heute habe ich meine Arbeit gethan, for to-day I have done my work (differs from auf heute); für diesmal, for this time; ich für meine Person, as for me, as far as regards me. It seems that the preposition auf had formerly this signification; for Luther has translated gehe hin auf diesmal, wenn ich gelegne Zeit habe, will ich dich her lassen rufen, go thy way for this time, when I have a convenient season I will call for thee (Acts xxiv. 25)—(see auf);—4, it occurs in the following phrases: Mann für Mann, man by man; Wort für Wort, word for word; Schritt für Schritt, step by step; and in conjunction with the following verbs, and others of a similar signification: halten, to consider, to take for; erklären, to declare; gelten, to be reckoned, to be taken for; sich ausgeben, to profess one's self: ich halte und erkläre X. für einen guten Mann, obgleich er bei vielen nicht dafür gilt, und sich selbst nicht dafür ausgibt.

Note.—Für und für is employed as an adverb, signifying

constantly, always. It frequently occurs in the Bible; see Psalm lxi. 7; xc. 1. Luke i. 50.

Gegen denotes:—1, direction *to, towards*: jetzt wenden wir uns gegen Süden, now we turn to the south. In this signification it was formerly used with the dative: gegen dem Mittag, gegen dem Morgen (Gen. xiii. 14); and when it preceded a substantive without an article or pronoun, it was frequently abbreviated gen: gen Himmel, gen Jerusalem;—2, sentiments of love as well as hatred, *towards* and *against*, and differs in this respect from wider, against: mein Nachbar ist freundlich gegen mich gesinnt, my neighbour is kindly disposed towards me; gegen Schwäche sollte man immer nachsichtig seyn, one ought always to be indulgent to the weak; sei niemals grausam gegen deinen Feind, never be cruel to thine enemy;—3, a comparison: mein Haus ist zwar groß, aber gegen das deinige, ist es klein, my house is indeed large, but compared to thine, it is small;—4, exchange: ein angesehner Kaufmann kann gegen seine Wechsel immer Geld erhalten, a respectable merchant can always obtain money for his bills;—5, it signifies *about, towards*, when it refers to time or number: ich werde gegen Abend zu dir kommen, I shall come to thee towards evening; es waren gegen tausend Menschen in dem Zimmer, there were about a thousand persons in the room.

Ohne, *without, not with*: ohne mich könnt ihr nichts thun, (John xv. 5). Sie hassen mich ohne Ursache, they hate me without cause. Sonder, *without*, is not much used, and never before an article: sonder Gleichen, without equals.

Um signifies:—1, *around, about*, implying either motion or rest: wir gingen um den Kirchhof, we went round the church-yard; wir sitzen um den Tisch, we sit round the table; wirf deinen Mantel um dich, throw thy cloak round thee; ich gehe über liege, so bist du, Gott, um mich, und siehst alle meine Wege (Ps. cxxxix. 3);—2, it denotes a *particular or definite time*: um zwei Uhr, at two o'clock; um Johannis, at Midsummer

(John the Baptist's day);—3, exchange: *Auge um Auge, Zahn um Zahn*, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth (*Matth. v. 38*); *einen Tag um den andern besuchte ich meine Mutter*, every other day I visit my mother; *beide Brüder kamen oft zu mir*, either um den andern, both brothers often came to me by turns;—4, it marks an object asked, applied for, or sought after: *er bat mich um Almosen oder Brod*, he begged alms or bread of me; *wer sich um eine gute Stelle bemüht*, bewirbt sich gewöhnlich erst um die Gunst dessen, welcher sie zu vergeben hat, he who sues for a good situation, generally courts first the favor of him who has to give it away; *ich spiele niemals um Geld*, I never play for money; it is poetically used for *für*: *um dich will ich gern erblassen*, for thee I will willingly die;—5, it expresses loss: *manche Menschen kommen auf eine elende Art um ihr Geld*, many people lose their money in a miserable manner: *es ist um ihn geschehen*, it is all over with him; *werb' ich beruhigt je mich auf ein Faulbett legen*: so sey es gleich um mich gethan, if ever I should lay myself down upon a bed of idleness with an easy mind, then let there be immediately an end of me (*Goethe's Faust*); *der Mann hat mich um mein Geld betrogen*, the man has cheated me out of my money (see *umkommen*, compound verbs);—6, comparison: *dieser Mann ist jetzt um tausend Pfund reicher als im vorigen Jahre*, aber auch um Ein Jahr älter, und seinem Grabe näher, this man is now by a thousand pounds richer than last year, but also one year older, and nearer his grave;—7, a reference *with respect to*: *wie steht es um die Gesundheit ihres Vaters?* how is it respecting the health of your father? *er hat's verdient ums Volk von Unterwalden*—(*Schiller's Tell*).

Note.—*Um* is used before the infinitive with *zu* (the supine), to express *purpose, design*: *ich komme, um Ihre schönen Blumen zu sehen*, I come for the purpose of seeing your beautiful flowers.

As an adverb, it denotes *circuit*: *dieser Weg ist um*, this

road is round about (ein Ummeg, a round-about way); das Fest der Wochen sollst du halten, wenn das Jahr um ist, thou shalt observe the feast of weeks at the year's end.—(Exod. xxxiv. 22.) Um und um, means on all sides.

Wider denotes, *against*, *in opposition to*: wer nicht wider uns ist, der ist für uns (Luke ix. 50); wir können nicht wider den Strom schwimmen; wider meinen Willen gehe ich heute aus; wer wider sein Gewissen handelt, thut unrecht.

Note.—In the following lines, several of these prepositions occur:—

Philemon an seinen Freund.

Durch Dich ist die Welt mir schön, ohne Dich würd' ich sie hassen;
Für Dich leb' ich ganz allein, um Dich will ich gern erblassen;
Gegen Dich soll kein Verleumder ungestraft sich je vergehn;
Wider Dich kein Feind sich waffen; ich will Dir zur Seite stehn.

CHAPTER IV.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE DATIVE AND
ACCUSATIVE CASES.

Preliminary Remark.

The prepositions contained in this chapter govern the dative case, when a state of permanent locality is implied; but the accusative case when a motion from one place or object to another is denoted. This motion can be physical or mental; for our thoughts proceed from us, and pass over to an object: ich denke an ihn, I think of him; wir glauben an den Sohn Gottes, we believe in the Son of God. Permanent locality does not exclude motion within a place; it only excludes motion from one place or object to another: e. g.

ich gehe im Zimmer, means, I walk in the room ; but, *ich gehe ins Zimmer,* I walk into the room ; *ich springe auf dem Stuhle,* I am on the chair jumping ; *ich springe auf den Stuhl,* I jump on the chair.

An, with the dative, denotes :—1, permanent locality *on, near, at :* *das Haus meines Bruders steht an dem Ufer eines Flusses,* the house of my brother stands on the bank of a river ; *ich stand an der Thüre und wartete,* I stood at the door waiting ; *der Tisch steht an der Wand,* the table stands against the wall ; *unser Schicksal hängt an zarten Fäden,* our fate hangs upon tender threads ;—2, *time,* when no space of time is mentioned : *am Morgen blüht und glänzt die Blume,* and falls oft schon am Abend ab, in the morning the flower blooms and shines, and often fades already in the evening ; *am Montag,* on Monday ; *am ersten Mai,* on the first of May ; *am Anfang,* at the beginning ; *in the night,* however, is never expressed by *an der Nacht,* but in *der Nacht.* In these examples no space of time is expressed : as, *in dieser Stunde,* in this hour ;—3, the object of an action *on, at :* *Gott sucht der Vater Missethat an den Kindern heim,* die ihn hassen, und thut Barmherzigkeit an vielen Tausenden, die ihn lieb haben, God visits the iniquity of the fathers upon the children that hate him, and showeth mercy unto thousands that love him ; *ich arbeite jetzt an einer Grammatik,* I am at present engaged in writing a grammar ;—4, a cause : *viele junge Leute sterben an der Auszehrung,* many young people die of consumption ; *ich leide an einer starken Erkältung,* I suffer from a severe cold ;—5, a state, condition, manner : *es ist wünschenswert, reich an aufrichtigen Freunden und arm an Schmeichlern zu seyn,* it is desirable to be rich in sincere friends, but to be poor in flatterers ; *wer groß an Ruhm zu werben wünscht,* muß sich auf irgend eine Weise auszeichnen, he who wishes to become great in fame, must distinguish himself in some way ; *viele Menschen sind schwach an Körper,* aber stark an Geist, many people are weak in body

but strong in mind ; man kennt den Vogel an den Federn, one knows the bird by its plumage ;—6, it is used with the following verbs : hinbern, to prevent ; sich ergötzen, to delight in ; Vergnügen, Lust haben, to take pleasure in ; zweifeln, to doubt ; es fehlt, es mangelt, es gebricht, there is want of ; Schutz haben, to have protection in ; er hindert mich an meinem Glück ; wir ergötzen uns an diesem Gemälde ; ich habe Lust am Geseze des Herrn ; ich zweifle an der Wahrheit seiner Worte ; es fehlt an Geld ; es gebricht an Wein, there is want of money, of wine. It is also used in the expression : er ist noch am Leben, he is still alive ; and to form the superlative degree (see that chapter). Es ist nicht an dem, means, it is not true.

An, with the accusative expresses—*motion* from one place or object to another, either bodily or mental ; ich stelle den Tisch an die Wand, I put the table against the wall ; ich schreibe an das Fenster, I write on the window, i. e. I put words on the window ; er hat zwei Briefe an mich geschrieben und ein Buch an mich abgesandt, he has written two letters to me, and sent off a book for me ; wir glauben all' an Einen Gott, we all believe in one God ; ich denke oft an die Freuden dieses Tages, I often think of the joys of this day ; ich erinnere dich an dein Versprechen, I remind you of your promise ; laßt uns an die Arbeit gehen ; es klopft jemand an die Thüre ; ich habe meinen Fuß an einen Stein gestoßen. An die is used before numerals when the exact number is not to be expressed.

Da stey' ich nun, ich armer Thor, und bin so klug als wie zuvor ;
Heiße Magister, heiße Docter gar, und ziehe schon an die zehn Jahr,
herauf, herab und quer und krumm, meine Schüler an der Nase
herum.

Goethe's Faust.

Auf, with the dative, denotes :—1, permanent locality in reference to a higher place, or the upper side of things : das Buch liegt auf dem Tische (not an dem Tische), the book lies upon the table ; das Haus steht auf dem Berge, the house stands

upon the mountain ; der Herzog wohnt auf seinem Schlosse, the duke lives in his castle ; wir waren fünf Tage auf dem Schiffe, und drei Tage auf der See, we were five days on board the ship, and three days at sea ; er war um sechs Uhr auf meinem Zimmer, he was at six o'clock in my room (if the room is on the ground floor, the preposition in is used ; in meinem Zimmer) ; während die Kinder auf dem Schlosse tanzten, spazierten wir auf dem Hügel, whilst the children danced in the castle, we took a walk on the hill (wir spazierten auf den Hügel, means, we walked up the hill ;—2, it signifies locality in general, in the following phrases ; wir wohnen im Sommer auf dem Lände, we live in summer in the country (not in town) ; ich habe zwölf Jahre in diesem Lände (England) gewohnt, I have lived twelve years in this country ; viele Menschen sind lieber auf der Jagd, als auf dem Walde, many people prefer hunting to a walk ; es ist unangenehm, in nassen Wetter auf der Straße zu gehn, it is unpleasant to walk in the streets in wet weather ; Studenten bleiben gewöhnlich drei Jahre auf der Universität, or, auf Universitäten, students generally stay three years at the university ; sein Bruder ist noch auf der Schule, his brother is still at school, i. e. he has not yet done schooling ; er ist in der Schule, means, he is at present in the school ; wir waren auf der Reise nach London, we were on our journey to London ; wir sind auf Reisen, we are travelling ; ich war auf der Hochzeit meines Bruders und auf der Kindtaufe bei meiner Schwester, I was at the wedding of my brother, and at the christening at my sister's ; die Armee wurde auf der Flucht gänzlich vernichtet, the army was entirely destroyed on the retreat ; wenn nicht der Gott meines Vaters auf meiner Seite gewesen wäre, du hättest mich leer lassen ziehen.—(Gen. xxxi. 42.) The verbs bestehen, to insist upon, and beruhen, to rest upon, are construed with auf and the dative : er besteht auf seiner Forderung, he insists upon his demand ; diese Behauptung beruht auf einem Irrthume, this assertion is founded upon an error.

Auf, with the accusative has :—1, the same significations as auf with the dative, but it is only employed when a motion from one place to another is denoted : ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch, I put the book on the table ; wir reiten auf den Berg, we ride up to the mountain ; der Hund springt auf den Stuhl, the dog jumps on the chair ; wir ziehen aufs Land, we move into the country ; werden Sie auf den Ball gehen ? shall you go to the ball ? sey so gut, und bringe diesen Brief auf die Post, be so kind as to take this letter to the post-office : die Kaufleute gehen um vier Uhr auf die Börse, the merchants go to change at four o'clock ; Eltern sollten stets ein Auge auf ihre Kinder haben, parents always ought to have an eye on their children ;—2, it signifies *after* : auf Regen folget Sonnenschein, auf Kälte und Stürme kommtage, rain is followed by sunshine, cold and tempest, by summer days ;—3, it denotes either a point of future time to which allusion is made, or a space of time, the duration of which is stated : ich habe meine Kreise auf den ersten Mai festgesetzt, I have fixed my departure for the 1st of May ; mein Nachbar leiht mir täglich die Zeitung auf eine Stunde, my neighbour lends me every day a newspaper for an hour ; liebe Seele, du hast einen großen Vorrath auf viele Jahre, my soul, thou hast a large store for many years (Luke xii. 12) ; auf eine kurze Zeit, for a short time ; auf heute, for to-day (this differs from für eine kurze Zeit, für heute, see für 3) ;—4, proportion : so viel auf den Mann, so much upon the man ;—5, it signifies, *in consequence of, pursuant to* : as, auf Ihren Befehl, at your command ; auf dein Wort will ich das Neß auswerfen (Luke v. 5) ;—6, it signifies, *looking to, considering* : ich thue es auf die Gefahr, getadelt zu werden, I do it at the risk (considering the risk) of being blamed ; auf die Bedingung bin ich der eurige—(Schiller's *Turandot*.)—7, it is used with the following verbs and adjectives : warten, to wait for ; vertrauen, to confide in ; vertrösten, to give fair hopes ; verzichten, to renounce ; sich

verlassen, to rely upon ; stolz seyn, to be proud of ; eifersüchtig seyn, to be jealous of ; denken or sinnen, to meditate upon ; gefaßt seyn, to be prepared for ; verwenden Zeit, Arbeit, Geld, Mühe, to spend time, money, to take trouble ; rechnen, to calculate upon ; and in the following phrases : auf diese Art ; auf diese Weise, in this manner ; auf Deutsch, auf Englisch, in German, in English ; auf Angriff, upon the offensive ; auf den Hieb fechten, to fight a duel with the broad sword ; auf den Stoß, or Stich, with the small sword. Bis auf, see bis ; aufs beste, see the superlative of adverbs. Sie müssen auf mich warten. Wir vertrauen auf ihn. Er hat auf seinen Anspruch Verzicht geleistet. Ich verlasse mich auf Ihr Versprechen. Dieser Mann ist auf seinen Reichthum stolz. Der Herzog sinnt auf Verrat.—(*Wallenstein.*) Wir sind aufs schlimmste gefaßt. Der Knabe hat viele Zeit auf seine Ueberzeugung verwendet. Ich rechnete auf einen weisen Sohn.—(*Wallenstein.*)

Note.—As an adverb it answers to the English *up* : steh' auf, get up. It is employed before the conjunction daß, to denote purpose, design : auf daß, in order that. As an interjection it is used to animate, encourage: auf, folget mir ! come, follow me! (Latin *age*, *agite*.)

Hinter, *behind*, with the dative denotes permanent locality : er steht hinter mir, he stands behind me ; er spricht hinter meinem Rücken übel von mir, he speaks ill of me behind my back ; mein Freund hat einen schönen Garten hinter seinem Hause, my friend has a beautiful garden behind his house.

Hinter, with the accusative case, denotes motion : plötzlich trat er hinter mich, um mich zu erschrecken, suddenly he stepped behind me, to terrify me.

Note.—Hinter=her, behind-along, governs the dative only : ein Mann, welchen ich nicht kannte, ging eine halbe Stunde im Parke hinter mir her, a man, whom I did not know, walked for half an hour behind me in the park.

In, *in*, with the dative, denotes :—1, permanent locality,

within, or *in the inside of*: ich wohne in der Stadt, I live in town; dieser Mann ist niemals in meinem Hause gewesen, this man has never been in my house; wenn der Fisch im Wasser ist, so ist er in seinem Elemente, when the fish is in the water, it is in its element;—2, a space of a *definite* time: in dieser Woche hat es noch nicht geregnet, in this week it has not rained yet; Ostern wird in diesem Jahre im Monat April seyn, Easter will this year be in the month of April; in drei Tagen kann man weit reisen, in three days one can travel far;—3, manner: Gott ist ein Geist, und die ihn anbeten, müssen ihn im Geist und in der Wahrheit anbeten (John iv. 24); diejenigen, welche das Wort hören und behalten, bringen Frucht in Gebüld (Luke viii. 15);—4, a state or condition: ich befinde mich in einer unangenehmen Lage, I am in an unpleasant situation; im Born thut niemand, was vor Gott recht ist, in anger no one does what is right before God; ich war in Gedanken, als ich es that, I was lost in thought when I did it.

In, with the accusative, denotes:—1, motion *into*: wir fürchten uns in ein solches Haus zu gehen, in welchem eine ansteckende Krankheit ist, we are afraid of going into such a house, in which there is an infectious disease; der Knabe lief in den Garten, the boy ran into the garden;—2, change, transition, division: das Wasser soll in Blut verwandelt werden (Exod. vii. 17); der König sprach: teile das lebendige Kind in zwei Theile (1 Kings iii. 25); eure Traurigkeit soll in Freude verkehrt werden (John xvi. 20); bis in, see bis.

Neben, with the dative, denotes:—1, permanent locality, *at the side of*: er stand neben mir, als ich redete, he stood at my side when I spoke;—2, *beside*, Latin *præter*: du sollst keine andern Götter neben mir haben, thou shalt have no other gods before me, i. e. beside me (Exod. xx. 3); du sollst deines Weibes Schwester nicht nehmen neben ihr.

Neben, with the accusative, denotes motion: er stellte sich neben mich, um mich zu vertheidigen, he placed himself at

my side to defend me; Jesus stellte ein Kind neben sich, (Luke ix. 47).

Note.—*Neben-her* is construed like *hinter-her*, with the dative only: *der Bediente ging neben dem Wagen her*, the servant went along at the side of the carriage.

Über, with the dative, denotes:—1, permanent locality, *over*, *above*, (a) with respect to place: *der Vogel schwebt über dem Hause*, the bird soars over the house; (b) with respect to excellence: *über dem Könige des Landes steht kein Mensch*, there is no man over the king of the land;—2, *during*, with respect to time or occupation: *über dem Lesen schlief ich ein*, I fell asleep while reading; *über der Arbeit*, while at work; *über Tisch*, while at dinner;—3, *beyond*, with respect to place; *ich war auf dem Wege nach Brüssel, hörte aber in Frankfurt, daß über dem Rheine Unruhen ausgebrochen seyen*, und ich ging deswegen wieder nach Hause, I was on my way to Brussels, but I heard at Frankfort that disturbances had broken out beyond the Rhine, and therefore I returned home.

Über, with the accusative, denotes:—1, motion *over*: *ich gehe täglich zweimal über die Brücke*, I go every day twice over the bridge;—2, *above*, *beyond*, signifies excess: *eine solche Arbeit ist über meine Kräfte*, denn ich bin über siebzig Jahre alt, such a work is beyond my strength, for I am above seventy years old; *unsere Trübsal schaffet uns eine ewige und über alle Maßen wichtige Herrlichkeit* (2 Cor. iv. 17);—3, it signifies future time, or a time which is posterior to another event; and when it stands after the substantive, it denotes continuance or duration of time: *über ein Jahr werden wir uns wiedersehen*, in a year we shall see each other again; *über vierzehn Jahre zog ich abermals hinauf gen Jerusalem*, fourteen years after, I went up again to Jerusalem (Gal. ii. 1); *über eine kleine Weile sah ihn ein Anderer*, after a little while another saw him (Luke xxii. 58); *den Sommer über wohnen*

viele Leute an der Seeküste, during the summer many people live on the sea-coast; *den Tag über arbeite ich*, during the day I work;—4, *by way of*: viele reisen jetzt von Hamburg nach Paris über London, many now travel from Hamburg to Paris by way of London;—5, it is used with the following verbs: herrschen, schalten, walten, to reign, to rule over; sprechen, schreiben, to speak, write on a subject; sich ärgern, to be vexed at; sich grämen, to grieve at; spotten, to mock at; zürnen, to be angry at; lachen, to laugh at; sich freuen, to rejoice at; trauen, to mourn over; sich wundern, to wonder at; sich erbarmen, to take pity upon; klagen, to complain of; frohlocken, to rejoice at; weinen, to weep over. *Bis über*; see *bis*.

Note.—Instead of *über* with the accusative, or with the dative is sometimes used in poetry. *Überaus* is an adverb signifying *exceedingly*.

Unter, with the dative, denotes:—1, permanent locality, *under, beneath*: ich stand eine Stunde unter einem Baume, um nicht naß zu werden, I stood an hour under a tree, not to get wet; unter unserer Deutschen Kirche in London ist ein schönes Gewölbe, beneath our German church in London there is a beautiful vault;—2, *among*: unter den Deutschen Kaufleuten in London gibt es viele wohlthätige Menschen, aber unter den Bettlern viele Läugenichtse und Betrüger, among the German merchants in London, there are many beneficent men, but among the beggars, many that are good for nothing and imposters; dieser Knabe hat unter den Kindern der Schule einen guten Namen, this boy bears a good name among the children of the school;—3, *under, during*: einige Leute schlafen im Sommer unter der Predigt leicht ein, wenn der Prediger nicht versteht, ihre Aufmerksamkeit zu fesseln, many persons easily fall asleep in summer, during the sermon, if the preacher does not understand how to engage their attention; unter der Regierung Napoleons, during the

reign of Napoleon :—4, *under, below, in the power of*: auch ich bin ein Mensch, der Obrigkeit unterthan, und habe Kriegesknechte unter mir (Luke vii. 8); ihr seyd nicht unter dem Gesege, sondern unter der Gnade (Rom. vi. 15).

Unter, with the accusative, denotes :—1, motion, *under, beneath*: ich trat unter einen Baum, als es anfing zu regnen; I stepped under a tree when it began to rain ;—2, *among*: ich sende euch wie Schafe mitten unter die Wölfe (Matt. x. 16);—3, *under, below, in the power of*: er hat alle Dinge unter seine Füße gethan, he hath put all things under his feet (Eph. i. 22).

Note.—In ancient German, unter governed the genitive case; and with that case it is still used in two expressions: unterwegs, on the way; unterbeissen, in the meantime.

Vor, with the dative, denotes :—1, *before*, (a) in respect of place: ich stand vor dem Hause, als mein Freund ankam, I was standing before the house when my friend arrived; er schlug den Knaben vor meinen Augen, he struck the boy before my eyes; (b) of time: vor dem Frühstück einen Spaziergang zu machen, ist der Gesundheit zuträglich, to take a walk before breakfast is very beneficial to health; vor drei Tagen hatten wir unerwartet eine große Freude, three days ago, we had unexpectedly a great pleasure ;—2, it denotes a cause: wenige Menschen kommen vor Hunger um, aber vor Kummer vergehen viele, few men die from hunger, but many perish with sorrow; wer vor Freude über das Glück eines anderen weinen kann, der hat ein gefühlvolles Herz, he who can weep for joy at the happiness of another, has a feeling heart; wie oft bin ich schon des Abends vor Ermüdung eingeschlafen! how often have I fallen asleep with fatigue in the evening! die Elemente werben vor Hitze verschmelzen, the elements shall melt with heat (2 Pet. iii. 10); vor Lärm konnte ich kein Wort hören, und vor Nebel den Redner nicht sehen, for the noise I could not hear a word, nor for the fog see the orator ;—3, it is used with the following verbs: beschützen,

to defend : Hermann hatte die Mädchen oft vor der Wildheit der Knaben beschützt, Hermann had often defended the girls from the rudeness of the boys (*Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea*) ; sich hüthen, to beware of ; hüthe dich vor seinem Angesichte (Exod. xxiii. 21) ; erschrecken, to be frightened at : erschrick nicht vor dem Tode, be not frightened at death ; fliehen, to flee from : Jonas machte sich auf, und floh vor dem Herrn (Jon. i. 3) ; verbergen, verstecken, to conceal : Adam versteckte sich mit seinem Weibe vor dem Angesichte Gottes ; es ekelte mir, it disgusts me ; mir ekelte vor der Speise (Job xxxiii. 20). Vor diesem means, in former times.

Vor, with the accusative, denotes motion *before* : ich trat vor den Mann, I stepped before the man ; er ist vors Gericht gefordert worden, he has been summoned before the court of justice.

Zwischen, (from *zwei*, two, twain), with the dative, denotes permanent locality, *between* : ich saß zwischen zwei Freunden, I sat between two friends : zwischen diesen beiden Bäumen ist ein Raum von fünf Fuß, between these two trees there is a space of five feet ; es ist ein Gott und ein Mittler zwischen Gott und den Menschen (1 Tim. ii. 5) ; lasst nicht Bank seyn zwischen mir und dir (Gen. xiii. 8).

Zwischen, with the accusative, denotes motion, *between* : sage ihm, daß er sich zwischen mich und dich setze, tell him to seat himself between me and thee.

Note.—Several of these prepositions occur in the following lines :—

An den Mond.

Auf dich blicket, auf dir weilet oft mein Zug' in süßer Lust ;
 An dir haft' ich, an dich send' ich manch Gefühl aus froher Brust.
 In dich seget, in dir findet meine Phantasie viel Scenen,
 Unter die sie gern sich träumet, unter denen dort die schönen

Seelen, über diese Erb' erhöhet, über Gräbern wandeln.
 Vor mich tritt dann, vor mir steht dann der Entschluß, recht
 gut zu handeln. [Strahl.
 Zwischen diesen Sträuchchen sitz' ich, zwischen sie stiehlt sich dein
 Neben mich sinkt, neben mir ruht sie, die Freunbinn meiner Wahl;
 Hinter mich still hingeschlichen, stand sie lachend hinter mir,
 Und wir reden von den Sternen, unsfern Lieben und von dir.

Observations.

1. Some prepositions are used as adverbs: *durch* und *durch*, *throughout*, *wholly*; *für* und *für*, *for ever and ever*; *nach* und *nach*, *gradually*; *um* und *um*, *on all sides*; *über* und *über*, *over and over*; and the following compounds: *durchaus*, *throughout*; *voraus*, *beforehand*; *überaus*, *exceedingly*; *vorüber*, *over*; *mitunter*, *now and then*; *inzwischen*, *in the mean time*. The illiterate Germans in London and America rarely use the preposition *ohne*; they translate the compound preposition *without*, *mitaus*: *mitaus Gelb*, without money. This word is entirely unknown in Germany.

2. It has been remarked, that instead of the demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns, the local adverbs, *hier*, *da*, *wo*, are joined with prepositions: *hiermit*, *hiervon*, *damit*, *daran*, *daneben*, *daraus*, *darüber*, *wobei*, *woran*, &c. These adverbs were formerly often separated from the prepositions: *da will ich nichts von sagen*, instead of *davon will ich nichts sagen*. The following contractions occur in poetry: *drauf*, *draus*, *drin*, *drunter*, *drum*.

3. Prepositions are also used before adverbs: *von hier*, from here; *von da*, from there; *von oben*, from above; *von unten*, from below; *seit gestern*, since yesterday; *auf heute*, for today; *für morgen*, for to-morrow; *bis hierher*, till now; *bis dahin*, till then; *seit wann?* since when? (*von wannen* and *vom dannen*, from whence, from thence, are obsolete).

4. Some prepositions coalesce with the definite article (a) an, in, von, zu, in the dative singular of the masculine and neuter genders, dem, in the following manner: am, im, vom, zum. Some authors contract also über, unter, vor, with that article, into überm, unterm, vorm; (b) zu, in the dative singular of the feminine der into zur. In ancient writings, gun occurs for zu den; (c) an, auf, durch, für, über, unter, vor, in the accusative of the neuter, into ans, aufs, durchs, fürs, übers, unters, vors. The contraction cannot take place with the demonstrative pronoun dem, das, because it has a peculiar accent. In some phrases a preposition seems to coalesce with the dative of the indefinite article: e. g. man hat ihn zum Narren gemacht, they have made a fool of him. In the following phrases the contraction always takes place: am or im Anfang, at the beginning; am Leben, alive; am schönsten (see the superlative degree); zur Not, if necessary; etwas zum Besten geben, to give a thing to the common good; jemand zum Besten haben, to make game of a person.

An Alphabetical List of all the Prepositions, with the Cases they govern.

An, on, near (dat. & acc.)	Gegen, to, towards (acc.)
Anstatt or statt, instead of (gen.)	Gegenüber, over against (dat.)
Auf, upon, on (dat. & acc.)	Halben, on account of (gen.)
Aus, out of, from (dat.)	Hinter, behind (dat. & acc.)
Außer, out of (dat.)	In, in, into (dat. & acc.)
Außerhalb, without (gen.)	Innerhalb, within (gen.)
Bei, by, near (dat.)	Seitseits, on the other side of (gen.)
Binnen, within (dat.)	Kraft, by the power of (gen.)
Bis, till (acc.)	Längs, along (gen.)
Diesseits, on this side of (gen.)	Laut, according to (gen.)
Durch, through (acc.)	Mit, with (dat.)
Entgegen, opposite to (dat.)	Nach, after (dat.)
Für, for (acc.)	

Neben, at the side of (dat. & acc.)	Unter, under, among (dat. & acc.)
Nebst, together with (dat.)	Unterhalb, below (gen.)
Ob, over, at (dat.)	Unweit, not far from (gen.)
Oberhalb, above (gen.)	Vermittelt, by means of (gen.)
Ohne, without (acc.)	Vermöge, by dint of (gen.)
Gammt, together with (dat.)	Von, from (dat.)
Seit, since (dat.)	Vor, before, ago (dat. & acc.)
Sonder, without (acc.)	Während, during (gen.)
Ztroß, in spite of (gen.)	Wegen, on account of (gen.)
Über, over, at (dat. & acc.)	Wider, against (acc.)
Um, around (acc.)	Zu, to, at (dat.)
Um=wollen, for the sake of (gen.)	Zufolge, in consequence of (gen.)
Ungedachtet, notwithstanding	Zuwider, contrary to (dat.)
	Zwischen, between (dat. & acc.)

SECTION VII.

THE CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are parts of speech which connect words and sentences, and express the relations of one sentence to another. They may be divided into several classes: the copulative, disjunctive, conditional, comparative, consecutive, explanatory. This classification, however, is not of so much practical utility as an alphabetical list of all the conjunctions, with the necessary explanations of their application. Those marked * in the subjoined list are real conjunctions, which remove the copula to the end of the sentence; those marked § are conjunctional adverbs, which have their proper place after the copula, and therefore remove the subject after the copula when they are put before the subject.—(See the Arrangement of Words.)

The following five conjunctions always stand at the beginning of a sentence, without affecting the order of the words : allein, denn (in the signification of *for*), sondern, unb, ober.

Ober and *allein*, *but*.—*Ober* does not always place the sentences in opposition ; it expresses in the most indefinite way, what is not *necessarily* inferred from the antecedent : die Könige im Lande lehnen sich gegen den Herrn auf ; aber der im Himmel wohnet, lachet ihrer, the kings of the earth set themselves against the Lord, but he that sitteth in heaven laughs at them ; der Knabe ist fleißig, aber er lernt auch viel, the boy is industrious, but he also learns much. *Ober* is also used in the historical narrative, to denote the continuance of the history, like the Greek δι : es war Friede zwischen den Römlern und Karthagern, da aber belagerte Hannibal Sagunt, und verursachte den zweiten Punischen Krieg. *Allein* expresses the contrary of what might be inferred from the antecedent : der Knabe ist sehr fleißig, allein er lernt wenig ; die Menschen sollten von ihren Gaben einen guten Gebrauch machen, allein Tausende thun es nicht, men ought to make good use of their gifts, but thousands do it not. *Ober* may be used for *allein*, but not *vice versa*. *Ober* may stand at the beginning of the sentence, in which case it does not affect the order of words ; but it may also be put after the copula, and even after the object.

Note.—*Ober* is also an obsolete adverb signifying *again* (Greek πάλις, Joh. xvi. 16), it frequently occurs, like *je* and *nie*, with *mal*: abermal, abermals, again.

* *Als* denotes :—1, proportion, degree, *as* : es ist heute so warm, als es nach meinem Gefühle je gewesen ist, it is as warm to-day as, according to my feelings, it has ever been ; Wilhelm ist so fleißig als Heinrich, William is as industrious as Henry (see *wie*) ;—2, *than* : es ist heute heißer als gestern, it is hotter to-day than yesterday ; dieser Mann hat keine andere als weltliche Weisheit, this man has no other than worldly wisdom ;—3, it is frequently used before a subordinate sentence beginning

with *dass* after the adverb *zu*, *too*, but cannot be translated into English. In English, the infinitive, as a supine is used : *er ist zu stolz, als dass er seine Fehler bekenne*, he is too proud to confess his faults ; *sein Verbrechen ist zu gross, als dass es ihm vergeben werden könnte*, his crime is too great to be forgiven him ; *zu blind ist seine Vaterliebe, als dass er Zwang zu brauchen sich erkühnte*, his paternal love is too blind to allow him to use force.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*) When the subject is the same in both sentences, the infinitive with *zu*, or *um zu*, may also be used in German : *er ist zu stolz, seine Fehler zu bekennen*. But when the subject is not the same, some alteration must be made as in the above mentioned sentence of Schiller's Turandot.—4, *but*, after *nichts*, nothing ; *lein*, no, none : *nichts als Wahrheit kam aus seinem Munde*, nothing but truth came out of his mouth ;—5, *when*, referring to a definite event of past time : *als ich in London ankam, so fand ich meinen Freund nicht*, when I arrived in London, I did not find my friend (see *wenn*) ;—6, *as if* : *es kommt mir vor, als hätte ich nichts gethan*, it appears to me, as if I had done nothing ; this is elliptical for *als wenn ich nichts gethan hätte* ;—7, it is explanatory, *as* : *er, als Herr dieses Hauses*, he, as master of this house ; *an einigen Tagen bin ich sehr beschäftigt, als am Mittwoch und Sonnabend*, on some days I am very busy, as on Wednesday and Saturday.

Also, *consequently, then*, expresses a logical cause, like *folglich* : *er hat es selbst gethan, und kann also niemand怪eln*, he has done it himself, and can, consequently, blame no one. As an adverb it signifies *thus*.

Auch, also : *ich habe es auch gehört*, or *auch ich habe es gehört*, or *auch habe ich es gehört* (see the Arrangement of Words). *So—auch, however* : *so spät es auch ist, so muss ich doch ausgehen*, however late it is, yet I must go out.

* *Auf dass, in order that*, synonymous with *damit*, expresses design or purpose : *Christus hat sich selbst für uns gegeben, auf dass er uns erlöse von aller Ungerechtigkeit*.—(*Tit. ii. 14.*)

Außer denotes *except* (see the prepositions): ich sah niemand außer ihn, I saw nobody except him. It is often followed by daß: ich bin wieder ganz wohl, außer daß ich noch etwas schwach bin, I am quite well again, except that I am a little weak.

§ Außerdem, *besides*: ich habe ihm Geld gegeben, und außerdem habe ich ihm Kleider machen lassen.

* Bevor, *before*, refers to time only: bevor er die Stadt verließ, gab er die nöthigen Befehle.—(See ehe, before.)

* Bis, *until*: höre nicht auf zu lernen, bis du es weißt.

* Da, *since*, *as*, implies a logical cause from which an inference is drawn: da der Wind im Osten ist, so wird es wohl trocken bleiben, as the wind is in the east, it will perhaps remain dry. Da differs from als, which refers to time without denoting a cause, and from weil, which expresses a real cause. Da, however, is frequently, though incorrectly, used to express time.

§ Daher, *therefore*, expresses a physical cause: die Sonne scheint, daher ist es warm, the sun shines, therefore it is warm; der Mann hat Gift genommen, daher ist er gestorben, the man took poison, therefore he died.

* Dassern, *if, in case that*. (Not much in use).

* Damit, *in order that, that*, expresses design, purpose: wir arbeiten jetzt, damit wir diesen Abend ausgehen können, we work now, that we may be able to go out to-night.

§ Dann (or alsdann, denn), *then*, expresses time: erst arbeite, dann spiele, first work, then play. It sometimes begins the subsequent member of a sentence, when the antecedent begins with wenn: wenn das wahr ist, dann sage ich nichts, if that is true, then I say nothing.

§ Darum, deswegen, deshalb, (berohalben is antiquated) *on that account*: each of these expresses a motive or a moral cause: mein Freund will diesen Abend zu mir kommen, darum or deswegen, or deshalb bleibe ich zu Hause, my friend will come to me this evening, for that reason I stay at home; they differ as the prepositions um—willen, wegen, halben.

These may be called demonstrative conjunctions, and their corresponding relatives are: *warum*, *weshwegen*, *weshalb*, which are, like the relative pronouns, also used as interrogatives: *warum*, denotes a reason, motive; *weshwegen*, *weshalb*, a cause: *warum bist du nicht gekommen?* why art thou not come? i. e. what was the reason of thy not coming? *weshwegen ist jener Mann arm geworden?* why has that man become poor? i. e. what is the cause of his having become poor?

* *Dass, that*; this conjunction is much more frequently used in German than in English. Many subordinate sentences require this conjunction and the finite verb, which are in English expressed either by an accusative case and the infinitive mood, or by a participle used substantively: as, I know him to be the man, *ich weiß, dass er der Mann ist*; there is no doubt of his having acted a bad part, *es ist kein Zweifel daran, dass er eine schlechte Rolle gespielt hat*; I insist upon his paying me the money, *ich bestehe darauf, dass er mir das Geld bezahlt*.—(See Syntax, Chap. III.)

Note.—The conjunction *dass* may be omitted before sentences which contain a quotation with the verb in the subjunctive mood (see the subjunctive in the Syntax), and after verbs which express a wish: *ich sagte ihm, Sie seien nicht hier gewesen*, or *dass Sie nicht hier gewesen seyen*. After verbs which convey a *request*, or *command*, or *promise*, only when the subordinate sentence has an auxiliary verb of mood: *ich bat ihn, er möge es thun*; *er befahl, er solle es thun*; *er versprach, er wolle ihm beistehen*. When *dass* is omitted, the verb stands in its proper place.—(See the Arrangement of Words.)

Demnach, according to that, consequently: expresses a possible contingency, inferred from the antecedent: *er ist gestern abgereiset, und kann demnach heute ankommen*, he departed yesterday, and may, consequently, arrive to-day.

Denn :—1, *for, because*, expresses a reason. In this signification it always begins the sentence: *ich kenne den Mann*

nicht, denn ich habe ihn nie gesehen, I do not know the man, for I have never seen him;—2, it occurs in the phrase: es sey denn, daß, unless: ich werbe heute nicht ausgehen, es sey denn, daß die Notth mich zwänge, I shall not go out unless necessity compel me; denn, after the subjunctive mood, has sometimes the same signification: es sey denn eure Gerechtigkeit besser, denn der Schriftgelehrten und Pharisäer, so werbet ihr nicht in das Himmelreich kommen (Matt. v. 20. Luke ii. 26); du hast nicht Schuld, es wäre denn Verbrechen, sein Kind zu lieben, it is not your fault, unless it were a crime to love one's child. (*Schiller's Turandot.*)—3, than, after a comparative degree; but not so common as als; unless another als occurs in the same sentence: der Herzog von Wellington wirb von vielen als Feldherr höher geachtet, denn als Staatsmann;—4, then: denn werben die Gerechten leuchten wie die Sonne (Matt. xiii. 43.) The denn, means before (Ps. xc. 2.)

§ Dennoch, bessenungeachtet, and nichtsbestoweniger, notwithstanding, nevertheless, still; they state a consequence or effect which might not be inferred from the antecedent: ich habe es ihm zweimal befohlen, und dennoch or bessenungeachtet hat er es nicht gethan, I have twice commanded him to do it, and nevertheless he has not done it; er hat mich oft beleidigt, und dennoch bin ich sein Freund, he has often offended me, and nevertheless I am his friend (see doch and jedoch).

§ Desgleichen and ingleichen, likewise. (Desselbigengleichen is antiquated.)

§ Dessto, see je.

* Dieweil, because, is obsolete: dieweil ich solches zu euch gerebet habe, ist euer Herz voll Krautens geworben.—(John xvi. 6.)

Doch, yet, still, though, states:—1, a cause or motive which might not be inferred from the antecedent, or expresses a condition: dieser Mann ist sehr reich und hat doch wenig gearbeitet, this man is very rich, and yet has worked

— 1 —

104

from the school in which we are best instructed concerning the way to eternal life.

§ *Gleichwohl* and *indessen*, *yet*, *however*, *nevertheless*. They state, like *dennoch*, a consequence or effect which might not be inferred from the antecedent, but not so positively: *wir gingen vorige Nacht erst um zwölf Uhr zu Bett*, *wir waren gleichwohl* or *indessen* *diesen Morgen um sechs Uhr wieder auf*, we did not go to bed last night till twelve o'clock, yet we were up at six o'clock this morning.

§ *Hernach* and *nachher*, *afterwards*. *Hernach* merely denotes future time: *ich kann dir das Buch jetzt nicht geben, du sollst es hernach haben*. *Nachher* expresses future time in reference to another event: *anfangs wollte er mir den Umstand nicht mittheilen, aber nachher* that *er es doch*, at first he would not communicate the circumstance to me, afterwards however, he did it.

Hingegen and *bagegen*, *on the other hand*.

* *Je*, stands, like the definite article in English, before a comparative degree when two are brought together for the purpose of expressing an equal degree of quality or manner, and is followed by *desto*: *je fleißiger ein Knabe ist, desto gelehrt wird er*, the more industrious a boy is, the *more* learned he becomes; *je öfter ich es thue, desto leichter wird es mir*, the more frequently I do it, the easier it is to me. *Je* stands before the subordinate, *desto* before the principal sentence. The principal sentence with *desto* may precede that with *je* in the following manner: *ein Knabe wird desto gelehrt, je fleißiger er ist*, a boy becomes the more learned, the more industrious he is. Instead of *desto*, *je* is used when not an *equal*, but only a *mutual* degree is expressed: *komm, je eher je lieber*, come, the sooner the better; *mit den bösen Menschen aber und verführerischen wird es je länger, je ärger* (2 Tim. iii. 13). *Desto* also stands before a comparative degree, to denote proportion, without *je* and another comparative preceding: *ich erwartete*

nicht meinen Freund zu finden, desto größer aber war meine Freude, als ich ihn sah, I did not expect to find my friend, but my joy was the greater when I saw him. Um so, or um so viel, is also used instead of desto : du hast es nicht gethan, und das ist mir um so lieber, you have not done it, and that is so much the more agreeable to me ; wer arm ist, hat um so viel mehr Ursache zu arbeiten und sparsam zu seyn, he who is poor, has so much the more reason to work and to be saving ; ein Knabe wird um so viel gelehrter, je fleißiger er ist.

Note 1.—Those who find it difficult to see which is the principal and which the subordinate member in sentences like the following : *the richer a man is, the prouder he often is*, must transpose the two members, and they will perceive, that *the* with the comparative cannot stand at the beginning of the principal member, when placed first ; while *the* with the comparative always remains at the beginning of subordinate sentences : as, *a man is often the prouder, the richer he is* ; *a boy becomes the more learned, the more industrious he is* ; *the more industrious a boy is, the more learned he becomes*. This subject has puzzled many a clever scholar.

Note 2.—As an adverb it signifies :—1, *truly, certainly, indeed* (Greek *ἀριτ*). In this signification it is obsolete, but frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible (Matth. xix. 25. Luke xi. 20. Rom. vi. 4, vii. 12);—2, *ever* : niemand hat je Gott gesehen (John i. 18). This is an abbreviation for *jemals*.

§ *Jedoch, however, yet*, states, in an indefinite manner, what might not be inferred from the antecedent : ich habe ihn gebeten es zu thun, er hat es jedoch nicht gethan, I have requested him to do it, he has, however, not done it ; er wird es thun können, jedoch nicht ohne Mühe, he will be able to do it, yet not without trouble ; viele Menschen haben mit vieler Mühe die Wahrheit gesucht, jedoch nicht gefunden, weil sie den verschämtheiten, der die Wahrheit ist. It never stands with *aber*, *und*, *weil*, or a similar conjunction in the same sentence.

* *Je nachdem, according as,* expresses a degree, which changes according to another circumstance : du erhältst Lob, je nachdem du fleißig bist.

* *Indem* denotes :—1, *while*; and is used to state an event which is simultaneous with another ; it differs from während, which expresses the *duration* of an event, which is simultaneous with another : indem wir auf- und abgingen, trat ein fremder Mann zu uns, while we walked up and down, a strange man stepped up to us :—2, *as, since*, stating a cause in an *indefinite* manner : der Frankfurter Kaufmann war diesen Morgen in meinem Hause, aber er ging gleich wieder weg, indem er mich nicht zu Hause fand. In the latter signification the participle without a conjunction is frequently used in English : the Frankfort merchant was this morning at my house, but he went away immediately, not finding me at home.—(See *da, weil*.)

§ *Inbessern* or *indeß*, denotes :—1, *in the meantime*, and is used to express duration of time in an *indefinite* manner : inbessen haben sie ihre Augen auf, und sahen einen Haufen Ismaeliter kommen (Gen. xxxvii. 25). In this signification unterbessen is also used ;—2, *however* : er hat nicht viel gethan, ich erwartete inbessen nicht mehr von ihm, he has not done much ; however, I did not expect more from him.—(See *gleichwohl*.)

§ *Ingleichen, see desgleichen.*

§ *In so fern, in so weit, or so weit, so far* : they are followed by als, as : ich billige in so fern sein Vertragen, als es den Vorschriften des Christenthums nicht zuwider ist, I approve of his behaviour, so far as it is not contrary to the precepts of Christianity. Als is sometimes omitted, and in so fern begins the relative sentence : ich billige sein Vertragen in so fern es den Vorschriften des Christenthums nicht zuwider ist.

In wie fern, in wie weit, how far : they are used in direct and indirect questions : in wie fern ist dieses zu billigen ? ich kann nicht sagen, in wie fern dieses zu billigen ist.

§ *Raum, followed by so or als, may be rendered by scarce, followed by when ; or by no sooner, followed by than* : Raum

hat der Mensch einen Wunsch in Erfüllung gehen sehen, so hegt er schon einen neuen, man has no sooner obtained one wish, than he already entertains another; kaum hatte er mich gesehen, so rief er aus, or als er ausrief, he had no sooner seen me than he exclaimed.

§ *Mithin, consequently; synonymous with also.*

* *Nachdem, after,* refers to a preceding event, and states that two events have taken place consecutively; it differs from *seitdem, since,* and *als, when:* nachdem ich meine Arbeit vollendet hatte, machte ich einen Spaziergang, after I had finished my work, I took a walk; er ging weg, nachdem er seine Rede geendigt hatte, he went away after he had finished his speech.

*Rämlich, namely, (Lat. *videlicet, viz.*)*. In German it is frequently used as an explanatory conjunction, where none is employed in English.

§ *Nicht allein, nicht nur, nicht bloß, not only;* followed by *sondern auch, but also.* *Nicht allein* is used when a mere difference is expressed: er hat nicht allein seinen Bruder, sondern auch seine Schwester eingeladen. *Nicht nur* is used when the subsequent member expresses more than the antecedent: er hat ihm nicht nur gedroht, sondern ihn auch geschlagen. *Nicht bloß* is employed when the subsequent member confirms or strengthens the antecedent: er hat mir nicht bloß Geld versprochen, sondern auch gegeben.

§ *Noch,* as a conjunction, has a negative power, like the English *nor, after* *weber* and *nicht:* *weber heute noch morgen, neither to-day nor to-morrow;* wir müssen weder zu viel hoffen, noch zu viel fürchten, we must neither hope too much, nor fear too much; ich will dich nicht verlassen noch versäumen, I will not forsake thee, nor neglect thee; ich habe es ihm nicht versprochen, noch soll er es haben, I have not promised it to him, nor shall he have it. In poetry *noch* is used for *weber.* —(See *noch, adverb.*)

* *Nun, now,* (see the adverb) is sometimes used as a conjunction denoting a logical cause, like *ba,* or an indefinite cause, like *indem.* When used as a conjunction, it affects the order of words in the same way as the synonymous conjunctions: *und nun der Himmel deinen Schritt hierher gelenkt, so lasß das Mitleid siegen,* and as heaven has directed thy steps hither, let compassion prevail.—(*Schiller.*) *Nun ich sie dir empfehle, sterb' ich ruhig,* as I recommend her to thee, I die calmly.—(*Goethe's Egmont.*) In 'Iphigenia in Tauris,' Goethe has taken a poetical license in using *nun* as a conjunction, without putting the words in their proper order: *nun widersteh' ich der, so sucht sie sich den Weg durch List und Trug,* instead of *nun ich der widerstehe.*

§ *Rur,* as a conjunction, is sometimes used in the signification of *aber:* *ich wünschte es wohl zu haben, nur kann ich es nicht erhalten;* indeed, I wished to have it, but I cannot get it. It is sometimes followed by *dass:* *ich will es dir wohl sagen, nur daß du mich nicht missverstehst,* I will willingly tell it you, but do not misunderstand me.

* *Ob, if, whether,* is only used in indirect questions, or before sentences which express doubt or possibility: *ich weiß nicht, ob er meine Bitte gewähren wird,* I do not know whether he will grant my request.

* *Obgleich, obſchon, obwohl,* (in poetry also *ob auch*) *though, although,* express a definite concession. *Obgleich* in a definite manner; *obſchon* in an indefinite manner; *obwohl* expresses a state which is only *considered* as existing. They are frequently separated, especially when a monosyllable follows, such as *ich, du, er, wir, ihr, sie;* even two or three monosyllables may be inserted: *und ob ihr mir gleich Brandopfer opfert, so habe ich keinen Gefallen daran* (*Amos v. 22*); *und ob ich schon wanderte im finstern Thale, fürchte ich kein Unglück* (*Ps. xxiii. 4*); *das Volk wird verheert werden, wie eine Eiche und Linde, welche den Stamm haben, obwohl ihre Blätter abgestoßen werden.* When they begin the antecedent member of a sentence, the subsequent

member begins with *so*, which is frequently followed by *doch* or *dennnoch*: obgleich mein Nachbar sein Vermögen verloren hat, so hat er doch seine Gesundheit behalten, although my neighbour has lost his property, yet he has preserved his health. *Ob* is frequently omitted, and the sentence assumes the form of an interrogative one: hat mein Nachbar gleich sein Vermögen verloren, so hat er doch seine Gesundheit behalten. In poetry also, *gleich* is sometimes omitted: ob uns der See, ob uns die Berge scheiden, so sind wir eines Stammes doch, though the lake, though the mountains separate us, yet we are of one race; ist es gleich Nacht, so leuchtet unser Recht, although it is night, our right shines; sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand, sie sind in unsere Herzen eingeschrieben, though the old books are not at hand they are written in our hearts.—(*Schiller's Tell.*)

Ohne, *without*, (see the preposition), is, like *außer*, used as a conjunction in the signification of *if not, but, save:* wo ist ein Gott ohne den Herr? oder ein Hirt ohne unser Gott? (Ps. xviii. 32); niemand kann Jesum einen Herrn nennen, ohne durch den heiligen Geist, no one can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost (1 Cor. xii. 3).

* *Seitdem*, *since, from the time that*, denotes an event, as the beginning of a period into which another event falls: seitdem wir uns sahen, bin ich unwohl gewesen, since we saw each other, I have been unwell; ich habe nichts von ihm gehört, seitdem er das letzte Mal in meinem Hause war, I have heard nothing of him, since he was last in my house. The preposition *seit* is sometimes used as a conjunction; most frequently by Johannes von Müller, the Swiss historian.

Sintemal, *since, antiquated; indem* is now used.

So, signifies:—*1, so, as*, denoting a comparison, proportion: wie die Jugend, so das Alter, as youth, so old age; der Knabe ist so gut als das Mädchen, the boy is as good as the girl; Instead of the corresponding word *als*, *so* is also used in the following manner: so gelehrt er ist, so anmaßend ist er auch, i. e.

er ist so anmaßend als gelehrt; so gern ich es thäte, so unmöglich ist es mir, i. e. es ist mir so unmöglich als ich es gern thäte. The corresponding word is sometimes omitted: im Herbst fallen die Blätter von den Bäumen; so verwelket das leibliche Leben im Alter, the leaves fall from the trees in the autumn; so withers the human body in old age;—2, *thus, in this manner*, denoting a consequence: thue nichts böses, so wird dir auch nichts böses begegnen; so sind wir nun nicht der Magd Kinder, sondern der Freien (Gal. iv. 31;—see Gal. v. 1). In the last-mentioned signification so is employed before the principal sentence, when the subordinate sentence is placed before it and begins with conjunctions, such as wenn, als, da, weil, nachdem, wie, obgleich, obschon, obwohl: wenn mein Bruder kommt, so sage ihm, daß ich bald nach Hause kommen werde, when my brother comes, tell him that I shall soon come home; wenn du gelehrt zu werden wünschest, so mußt du fleißig seyn, if you wish to become learned, you must be industrious; weil ihr träge gewesen seyd, so habt ihr nichts gelernt. So is often omitted after a short subordinate sentence; also when a peculiar stress is laid on the subject of the principal, especially of a conditional sentence: wenn du hier geblieben wärst, es würde besser ausgefallen seyn, if you had stayed here, it would have turned out better.—

Hätte mein Vater gesorgt für mich, so wie ich für dich that,
Mich zur Schule gesendet und mir die Lehrer gehalten;
Ja, ich wäre was anders als Wirth zum goldenen Löwen.

Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.

3, *if*: so ihr bleiben werdet in meiner Lehre (John viii. 31); so der Herr will und wir leben (James iv. 15); so du Gerechtigkeit vom Himmel hoffest, so erzeig' sie uns, if you hope for justice from Heaven, show it to us (*Schiller's Tell*);—4, it is in Luther's translation of the Bible, frequently used for the relative pronoun *welcher*, *e*, *es*: auf daß die, so rechtschaffen sind, offenbar werden (1 Cor. ix. 19); die Erlösung, so durch Jesum

Christum geschehen ist (Rom. iii. 24);—5, *So*—*auch* is to be translated by *however*: so reich er auch ist, so kann er doch arm werden, however rich he is, yet he may become poor. *So* is sometimes put before *wie*: as, so wie, *as*. *So oder so*, signifies *one way or the other*: so oder so—*es* muß sich unterwerfen.—(*Schiller's Tell.*) *So bald als*, *as soon as*: so lange als, *as long as*; so weit als, *as far as*. *Als* is sometimes omitted: so bald als, or sobald ich es thun kann.

Sondern, but, is used:—1, before the subsequent member of a sentence which negatives either the whole contents, or an idea of the antecedent, and expresses what is different from it; the antecedent, however, must contain a negative: ich habe ihn nicht gelobt, sondern getäbelt; er hat nicht seine Kenntnisse, sondern seinen Fleiß bewundert; es ist weder schwarz noch braun, sondern grün, it is neither black nor brown, but green. *Aber* may also be used after an antecedent with a negative; but the subsequent member before which *aber* stands, does not negative the antecedent, it only adds something to it: ich habe es nicht gethan, aber ich werde es morgen thun, I have not done it, but I will do it to-morrow;—2, in conjunction with *auch*, after *nicht allein*, *nicht nur*, *nicht bloß*, *not only—but also*: Herr D. ist nicht nur reich, sondern auch wohlthätig, Mr. D. is not only rich, but also benevolent.

§ *Sonst, else, otherwise*: wir müssen Bücher haben, sonst können wir nichts lernen, we must have books, otherwise we can learn nothing. *Sonst nichts, nothing else*. *Sonst nirgends, nowhere else*.

Sowohl—als, or *als auch*, *as well as*: die Armen sind sowohl Gottes Kinder, als die Reichen; die Reichen haben ihre Leiden und Plagen sowohl als die Armen.

§ *Theils—theils, partly—partly*.

§ *Uebrigens, as for the rest, however*.

§ *Ueberdies, besides*.

Und, and.

* *Ungeachtet*, is used as a conjunction with the signification of *obgleich* *although*: *er that es, ungeachtet ich es ihm verboten hatte.*

§ *Vielmehr, much more, rather.*

* *Während, while, during the time that*, denotes the duration of an event which is simultaneous with another: *viele Menschen lesen die Zeitung während sie essen*, many people read the newspaper while they dine. *Weil*, instead of *während*, is antiquated.

Warum, weshwegen, weshalb, why, wherefore—(see *darum*).

Wann, when, denotes:—1, time: *wann haben Sie ihn gesehen?* *ich weiß nicht*, *wann er kommen wird*;—2, condition: *wann* (i. e. on what conditions) *können Kinder viel lernen?* *when can children learn much?* *können Sie mir sagen*, *wann wir eine Mondfinsternis haben?* *can you tell me when* (conditional) *we have an eclipse of the moon?*

Weder, followed by *noch, neither, nor*: *weder der Vater noch der Sohn*. *Weder*—*weder*, instead of *weder*—*noch* is used only in poetry: *sie rettet weder Hoffnung weder Furcht*.—(*Goethe's Iphigenia*.) Formerly *weder* had the signification of *als, than*, after a comparative degree, and frequently occurs in Luther's translation of the Bible: *der Tag des Todes ist besser, weder der Tag der Geburt*.—(*Eccles. vii. 2.*)

* *Weil, because*, expresses a moral or real cause in a definite manner: *ich will keinen Umgang mit diesem Manne haben, weil er stolz ist*. I will have no intercourse with this man, because he is proud; *wir können nicht fliegen, weil wir keine Flügel haben*, we cannot fly, because we have no wings.

* *Wenn* signifies:—1, *when*, and denotes time in the most indefinite manner; for this reason it is used (*a*) with the present or future tenses: *wenn die Sonne scheint, ist es warm*, when the sun shines, it is warm; *wenn ich ihn sehen werde, will ich es ihm sagen*; *wenn ich meine Arbeit werbe vollendet haben, will ich zu dir kommen*; (*b*) with the imperfect, denoting an indefinite time: *wenn er nach London kam, besuchte er mich*, when (i. e.

whenever) he came to London, he paid me a visit. This is expressed in Greek by ὅτε, ὅτως with the optative mood.—(See Homer Il. α, 610. γ, 216. 233. ι, 191.) The definite time is expressed by als, wie: als er nach London kam, greatly differs from wenn er nach London kam;—2, if, conditional: wenn du mir das Buch geben willst, so will ich dir dafür danken, if you will give me the book, I will thank you for it; wenn du fromm bist, so bist du angenehm (Gen. iv. 7). In this signification, it is frequently omitted, and the sentence assumes the form of an interrogative one: brücht euch ein Kummer, werft ihn frisch vom Herzen (*Schiller's Tell*).—3, it is used after als: als wenn, as if: es hat das Aussehen, als wenn es regnen wollte, it has the appearance, as if it was going to rain. Wenn is never used in indirect questions for ob: ich weiß nicht, ob es wahr ist, I do not know whether it is true.

* Wenn nicht, unless, if not: the negative must be put before that word which is negatived: ich kann es nicht thun, wenn Sie mir nicht helfen, I cannot do it, unless you help me.

* Wenngleich, wennschon, wenn auch, although, express a concession of an imagined state: lasset uns gutes Mutthes seyn, wenn wir gleich große Trübsale haben, let us be of good cheer though we should have great tribulations. They are separated like obgleich, obschon, ob auch.

* Wie, as, denotes:—1, similarity, whilst als expresses proportion, degree: seyd klug, wie die Schlangen, und ohne Falsch, wie die Zauber (Matth. x. 16); wie die Arbeit, so der Lohn, as the work, so the reward; Socrates blühete als Jüngling, wie eine Rose, lehrte als Mann, wie ein Engel, und starb als Greis, wie ein Verbrecher. Als is frequently found before wie, and is either quite superfluous, or expresses proportion of similarity: da steh' ich nun, ich armer Thor, und bin so klug als wie zuvor (*Goethe's Faust*); wenn ich es wage nah' zu gehen, kann ich sie nur als wie im Nebel sehen (*Ibid*);—2, when, as, denoting a definite time, like als, especially used with the present tense instead of the imperfect to en-

liven the narrative: *wie er mich sieht, kennt er mich,* when he saw me, he recognized me;—3, *how:* *wie hast du das gemacht? ich weiß nicht, wie ich es machen soll.*

* *Wie auch,* *however,* generally separated by an adjective, adverb, or pronoun; *wie es auch seyn mag.*

* *Wiewohl,* *although.*

* *Wo,* is an adverb of place, *where:* *wo ist er?* *ich weiß nicht, wo er ist.* As a conjunction it signifies *if*, and is sometimes used for *wenn:* *wo du mir das thust, so sollst du nicht wieder in mein Haus kommen,* if you do that, you shall not come again into my house. *Tyrannen sind sie gleich, wo (wenn) sie besiegen*—(*Schiller's Turandot*). It is rather antiquated, except in the expressions, *wo nicht, if not;* *wo möglich, if possible,* in which it is always used: *entschließe dich einmal dich zu vermählen, wo nicht, so sinn' ein andres Mittel aus, dem Reich die ew'gen Kriege zu ersparen,* resolve for once to marry, if not, contrive some other means, to save the empire from the eternal wars.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*)

* *Wosfern,* *in case that, if:* *wosfern er sich weigern sollte, so müssen wir ihn zwingen.*

§ *Wohl* (see the adverb), denotes, *indeed, perhaps,* (Latin *quidem*); *die Geschichte ist wohl wahr, aber sage nichts davon,* the story, indeed, is true, but say nothing of it.

§ *Zudem, besides:* *ich habe ihm Geld gegeben, zudem habe ich ihm versprochen, mich für ihn zu verwenden.*

§ *Zwar,* *indeed, it is true, allowing it,* generally followed by *aber, allein, doch, dennoch,* or a similar conjunction, in the subsequent member: *ich habe es ihm zwar gesagt, aber er hat es nicht verstanden; es wird zwar allem Anschein nach regnen, aber dennoch muß ich ausgehen.* *Indeed,* in this signification, must not be confounded with the adverb of exclamation: *in der That, wirklich.*

* *Obzwar* is sometimes met with for *obgleich, ob schon,* although.

Observations.

1. *Als, wenn, wann*, are conjunctions which express time : *als*, a point of past time, and can, therefore, be used with a past tense only ; *wenn*, indefinite time, and signifies *at the time that* ; *wann*, expresses also indefinite time, and signifies *at what time* : *als ich nach Thyrem Hause kam, so waren Sie schon ausgegangen*, when I came to your house, you were already gone out ; *wenn ich nach Thyrem Hause komme, so finde ich Sie immer beschäftigt*, when I come to your house, I find you always engaged ; *ich weiß noch nicht, wann ich nach Thyrem Hause kommen kann*, I do not know yet, when I can come to your house.

2. *Indem, since* ; *da, as* ; *weil, because* ; express a cause : *indem*, in such an indefinite manner, that, in English, the conjunction is generally omitted and the verb changed into the participle. *Da*, expresses a logical cause, i. e. a reason, and is used when an inference is drawn from a fact ; *weil*, expresses a real cause : *ich werde heute zu Hause bleiben, indem ich nicht wohl bin*, I shall stay at home to-day, not being well ; *ich muß heute zu Hause bleiben, da ich nicht wohl bin*, I must stay at home to-day, as I am not well ; *ich muß heute zu Hause bleiben, weil ich nicht wohl bin*, I must stay at home to-day, because I am not well. *Since*, in this signification must not be confounded with *since*, from the time that, *seitdem*.

3. The use of *doch, dennoch, jedoch*, must be well distinguished : *er beleidigt mich oft, und doch bin ich sein Freund*, he often offends me and yet I am his friend, i. e. although I am his friend ; *er beleidigt mich oft, und dennoch bin ich sein Freund*, he often offends me, and nevertheless I am his friend ; *er beleidigt mich oft ; er thut es jedoch nicht absichtlich*, he often offends me, he does it, however, not designedly.

SECTION VIII.

THE INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are sounds produced by the immediate impulse of the sensations of joy, mirth, and gaiety; of sorrow and displeasure; of pain and disgust; of surprise and admiration. The following usually occur in German:—1, to indicate joy, mirth, gaiety: ah! ha! hei! heisa! juchhei! Gottlob!—2, sorrow and displeasure: ach! ah! oh!—3, pain and disgust: ach! o weh! oh! leiber! si! psi!—4, surprise and admiration: hem! ah! ha! haha! poftausend! o! oh! ei! For calling out to a person, the following are used: he! holla! psi!—Psst! Nachbar, ein Wort, Psi! neighbour, one word. (*Goethe's Egmont.*)

Interjections do not govern a case; they may stand before any case according to the construction of the sentence. It is, however, a peculiarity of the German language to put an absolute genitive after o and ach! o, des unglücklichen Mannes!

The words *wohl*, *well*; *Heil*, *hail*; *wehe*, *woe*; are always followed by the dative, which is governed by the verb *seyn* understood: *wohl* (ist) dem, der nicht wandelt im Rath der Gottlosen (Psalm i.); *Heil* (sey) dir, junger Mann! Dein treues Auge, dein treues Herz hat richtig gewählt (*Goethe's Hermann & Dorothea*); *wehe* dem Menschen, durch welchen Menschen Sohn verrathen wird.—(Mark xiv. 21.)

PART II.—SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.
OF THE USE OF THE ARTICLES.

(A) THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

The use of the definite article in German differs, in some respects, from that in English.

1. The definite article is not employed:—

(a) Before names of materials, when no particular kind or quality is meant, nor the whole species implied: viele Menschen trinken lieber Wein als Bier; Silber und Gold habe ich nicht; was ich aber habe, das gebe ich dir.—(Acts vi. 3.)

Note.—The article is required when a *particular* kind or portion is meant, or the whole species implied: er hat das Wasser, das Bier, den Wein noch nicht gebracht, i. e. that which was ordered or expected; das Gold hat er gezählt, aber das Silber noch nicht, i. e. that which he possessed. Das Silber ist weiß; das Gold ist gelb; das Wasser ist farbenlos; das Quecksilber ist ein flüssiges Metall. In the last-mentioned sentences the whole species is meant. It is also used before the genitive or dative case, to point out the case distinctly: er zieht Bier der Milch vor, he prefers beer to milk.

(b) Before names of persons, countries, towns: Luther war ein großer Mann, ein außermäßiges Künstling Gottes; Frankreich ist ein schönes Land; London ist eine große Stadt.

Note 1.—The article, however, is employed (a) when we speak familiarly or contemptuously of a person: sage dem Wilhelm, daß ich ihn zu sehen wünsche; der Kurt hat durch sein Verbrechen ein neues Wort geschaffen; (b) when the

connection of a sentence does not distinctly denote the case of the proper name (see the Declension of Proper Names);—(c) when an adjective stands before the names of persons, countries, or towns: *der arme Ludwig ist gefallen*; *die schöne Marie ist gestorben*; *der heilige Swithin war Bischof von Winchester*; *das reiche England ist sehr mächtig*; *das große London*.

Note 2.—When proper names are used like common names, they require the indefinite article: *ein Göthe wird nicht in jedem Jahrhundert geboren*; but when proper names are employed to designate the works of authors, the definite or indefinite article is used: *ich habe mir den oder einen Shakespeare gekauft*.

Note 3.—The names of countries of the feminine gender, and such as are used only in the plural number, are always preceded by the definite article: *die Türkei, die Wallachei, die Schweiz, die Lausitz, die Pfalz, die Mark, die Wetterau, die Niederlande*.

(c) Before the names of the cardinal points of the compass: *Osten, Westen, Süden, Norden*; and the synonymous terms—*Morgen, Abend, Mittag, Mitternacht*.

(d) When the genitive precedes the substantives by which it is governed: *des Vaters Haus*, the father's house; *seiner Güter Erben*, the heirs of his estates; *das Haus, dessen Schönheit*, the house, the beauty of which.

(e) In the following phrases:—*er hat Weib und Kind, Haus und Hof verlassen*; *er hat mit Mund und Hand gelobt*; *ich werde ihm mit Rath und That beistehen*; *ich habe das Buch in Händen*; *wir müssen den Gegenstand immer vor Augen haben*; *sie sind mit Mann und Maus (altogether) ertrunken*.

Wär'n gute Leute auf dem Schiff gewesen,
In Grund gesunken wär's mit Mann und Maus.
Schiller's Tell.

(f) In the language of the law, a few appellatives occur without the article: *Beklagter*, defendant; *Rüger*, plaintiff;

Inhaber, holder, proprietor; *Appellant*, one that appeals; *Supplicant*, petitioner. Likewise, *Ueberbringer* dieses, the bearer of this.

(g) It is not required before the following words: *ersterer*, *lechterer*, the former, the latter; *besagter*, the one before mentioned; *gedachter*, the one mentioned; *genannter*, the one named; *folgender*, the following.

(h) When several substantives of the same gender and number, forming either the subject or the object of the sentence occur, the first only is preceded by the article, unless a particular stress is to be laid on each: *die Güte, Liebe, und Nachsicht der Mutter*. This rule likewise refers to the pronouns. When the gender or number is different, the article is required before each: *Christus spricht: ich bin der Weg, die Wahrheit, und das Leben*; *die Mutter und die Töchter sind ausgegangen*. The article is likewise required before each of several substantives of the same gender and number, when there is a *mutual* relation between them: *die Arbeit und die Belohnung sind in keinem Verhältnisse*; *ich habe den Herrn und den Diener gesehen*; or when they serve as a title or superscription, e. g. of a fable: *der Fuchs und der Löwe*.

2. The definite article is required:—

(a) Before a substantive, either concrete or abstract, when it is used to represent the whole genus or species, or has a comprehensive meaning: *der Mensch* (every man) ist sterblich; *der Vogel* fliegt; *die Vögel* machen einen Theil vom Thierreich aus; *die Pferde* gehörten zu den edelsten Thieren; *der Gesang* der Vögel ist reizend; *die Vergnügungen* der Kinder passen nicht für die Alten; *das menschliche Leben* ist kurz; *die Tugend* führt zum Glücke, aber *das Laster* ins Verderben; *die Weisheit* ist mächtig; *die Dichtkunst* ist bezaubernd; *das Eisen* ist nützlicher als *das Kupfer*; *der Stolz* ist nicht weniger ein Fehler als die Eitelkeit.

Note.—Whenever a substantive is not used to represent the

whole species, but only a part of it, or, as it were, an individual of the species, it does not take the article, and, therefore, the abstract substantives, such as, virtue, pride, vanity, &c., require particular attention : as, die Tugend führt zum Glücke, virtue leads to happiness ; but, kein Mensch ist ganz ohne Tugend, no man is entirely without virtue ; wir wünschen ihm Glück, we wish him happiness ; der Stolz ist verächtlich, pride is contemptible ; but, Stolz hat nie in seinem Herzen gewohnt, pride has never dwelt in his heart ; die Beredsamkeit ist mächtig, eloquence is powerful ; but, mancher Mensch hat Beredsamkeit, ohne viel dadurch zu nützen, many a person has eloquence, without doing much good thereby.

(d) Before substantives which express time : der Frühling, spring ; der Sommer, summer ; der August, August ; der Montag, Monday ; der Abend, evening.

(e) Before collective names of corporations, ranks, bodies, governments, or systems of belief : die Regierung, government ; das Parlament ; der Adel, nobility ; die Christenheit, Christendom ; das Christenthum, Christianity ; die Monarchie, monarchy ; die Aristocratie, aristocracy.

(d) In the following phrases :—er wohnt in der Stadt ; wir gehen nach der Stadt ; der Knabe geht zur Schule ; wir gehen nach der Kirche ; die meisten Menschen, most men. Also before the following substantives : die Natur, nature ; das Leben, life ; der Tod, death ; der Zufall, chance ; das Schicksal, fate ; das Glück, fortune ; das Gesetz, law ; die Sitten, custom ; der Ehestand, matrimony ; der Himmel, heaven ; die Erde, earth ; das Frühstück, breakfast ; das Mittagessen, dinner ; der Thee, tea ; das Abendessen, supper ; vor dem Frühstück, before breakfast ; nach dem Thee, after tea ; das Mittagessen ist fertig, dinner is ready.

(e) In some instances, the definite article denotes *every* : dreimal des Tages, three times a (every) day ; ich habe gutes

Papier gekauft, das Buch zu einem Schillinge; zweimal die Woche, twice a (every) week.

Note.—The neuter *das* is sometimes in poetry contracted with other words than prepositions, *wenn's* for *wenn das*, *will's* for *will das*, &c.

Verzage nicht, o Christ, auf deinem Leidenswege,
Dem liebsten Kinde giebt der Vater Ruthenschläge.
Wenn's Gold im Feuer ist, so ist der Schmelzer nah';
Der Weg zum Himmelreich geht über Golgatha.

(B) THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. The indefinite article is omitted before substantives which express quality or condition: *als Vater von fünf Kindern* kann ich nicht anders handeln; *mein Bedienter* ist *Solbat* geworden, und *mein Bruder* wird *Kaufmann* werden.

2. The indefinite article is, though incorrectly, used before the names of collective bodies, with certain epithets: *eine hohe Obrigkeit*, the worshipful magistrates; *ein hochweiser Rath*, the most learned senate.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE USE OF THE CASES.

(A) THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. The subject of a sentence is always in the nominative case: *der Vater liebt seine Kinder*;—it frequently consists of several concrete and abstract ideas: *Haß, Eifersucht und Reib* plagen manchen Menschen, hatred, jealousy, and envy plague many people; *der Haß, die Eifersucht und der Reib sind böse Eigenschaften* und zeugen von einem sündhaften Zustande. Substantives in *apposition* must be in the same case with the substantives which they explain; consequently the apposition

of the subject must be in the nominative case: *Luther, der große Reformator, ist in Eisleben geboren; unser Freund, der Gewissenhafte, hat es gethan* (der *Gewissenhafte* is an adjective used substantively); *ich, ein Jüngling, kann ihn, einen alten Mann, nicht belehren.*

Note.—When an apposition explains a possessive pronoun, it must be in the genitive case: *an meiner Schwelle, des armen Mannes, steht Rudolph's Enkel stehend* (*Schiller's Tell*). This is also a common practice in Greek and Latin: $\sigma\varphi\omega\delta'$ ἀντ' ἐκίσιος τάμα δυστήνου κακά ὑπερφορεῖτος.—(*Soph. Oed. Col.* 344.) *Nomen meum absentis, meas præsentis preces.*—(*Cic. Planc.*)

2. The pronominal nominative is generally left out in the second person singular and plural of the imperative mood: *sage mir; gehet hin und saget Johanni wieder, was ihr sehet und höret* (Matt. xi. 4). The pronoun *es*, which forms the subject of impersonal verbs, is sometimes omitted when the passive voice of intransitive verbs is used impersonally: *heute wird getanzt*; there is dancing to-day; and before those impersonal verbs which have the form of reflectives: *mirh hunget*. (See page 159.)

3. The predicate of a sentence must be in the nominative case:—

(a) After the following verbs: *seyn*, to be; *werden*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *heißen*, to be called, to have a name: *Friedrich war ein großer König; mein Bedienter ist Soldat geworben; mein Vetter bleibt ein Thor; dieser Knabe heißt Peter.*

(b) After the passive voice of those verbs, the active of which requires two accusative cases: *nennen, heißen*, to name, to call; *schimpfen, schelten*, to scold, to give an opprobrious name; *taufen*, to baptize: *unsere Magd heißt Elisabeth, aber sie wird Maria genannt; mein Sohn ist Johann getauft worden.*

Note 1.—*Lehren* governs two accusative cases: *ich habe*

Ihn die Deutsche Sprache gelehrt; but it is not used in the passive voice. We do not say, er ist die Deutsche Sprache gelehrt worden; but er ist in der Deutschen Sprache unterrichtet worden; or if the actual acquirement of the language is to be expressed, we say, er hat die Deutsche Sprache gelernt. The preterite participle *gelehrt*, is a real adjective, signifying *learned*.

Note 2.—In some elliptical phrases two nominatives are met with: er beträgt sich als ein rechtschaffener Mann, he behaves himself as an honest man, i. e. behaves himself; dieser Knabe schreibt wie ein Mann, this boy writes as a man, i. e. writes; er stellt sich immer als ein armer Mann, he always pretends to be a poor man; er dünkt sich ein großer Mann (i. e. zu seyn), he fancies himself to be a great man.

(B) THE GENITIVE CASE.

1. The real genitive case expresses either *possession*, and is, therefore, often called the possessive case, or *connection*, or *the relation of an active subject to an action*: as, das Haus meines Freundes, the house of my friend (possession); der Sohn des Gärtners, the son of the gardener; die Blätter des Baumes, the leaves of the tree (connection); der Fleiß des Knaben, the industry of the boy; die Reise meines Freundes, the journey of my friend (relation of an active subject to an action). All these are real genitive cases, and need not be expressed in English by *of*: they may be expressed by the real genitive: my friend's house; the gardener's son; the boy's industry. Also in German the genitive may be put before the substantive which governs it; meines Freundes Haus, des Gärtners Sohn, des Knaben Fleiß.

From this real genitive the objective genitive must be distinguished, which stands with substantives formed of transitive

verbs : *der Gebrauch des Gelbes*, the use of money ; *der Verlust des Vermögens*, the loss of fortune ; *der Besitz eines Hauses*, the possession of a house ; *die Gabe eines Buches*, the gift of a book ; *die Wahl eines Freundes*, the choice of a friend ; *der Kauf eines Gartens*, the purchase of a garden ; *die Erfindung der Dampfmaschine*, the invention of the steam-engine ; *die Beschreibung der Stadt*, the description of the town. In all these sentences the genitive is the object, not the subject of the action implied in the substantive which governs it; and, therefore, cannot be expressed by the real genitive, but must be expressed by *of*. In German this genitive cannot stand before the substantive which governs it. We can neither say, a book's gift, nor *eines Buches Gabe*; and there is a great difference between the choice of a friend, and a friend's choice : *die Wahl eines Freundes*, and *eines Freundes Wahl*. This genitive is, in German, frequently expressed by the preposition *von* with the dative : *der Gebrauch von seinem Gelbe* ; *die Beschreibung von der Stadt*. But the German language is not quite settled on this subject.

Note.—From this we see that it is contrary to analogy to say : the king's coronation, instead of, the coronation of the king ; the children's education, instead of, the education of the children. For the king does not crown, and the children do not educate. But the father's education, is more correct than, the education of the father.

It has been mentioned (page 47) that words importing measure, number, weight, and quantity, do not govern the genitive, unless they are used partitively : as, *sechs Pfund Thee*, six pounds of tea ; *ein Glas Wein*, a glass of wine ; *eine Menge Feigen*, a number of figs ; but *sechs Pfund dieses Thees*, or *von diesem Thee* ; *ein Glas von diesem Weine*, or *dieses Weines* ; *eine Menge dieser Feigen*, or *von diesen Feigen*.

Proper names of countries, towns, villages, and places, and of months, do not stand in the genitive, when connected with their common names; they stand in apposition to them :

die Universität Oxford, the university of Oxford; die Stadt London, the city of London; das Königreich Hannover, the kingdom of Hanover; das Dorf Breitenfeld, the village of Breitenfeld; das Gut Herrenhuth, the estate of Herrenhuth; der Monat August, the month of August.

Instead of the genitive case, however, the preposition von with the dative must be used:—

(a) When the case cannot be indicated by inflection: *der Schein von Frömmigkeit*, the appearance of piety; *die Größe von Paris*, but *die Größe der Stadt Paris*; *ein Vater von sechs Kindern*, but *der Vater dieser sechs Kinder*. The preposition is likewise generally used instead of the genitive, before proper names of countries and places, and names of materials, when used without an article or pronoun, though the genitive might be indicated by inflection: *die Königin von England*, or *England's Königin*; *die Straßen von London*, or *London's*; *dieses Getränk hat den Geschmack von Bier*. Before proper names the definite article is often used to denote the genitive: *die Gerechtigkeit des Christus*.

(b) Before substantives which express quality, condition, proportion, age, measure, weight, rank, and religion: *ein Mann von feinen Sitten*, a gentleman of refined manners; *ein Mann von hohem Stande*, a gentleman of high rank; *ein Kind von drei Jahren*; *ein Schiff von 500 Tonnen, von 60 Kanonen*; *der Herzog von Wellington*; *ein Engländer von Geburt*; *ein Gewicht von 20 Pfund*; *eine Reise von 10 Meilen*; *ein Muster von einem guten Sohne*.

(c) Before the name of the material of which a thing is made: *eine Feder von Stahl*; *ein Becher von Silber*; *ein Stuhl von Elfenbein*. Instead of the substantives, the adjectives, *stählern*, *silbern*, *elfenbeinern*, may be used: *ein stählerner Becher*; *eine goldene Dose*.

(d) After the pronouns, *derjenige*, *welcher*, *wer*, *jeder*, *keiner*, *mancher*, &c.: *derjenige von uns*; *welcher von beiden*; *keiner von euch*; *mancher von ihnen*. It is also common after

definite numerals and the superlative degree : *einer von meinen Bekannten* ; *der zweite von allen* ; *der treueste von ihnen*.

Note 1.—When the date of the month is expressed, the ordinal number is not employed substantively but adjectively : *der fünfte November*, the fifth of November.

Note 2.—Such substantives as are formed from intransitive verbs, which require a preposition, are construed with the same preposition to express the relation of the genitive : *der Gedanke an Gott*, the thought of God ; *die Furcht vor Gefahr*, the fear of danger ; *die Sorge für seine Kinder*, the care of his children ; *das Streben nach Vergnügen*, the pursuit of pleasure ; *der Durst nach Ehre*, the thirst after honor ; *der Mangel an Geld*, the want of money ; *das Vertrauen auf seine Reichtümer*, the confidence in his riches. A few substantives, formed from verbs which require no preposition, are followed by a preposition to express the relation of the genitive : *er hat Neue über seine Vergehungen* ; *ich habe Ekel an dieser Speise* ; *der Spott über seine Feinde*.

Note 3.—The mutual connection of persons, is in German, never expressed by the dative case, as in English, always by the genitive ; *er ist ein Feind seines Vaterlandes*, he is an enemy to his country ; *Leopold, König von Belgien*, *ist ein Schwiegersohn des Königs der Franzosen*, Leopold, king of Belgium, is son-in-law to the king of the French.

2. The following adjectives govern the genitive case : *bedürftig*, in want of ; *bendächtigt*, in need of ; *bewußt*, *unbewußt*, conscious, unconscious ; *eingedenkt*, *uneingedenkt*, mindful, unmindful ; *fähig*, *unfähig*, capable, incapable ; *fröh*, glad ; *gewärtig*, in expectation of ; *gewiß*, *ungewiß*, certain, uncertain ; *habhaft*, getting possession of ; *kunbig*, *unkunbig*, acquainted, unacquainted with ; *los*, rid of ; *mächtig*, in possession of ; *müde*, tired of ; *quitt*, free from ; *satt*, satiated, tired ; *schuldig*, guilty ; *theilhaftig*, partaking in ; *überdrüssig*, tired with ; *verdächtig*, suspected ; *verlustig*, having forfeited or lost ; *voll*,

full of ; werth, worth, deserving ; würdig, unwürdig, worthy, unworthy.

Examples.—Ich bin des Geldes sehr bedürftig. Du bist seiner Hülfe nicht bedürftig. Er ist sich keines Unrechts bewußt. Wie sind unserer Pflicht stets eingebunden. Ihr seyd einer solchen That nicht fähig. Sie sind des Trostes froh (see Acts xv. 31).—also with über: sey nicht froh über das Unglück deines Feindes. Ich war dieses Unfalls nicht gewärtig. Du warst deines Vortheils gewiß. Er war des Weges nicht kundig. Wir können dieses Menschen nicht loswerden. O, sprech, wie wurdet ihr der Burgen mächtig!—(Schiller's Tell.) Sie waren des Erbarmens müde. (See Jer. xv. 16.) Ihr seyd eures Versprechens quitt. Ich bin des Lebens noch nie sait gewesen. Du bist, o Mensch! des Todes schuldig gewesen. Mache dich nicht fremder Sünden theilhaftig (1 Tim. v. 22). Ich bin eurer Reumonden überdrüssig (Isaiah i. 14). Er hat sich eines Betruges verdächtig gemacht. Ungerechtigkeit hat den König seiner Krone verlustig gemacht. Die Erde ist voll der Güte des Herrn (Ps. xxxiii. 5) also, voll von der Güte. Es ist nicht der Mühe werth, noch ein Wort zu sagen. Dieser Mann ist einer solchen Ehre nicht würdig.

3. The genitive case is governed :—(a) by transitive ; (b) by intransitive ; (c) by reflective verbs.

(a) Transitive verbs which require the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing : anklagen, to accuse ; berauben, to rob ; beschuldigen, to accuse ; entbinden, entlassen, to release from ; entlassen, to dismiss ; entledigen, to free from ; entkleiden, to deprive of ; entsegen, to discharge ; entwöhnen, to wean ; überführen, to convict ; überheben, to spare, to save ; überzeugen, to convince ; würdigen, to deign ; versichern, to assure ; zeihen, to accuse of ; verweisen (des Landes), to banish from the country ; belehren (eines Bessern), to set a person right.

Examples.—Dieser Mann ist eines Verbrechens angeklagt

worben. Man hat mich meines Geldes beraubt (man hat mir mein Geld geraubt). Sie beschuldigen ihn einer bösen That. Der König hat seinen Minister seines Eides entbunden. Mein Nachbar hat seinen Kutscher seines Dienstes (or aus seinem Dienste) entlassen. Er hat mich dieser Last entledigt. Der Feldherr ist aller seiner Würden entkleidet worden. Der Bischof hat den Prediger seines Amtes entsezt. Die Mutter hat das Kind der Brust (or von der Brust) entwöhnt. Man hat ihn einer Unwahrheit überführt. Ich werde dich der Mühe überheben. Niemand hat mich dieser Sache (or von dieser Sache) überzeugen können. Ich habe diesen Mann meiner Freundschaft gewürdigirt. Er hat mich seiner Hochachtung versichert. Wer kann mich einer Sünde zeihen? (John viii. 46.) Die Richter haben den Verbrecher des Landes verwiesen. Mein Freund hat mich eines Bessern belehrt.

Note.—All these verbs may be used in the passive voice with the nominative of the person and the genitive of the thing, as in two of the above examples.

(b) Intransitive verbs which govern the genitive of the thing or person: *ermangeln*, to be without; *gedenken*, (also *denken*) to remember, to think of; *harren*, to wait for; *lachen*, to laugh at; *spotten*, to mock.

Examples.—Die Seefahrer ermangelten der nothwendigsten Lebensmittel. Ich bitte dich, gedenke meiner (or an mich). Wir haben deiner lang geharret. Alle vernünftige Menschen lachen seiner Eitelkeit (or über seine Eitelkeit). Spotte niemals eines Unglücklichen (or über einen Unglücklichen).

Note.—*Leben*, to live; *sterben*, to die; *verbleichen*, to grow pale; *seyn*, to be, take the genitive in some phrases: *Wir leben und sterben der Hoffnung eines bessern Daseyns.* Meine Seele sterbe des Todes dieses Gerechten. *Selig sind*, die reines Herzens sind; denn sie werden Gott schauen. *Was deines Amtes nicht ist*, da lasst deinen Vorwitz. Ich bin der Meinung, daß es

bald regnen wird. Ich war Willens auszugehen, als er zu mir kam. Der Hohalter stand an der Stelle, wo Albert von Destrict Todes verblieb.

(c) Reflective verbs, which require the reflective pronoun in the accusative, and the object in the genitive: *sich annehmen*, to interest one's self for; *sich bedienen*, to make use of; *sich bekleißen* (or *besleißigen*), to apply to, to study; *sich begeben*, to resign, to give up; *sich bemächtigen*, to take possession of; *sich bemühestern*, to make one's self master of; *sich bescheiden*, to acquiesce in, or to confess modestly; *sich besinnen*, to recollect; *sich entäußern*, to alienate; *sich enthalten*, to abstain from; *sich entschlagen*, to get rid of, to abstain from; *sich entsinnen*, to remember; *sich erbarmen*, to have mercy upon; *sich erinnern*, to remember; *sich erwehren*, to defend one's self from; *sich freuen*, to rejoice; *sich getröstten*, to console one's self with; *sich rühmen*, to boast; *sich schämen*, to be ashamed; *sich untersangen*, unterwinden, vermessien, to dare, to venture; *sich versehen*, to be aware of. And two impersonal verbs: *mich jammert des Volks*, I am sorry for the people; *es verlohnt sich nicht der Mühe*, it is not worth while.

Note.—The genitive occurs in the phrase, *sich Rath's erhalten*, to obtain advice, to find out means. *Wo sollen wir uns Rath's erhalten?*—(*Schiller's Turandot.*)

Examples.—Ich kann mich dieses Umstandes nicht besinnen. Besinne dich eines Bessern. Eine arme Witwe wollte sich des Erbtheils ihrer Väter nicht entäußern. Die Mazarder mussten sich des Weins und starkes Getränks enthalten (*Num. vi. 3*); also, von etwas. Der ungeistlichen Fabeln entschlage dich (*1 Tim. iv. 7*). Ich entsinne mich seines Namens nicht. Erbarme dich deiner leidenden Mitbrüder. Erinnerst du dich jenes Tages? Ich kann mich seiner Zubringlichkeit nicht erwehren. Freue dich des Glücks deiner Nebennenschen (also, über das Glück). Wir getröstten uns seines Weistandes. Der Weise röhme sich nicht seiner Weisheit; und der Starke nicht seiner Stärke. Einer

bösen That müssen wir uns schämen. Ich unterwinde mich nicht einer solchen That. Wir haben uns dessen nicht versehn.

Note.—The following verbs take either the accusative or the genitive: achten, to attend to; bedürfen, to stand in need of; begehrren, to desire; brauchen, to want; genießen, to enjoy; pflegen, to foster; schonen, to spare; verfehlern, to miss; vergessen, to forget; wahrnehmen, to perceive; warten, to attend. Pflege ihn or seiner. Ich achte das or dessen nicht.

4. The genitive case is used to denote indefinite time: des Morgens gehe ich aus, aber des Abends bleibe ich zu Hause; des Sonntags; des Montags; eines Tages; heutiges Tages, now-a-days; zweimal des Tages, des Monates, des Jahres, twice a-day, a-month, a-year; but, zweimal die Woche, not der Woche, because it is feminine. A definite time is denoted by the accusative or the prepositions an and in: er ist den zweiten or am zweiten Mai geboren; ich werde nächsten Montag, or am nächsten Montag aus der Stadt gehen, und die folgende Woche, or in der folgenden Woche zurückkehren; am heutigen Tage, on this day.

5. The genitive case is frequently employed in an adverbial signification (see the adverbs): geradeß Weges, straightway; glücklicherweise, fortunately; folgender Maßen or Gestalt, in the following manner; abgeredeter Maßen, in the manner agreed upon; gebührender Maßen, in a due manner; einiger Maßen, in some measure; gewisser Maßen, in a certain degree; unverrichteter Sache, without having accomplished one's purpose; stehendes Fußes, immediately; meines Wissens, to my knowledge; meines Bedenkens, in my opinion; die Reuß stürzt wildes Laufes von dem Berge. Doch schnellen Schritts müßt ihr vorübereilen. Und muntern Laufs führt euch ein anderer Strom ins Land Italien hinab.—(*Schiller's Tell*).

Note 1.—The genitive case was formerly much more frequently used than it is at present.

Note 2.—See the prepositions which govern the genitive case.

(c) THE DATIVE CASE.

There is no language, which has not a dative case; but in English the dative is frequently in its grammatical form like the accusative. In the sentence, *I have given the boy a book*, *the boy* and *a book* have the form of accusatives, but it would be utterly wrong to say, that *the boy* was the accusative case. In English the mark of the dative, which is *to*, is omitted when the dative stands before the accusative, but it cannot be omitted, when it stands after the accusative. We cannot say: *I gave a book the boy*, we must say, *I gave a book to the boy*. *To the boy* is the real dative, and not, as some will have it, the objective case with the preposition *to*. For the preposition *to* cannot be omitted like the mark of the dative, when the substantive with the preposition *to* is placed before the accusative. In the sentence: *I shall send the parcel to your house*, *to* is not the mark of the dative, but the preposition, and therefore, we cannot say: *I shall send your house the parcel*. This will be sufficient to show, that it is absolutely necessary to make a difference between *to*, the mark of the dative, and *to*, the preposition, and between the dative and accusative cases.

The dative case is chiefly used to denote the aim of an action (not the object): as, he gave the book to his brother; *the book* is the object of the action expressed by *gave* and *to his brother* is the aim. The rain did much damage to the corn; *much harm* is the object, *to the corn*, the aim. The dative however, is also used in German to denote other relations.

1. The following adjectives are used with the dative case:—
ähnlich, *unähnlich*, alike, unlike; *angemessen*, *unangemessen*, appropriate, unappropriate; *angenehm*, *unangenehm*, agreeable, disagreeable; *ansichtig*, *unanstichtig*, offensive, inoffensive; *bekannt*, *unbekannt*, known, unknown; *bequem*, *unbequem*, con-

venient, inconvenient; *beſchwerlich*, troublesome; *bankbar*, *unbankbar*, grateful, ungrateful; *dienlich*, serviceable; *eigen*, *uneigen*, peculiar, strange; *fremd*, strange; *furchtbar*, formidable; *gehorsam*, *ungehorsam*, obedient, disobedient; *geneigt*, *abgeneigt*, inclined, disinclined; *gewogen*, favorable; *gegenwärtig*, present; *getreu*, *treu*, *untreu*, faithful, unfaithful; *gewachsen*, equal to, a match for; *gleich*, *ungleich*, like, unlike; *gnädig*, *ungnädig*, gracious, ungracious; *günstig*, *ungünstig*, favorable, unfavorable; *heilsam*, salutary; *hold*, *abhold*, kindly, unkindly disposed; *lästig*, troublesome; *lieb*, *unlieb*, dear, pleasant, unpleasant; *nachtheilig*, prejudicial, disadvantageous; *nahe*, near; *nützlich*, *unnütz* (not *unnützlich*), useful, useless; *schädlich*, *unschädlich*, hurtful, innoxious; *überlegen*, superior; *verdächtig*, *unverdächtig*, suspicious, unsuspicious; *verderblich*, destructive; *verhaft*, odious; *verwandt*, related; *vortheilhaft*, *unvortheilhaft*, advantageous, disadvantageous; *widrig*, contrary to; *willkommen*, *unwillkommen*, welcome, unwelcome; *zuträglich*, conducive. And the following:—*abtrünnig*, revolting from; *angeboren*, innate; *angeerbt*, inherited; *angehörtig*, belonging to; *ansässig*, becoming; *ärgerlich*, vexatious; *bange* (impers. mit *ist* *bange*), fearful; *bebenlich*, doubtful, dangerous; *begreiflich*, conceivable; *behaglich*, comfortable; *behülflich*, assisting; *eigenthümlich*, peculiar; *einleuchtend*, evident; *einträglich*, lucrative; *entbehrlich*, superfluous; *erinnerlich*, to be remembered; *erwünscht*, wished-for; *gebührlich*, due, becoming; *gebeihlich*, prosperous; *geflusig*, current, fluent; *gemein*, common; *gleichgültig*, indifferent; *hinderlich*, hindering, obtrusive; *möglich*, possible; *unmöglich*, impossible; *nötig*, *nothwendig*, necessary; *peinlich*, painful; *recht*, right; *schmeichelhaft*, flattering; *schmerhaft*, painful; *schrecklich*, terrible; *tröstlich*, consoling; *unausstehlich*, intolerable; *unerwartet*, unexpected; *unvergeßlich*, not to be forgotten; *unverhofft*, not hoped for; *verbunden*, obliged; *verständlich*, intelligible; *zugänglich*, accessible; *zugethan*, ad-

dicted to, attached to. Wenn Adelma euch so zugethan ist, wie sie sagt, so helfe sie und schaffe Rath.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*)

Examples.—Der Sohn ist dem Vater ähnlich, aber der Mutter unähnlich. Diese Arbeit ist seinem Stande angemessen. Deine Gesellschaft ist mir angenehm. Das Vertragen jenes Mannes ist jedem anständig. Diese Geschichte ist uns allen wohl bekannt. Diese Stelle ist ihm nicht bequem genug. Die Reise war meinem Vater beschwerlich. Sei deinem Wohlthäter stets dankbar. Er ist mir sehr dienlich gewesen. Diese Lebensart ist ihm eigen. Unhöflichkeit ist ihm fremd. Er ist seinen Feinden furchtbar. Ein Kind muß seinen Eltern gehorsam seyn. Mein Nachbar ist mir geneigt (gewogen). Der Umstand ist meinem Gedächtnisse nicht gegenwärtig. Sei deinem Herrn getreu. Ich bin dieser Arbeit noch nicht gewachsen. Ein Tag ist nicht dem andern gleich. Gott sei mir Sünder gnädig. Das Wetter ist uns nicht günstig. Bewegung ist dem Leibe heilsam. Er ist der Schwester hold, aber dem Bruder abhold. Die Gesellschaft eines Schwägers ist einem verständigen Manne lästig. Seine Gegenwart ist mir immer lieb. Fräßigkeit ist der Gesundheit nachtheilig. Gott ist seinen Kindern immer nahe. Diese Arbeit ist mir nützlich. Die weiße Farbe ist den Augen schädlich. Er ist seinen Feinden an Kraft überlegen. Diese Sache ist mir verdächtig. Viele Gewohnheiten sind manchen Menschen schädlich geworden. Die Lüge ist mir höchst verhaft. Der Neid ist dem Hasse verwandt. Jeder Handel ist dem Kaufmanne nicht vortheilhaft. Ihr seyd mir immer willkommen. Beschäftigung ist der Gesundheit zuträglich.

Note.—The above-mentioned adjectives govern the dative case not only when they are used as predicates, but also as attributes: ein dem Vater ähnlicher Sohn; eine mir beschwerliche Reise; eine ihm wohl bekannte Geschichte.

2. The dative case of the person occurs as an aim case with transitive verbs which govern the accusative of the object:

befehlen, to order; berichten, to report; bezahlen, to pay; bieten, to offer; bringen, to bring; geben, to give; gebieten, to command; geloben, to promise; gestatten, to permit; gewähren, to grant; glauben, to believe; gönnen, not to grudge; missgönnen, to grudge; klagen, to complain; lassen, to leave; leihen, to lend; leisten, to afford, to render; liefern, to deliver; melden, to announce; nehmen, to take away; offenbaren, to reveal; opfern, to sacrifice; rathe, to advise; rauben, to rob; reichen, to hand to; schenken, to present; senden, to send; stehlen, to steal; weißen, to consecrate; widmen, to dedicate; zeigen, to show.

Examples.—Niemand hat diesem Manne eine solche Arbeit befohlen. Man hat mir diesen Umstand gestern berichtet. Viele haben ihm das Geld nicht bezahlen wollen. Der Sohn brachte seiner Mutter die Nachricht von der Ankunft des Vaters, &c.

Add to these:—(a) verbs compounded with ab: abfordern, to demand from; abzwingen, to force from; abrathen, to dissuade; absprechen, to deny; ablaufen, to buy of;—(b) with an: anbieten, to offer; anrathen, to advise; andeuten, to intimate; andichten, to attribute falsely; anzeigen, to advertise; ankündigen, to announce;—(c) with bei: beibringen, to impart; beilegen, to attribute; beimessen, to impute;—(d) with ent: entreißen, to snatch away; entziehen, to withdraw;—(e) with vor: vor singen, to sing to; vorlesen, to read to;—(f) with wider: widerrathen, to dissuade;—(g) with zu: zuschreiben, to ascribe; zusagen, to promise.

Examples.—Nun läßt der Wirth mir das Federmesser abfordern. Ich habe ihm Geld angeboten. Es ist nicht leicht, diesem Knaben etwas beizubringen. Er hat das Buch meinen Händen entrissen. Wollen Sie mir dieses Buch vorlesen? Ich wider rathen Ihnen diesen Schritt. Mein Glück schreibe ich jenem Umstände zu.

Note.—Not only the active, but also the passive voice of these transitive verbs governs the dative case, the object being

made the subject: das Geld ist mir bezahlt worden. Dieses ist mir besohlen worden. Das Buch wird dir gegeben. Mein Federmesser ist mir abgesordert worden, &c. &c.

3. The dative case is used after the following intransitive verbs: antworten, to answer; anhangen, to adhere; anlegen, to apply; anstehen, to suit; begegnen, to meet; bhagen, to please; bekommen, to agree (used of things which refer to health or constitution); bevorstehen, to impend; bestimmen, beisollen, beipflichten, beitreten, to agree with a person in opinion; beisommen, to come near, to get at; beistehen, to assist; beispringen, to come quickly to one's assistance; danken, to thank; dienen, to serve; drohen, to threaten; einfallen, to occur; einleuchten, to be clear; entgehn, entfliehen, to escape; entsprechen, to correspond with, to answer; fehlen, to be wanting; fluchen, to curse; folgen, to follow; frhnen, to do service without pay, generally used in the sense of indulging in a bad or sinful habit (Grohn is an antiquated word signifying *Lord*: it is retained in Grohnvogt, taskmaster; Grohndienst, service without pay; Grohnleichnamfest, a high festival of the Roman Catholic church); gebuhren, to be due, proper; gefallen, to please; missfallen, to displease; gehorchen, to obey; gehoren, to belong to; gelingen, to succeed (imp. es gelingt mir); genugen, to suffice; gereichen, to be (dieses gereicht mir zur Ehre, Latin *est mihi honoris*); geziemern, to become, to be becoming; gleichen, to be like; helfen, to help; huldigen, to do homage; lohnen, to reward; mangeln, to be wanting; nugen, to be useful; obliegen, to apply one's self to a thing (impers. to be incumbent on, es liegt mir ob); schaden, to hurt; scheinen, to seem; schmeicheln, to flatter; steuern, to check; trogen, to bid defiance; trauen, to trust; unterliegen, to succumb; wehren, to prevent; weichen, to give way; ausweichen, to evade; widerstehen, to resist; willfahren, to indulge; wohlwollen, to wish well; zufallen, to fall to one's lot; zuhören, to listen to; zugehören, to belong to; zukommen,

to come to ; and all intransitive verbs compounded with *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *bei*, *ein*, *entgegen*, *nach*, *unter*, *vor*, *wider*, *zu*.

Examples.—Antworte mir, wenn ich dich frage. Wir stimmen dir bei. Die Wahrheit dieses Satzes leuchtet mir noch nicht ein. Wir sind einer großen Gefahr entgangen. Kinder müssen ihren Eltern gehorchen. Dieses Buch gehört mir.—(See the preposition *zu*, 13, page 200.)

Note 1.—The dative case, which is required after these intransitive verbs, cannot be changed into the nominative, when the verb is used in the passive, as is the case in English. In English we can say, *he commanded me*, and *I was commanded by him*; but in German we must say : *er befahl mir*, and *mir wurde von ihm befohlen*. In the same way : *mir wird gedankt*, I am thanked; *mir wird geholfen*, I am helped; *ihm wird gelohnt*, he is rewarded; *uns wird geschmeichelt*, we are flattered; *ihnen wurde widerstanden*, they were resisted; *uns muss nachgegeben werden*, we must be yielded to.

Note 2.—*Ankommen*, to come upon, is construed with the accusative as well as with the dative: *Fürcht kam sie or ihnen an*, fear came upon them.

4. The dative case is required after the following reflective verbs: *sich anmaßen*, to claim, to assume; *sich ausbedingen*, to stipulate; *sich einbilben*, to fancy; *sich getrauen*, to dare; *sich vornehmen*, to propose; *sich vorstellen*, to conceive; *ich mose mir keinen Titel an*, welchen ich nicht habe; *ich nehme mir nichts vor*; *er hat sich die Sache nur eingebildet*; *wir haben uns einen Lohn ausbedungen*; *ich kann mir dieses nicht vorstellen*; *er getraut es sich nicht zu*.

5. The dative case is required after the following impersonal verbs: *es ahnet mir*, or *mir ahnet*, it misgives me; *es beliebt mir*, I please; *es eletzt mir*, I loathe; *es gebricht mir*, es mangelt mir, I am wanting; *mir träumt*, I dream; *mir schwindelt*, I am giddy; *mir grauet*, I feel horror; *mir däucht*, I think. Also in the following phrases: *es thut mir leid*, I am sorry;

mir ist nicht wohl, I am not well; es verschlägt mir nichts, it makes no difference to me; mir ist kalt, warm, I am cold, warm; wenn dem so ist, if that is so.

6. The dative case is used to denote a person to whose advantage or disadvantage an action or existence is expressed by the verb (*Dativus commodi et incommodi*): der Schuster hat mir Schuhe gemacht, welche mir zu klein sind; euch leuchtet noch die Sonne—(*Schiller's Tell*); die Blumen des Gelbes blühen dem Armen wie dem Reichen; dieser Huth ist mir zu groß; dieses Luch ist mir gut genug. Instead of this dative, however, the preposition *für* with the accusative may be employed: der Schuster hat Schuhe für mich gemacht.

Note.—This dative must be distinguished from another which occurs in popular language, and merely denotes the reference of an expression either to the person who speaks, or to him or them that are spoken to: einen Apfel schießt der Vater dir vom Baum auf hundert Schritte, my father shoots an apple from a tree at a hundred paces—(*Schiller's Tell*); falle mir nicht, Kleiner, do not fall, little one; sprechet mir nicht mehr von dieser Sache; ich lobe mir meinen Steinbraten. This dative is rarely expressed in English, but we trace it in the expression, call me that boy, rufe mir den Knaben. It is frequently used in Greek, sometimes also in Latin: ἀ τέκνον, οὐ βίβηξι, ημῖν, οἱ ξεῖρος.—(*Soph. Ed. Col. 82.*) *At tibi repente paucis post diebus, cum minime expectabam, venit ad me Caninius.*—(*Cicero.*)

7. The dative case of the person is employed in German, where in English either the possessive pronoun or the genitive is used, when something is expressed to the advantage or disadvantage, pleasure or displeasure, of the person: und Eschenbach zerspaltet ihm das Haupt—(*Schiller's Tell*); dieser Mann steht sich selbst im Lichte, this man stands in his own light; mein Nachbar steht meinem Bruder im Wege, my neighbour stands in my brother's way; sie trachten dir nach dem Leben

(Jer. iv. 30); der Schmeichler spricht dem Reichen gewöhnlich nach dem Munde, a flatterer generally speaks to please the rich; es geht mir durchs Herz einen solchen Unglücklichen zu sehen; der Fuß thut mir weh; wir wollen unserm Freunde zu Hülfe kommen. The use of this dative is very common in German. (See the Personal Pronoun.)

Note 1.—It has been remarked that the words *wohl*, *Heil*, *wehe*, when used as interjections, are followed by the dative.—(See page 237.)

Note 2.—See the prepositions which govern the dative.

(D) THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. The accusative case is chiefly used to denote the object of a transitive action; and therefore, is governed by transitive verbs: *as*, *wir lieben unsere Freunde*, we love our friends; *der Schneider macht Kleider*, the tailor makes clothes; *ich beweine den Tod meines Freundes*, I weep for the death of my friend; *der Hund bewacht das Haus*, the dog watches the house.

Note.—Particular notice must be taken of some transitive verbs which are followed not only by an object, but also by expressions which denote locality: *die Biene stach mich in den Finger*, the bee stung me (and the place was, the finger); *ich kratzte mich hinter den Ohren*, I scratched myself behind the ears; *er schlug mich an den Kopf*, he struck me on the head. In these examples the accusative is required, because it is correct to say, *ich wurde von der Biene in den Finger gestochen*. These sentences must be distinguished from those in which the dative of the person is used instead of the possessive pronoun: *er flüsterte mir ins Ohr*, he whispered into my ear; *er hauchte mir vor der Stirne*, he breathed before my forehead; *ich sah ihm ins Gesicht*, I looked into his face; *die Biene stach mir den Finger wund*. In these examples the

personal pronoun cannot be changed into the nominative, and the active voice into the passive. We cannot say, *ich wurde ins Dör geflüstert*, but *Worte wurden mir ins Dör geflüstert*.

2. The accusative case is also found with some neuter verbs.—(See page 148.)

3. Reflective verbs take the reflexive pronouns in the accusative, except those which have been mentioned above (page 156) : *ich freue mich*, *ich erinnere mich*. Also some neuter verbs are used as reflectives with the person in the accusative : *der Knabe hat sich wund gelegen*.—(See page 151.)

4. The following impersonal verbs require the accusative : *es friert mich*, or *mich friert*, I am cold ; *es schaudert mich*, I shudder ; *mich hungert*, I am hungry ; *mich durstet*, I am thirsty ; *es gereuet*, or *reuet mich*, I regret ; *es wundert mich*, I wonder ; *es dünkt mich*, I think ; *es gelüstet mich*, I covet ; *es verlangt mich*, I long for.

5. The following verbs govern two accusative cases : *nennen*, *heissen*, to call ; *schelten*, *schimpfen*, to scold, to give a bad name ; *taufen*, to baptize : *as, wir nennen ihn den fleißigen Edward*, we call him the industrious Edward.

Note.—Also *lehren*, to teach, is in German, as in all languages, construed with two accusatives.

6. The accusative case is also used to express some other relations. It occurs with adjectives expressing measure, weight, age, distance, value, with a numeral preceding : *dieser Stock ist einen Fuß lang* ; *das Tuch ist zwei Ellen breit* ; *es ist einen Zentner schwer* ; *das Kind ist ein Jahr und vier Monate alt* ; *er ist eine Meile weit mit mir gegangen* ; *das Buch ist keinen Schilling werth* ; *er ist zweyzig tausend Thaler reich* ; *ich bin ihm zehn Thaler schuldig*.

7. The accusative is used to express a point of definite time and duration of time : *mein Freund kam diesen Nachmittag zu mir* ; *der Gesandte starb den zweiten Tag nach seiner Ankunft* ; *ich erwarte die Nachricht jeden Augenblick* ; *ich habe*

givet Stunden gewartet. In one instance it is used to express indefinite time : zweimal die Woche.

8. The accusative with the preterite participle is, in some phrases, used as an absolute case : die Hände mit Blut besiedt kam er vom Felde zurück, he came back from the field, his hands being stained with blood ; der Mann seufzte laut, den Blick nach seinem Vaterlande gerichtet, the man sighed aloud, his looks turned to his native land ; in wenigen Stunden lag die ganze Stadt in Asche, einige Hütten ausgenommen, in a few hours the whole town lay in ashes, some huts excepted ; diesen Umstand ausgenommen, or abgerechnet, finde ich alles recht, I find every thing correct, this circumstance excepted ; gesetzt, or angenommen es wäre so, let us suppose it were so.

Note 1.—Other absolute cases are not found in the German language. The nominative absolute, which is frequently used in English, is expressed in German by a conjunction and the finite verb : this being the case, I will do it, is to be translated by da dieses der Fall ist, so will ich es thun.—(See the participles).

Note 2.—See the prepositions which govern the accusative.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE USE OF THE VERB.

(A) PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

1. The verb must agree with the subject in person and number : der Vater liebt seinen Sohn ; wir arbeiten ; die Blumen blühen.

Note 1.—When the verb belongs to two or more subjects of the singular number, it should be in the plural : Haß, Röd, und Eifersucht machen die Menschen elend, die sich davon beherrschen lassen.

Note 2.—When the subjects are of different persons, the verb must be in the first person plural if one of the subjects is of the first person; if not, in the second person plural: *du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen*; *du, dein Bruder und deine Schwester seyb (ihr seyb) heute eingeladen worden*. But when different persons are placed in opposition to one another, the verb agrees with that which stands nearest: *nicht ich, sondern du hast es gesagt*; *nicht ich habe es gesagt, sondern du*.

Note 3.—When both subject and predicate are in the nominative case, but of a different number, the verb generally agrees with the plural: *die Frucht dieses Baumes sind kleine Beeren*.

Note 4.—It is the ridiculous custom to put the verb in the plural number, with a subject in the singular, in titles of address: *Eure Majestät geruhen*, your Majesty is graciously pleased; *Eure Excellenz haben befohlen*, your Excellency has ordered.

Note 5.—Collective substantives in the singular do not admit the verb in the plural: *das Englische Volk hat eine große Freiheit*. When, however, in the sequel of the narrative the personal pronoun is introduced, it is frequently put in the plural: *das Englische Volk hat eine große Freiheit; diese jedoch wird ihnen schädlich, wenn sie einen schlechten Gebrauch davon machen*.

2. The first and second persons of the tenses should not be used without a pronoun: *deinen Brief habe erhalten*, instead of *habe ich erhalten*. It is omitted only in the second person of the imperative mood, when no stress is to be laid upon it: *gehe und thue das*; *prüfet alles, und das beste behaltet*; *but gehe du deine Wege*; *thut ihr eure Pflicht und sey du gehorsam*.

3. When two or more verbs belong to one subject, the pronoun is put before the first only, if the order of words is not altered: *er kam zu mir, ging aber bald wieder weg*. But when a word which removes the subject after the copula is placed

before the second verb, the pronoun must be repeated: *er kam zu mir, und sogleich kündigte er mir an, daß mein Vater angekommen sey.* If *sogleich* were put after the second verb, the pronoun need not be repeated.

(B) TENSES.

1. The present tense is used in German:—

(a) To express an action which takes place, or a state, which exists at the time when it is asserted: as, *mein Vater liest die Zeitung*, my father is reading the newspaper; *der Vogel sitzt auf dem Dache des Hauses*, the bird is sitting on the roof of the house. But it is also used to express the taking place of an action, or the existence of a state, without mentioning any time: as, *die meisten Menschen lesen die Zeitung*, most people read the newspaper; *die Vögel fliegen in der Luft*, birds fly in the air; *der Mensch besteht aus Leib und Seele*, man consists of body and soul.

Note.—For this twofold use of the present tense, there are two forms in English: *I am reading*, actually present, *I read*, no time specified. In German, however, there is but one form: *ich lese*; and if the actually present time is to be stated, it is done by the adverbs *jetzt*, *now*; *eben*, *just*: *I am reading, ich lese jetzt*, or *eben*.

(b) It is, in German, more frequently employed than in English, instead of the imperfect, to enliven historical narrative: *denke dir, Freund, gestern gehe ich über die Brücke und begegne einem Bekannten, den ich in neun Jahren nicht gesehen hatte.*

(c) It is employed for the future, when that time is indicated by another word in the sentence: *ich reise morgen ab, und komme nächste Woche wieder*; *baldu sehen wir uns wieder*. Likewise when a future event is considered as certain: *dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, ermorden die Hütther, reisen dich*

aus deinem Kummer—(*Schiller's Maria Stuart*) ; ich will meinen Vater um sein Pferd bitten, aber er giebt es mir nicht.

(d) With the adverb *schon* it is employed for the perfect in sentences like this : wir wohnen schon sieben Jahre in diesem Hause. Fünf Jahre trag' ich schon den glüh'nden Haß in meiner Brust verschlossen, five years I have been carrying the glowing hatred, shut up in my heart.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*) .

2. The imperfect tense is used :—

(a) To express an action, which not only took place, or a state, which not only existed at a past time, but at a past time which is specified by another past event : as, ich kam gestern zu meinem Freunde, als er in Begriff war, auszugehen, I came yesterday to my friend, when he was on the point of going out ; ich schrieb an Sie, als ich sah, daß Sie nicht kommen würden, I wrote to you when I saw that you would not come ; wo waren Sie während der Belagerung der Stadt ? where were you, during the siege of the town ? was thaten Sie, als Sie nach Hause kamen ? what did you do when you came home ? Ich fing an zu zeichnen, I began to draw. Ich schrieb an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt, I was writing to you, when I received your letter ; der Knabe saß auf einem Stuhle, als ich ins Zimmer trat, the boy was sitting on a chair, when I entered the room ; was thaten Sie, als er zu Ihnen kam ? what were you doing, when he came to you ?

Note 1.—In English, there are also two forms for the imperfect tense : *I wrote*, *I was writing*. When an action or a state is simply expressed as past, the simple form is used : as, *I wrote to you, when I saw that you would not come*. But when an action or a state is expressed not only as passed, but actually taking place or existing at the time, when another event, to which reference is made, occurred, the compound form is used : as, *I was writing to you, when I received your letter* ; *what were you doing, when he came to you ?* In German there is but one form. To distinguish the latter

from the former, the adverb *eben, just*, is frequently used : *ich schrieb eben an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt.*

Note 2.—In English, the imperfect is also used to express definite past time, the continuance of which is stated, without any reference to another event : as, *we were yesterday in church ; I travelled last year on the Continent.* In German the perfect is used in this case.

(b) In the common historical narrative, in which case, the imperfect is employed for the aorist in Greek : *es war aber ein Priester, Matathias ; der hatte fünf Söhne ; diese jammerte sehr das große Elend in Juda und Jerusalem.*

(c) To narrate an action or event of which the narrator was an eye-witness : *ein Mann fiel gestern von dem Dache eines Hauses, und ich trug ihn mit Hülfe meines Bedienten nach seinem Hause. Vor gestern starb unser geliebter Freund.* When the narrator was not an eye-witness of the action or event which he relates, the perfect must be used.

Note.—The present and imperfect tenses are, in German, not expressed by the verb *thun, to do*, as in English, when the sentence is either negative or interrogative, or when a particular stress is laid on the verb. Illiterate people, however, make a frequent use of it : as, *I did not see him, ich that ihn nicht sahen* ; instead of *ich sah ihn nicht.*

3. The perfect tense is used :—

(a) To express an action or event as absolutely passed or perfectly ended, without any reference to another event or circumstance : *mein Bruder ist endlich von seiner langen Reise zurückgekommen ; dein Brief hat mich überzeugt, daß du Fortschritte im Schreiben gemacht hast ; ich habe gestern und heute wohl zwanzig Briefe geschrieben ; ich habe den ganzen Tag Briefe geschrieben, I have been writing letters all day.*

Note.—Mark the difference between the two forms of the perfect in English : *I have written, and I have been writing.*

Both express a perfectly past time ; but the latter is used, when the time during which an action or state lasted, is mentioned or understood. What have you done, is different from, what have you been doing. In German there is only one form for the perfect as well as for the pluperfect.

(b) Instead of the aorist in Greek, where the imperfect is employed in English : *ich habe deinen Bruder gestern gesehen, aber nicht gesprochen.* *Ein Mann ist gestern in der Themse ertrunken*. In these examples, the imperfect, employed for the aorist, would be the proper tense. But as the imperfect is principally used to express a past action or event with reference to another, or in historical narrative, or to narrate an event of which the narrator was an eye-witness, the perfect is in German preferred to express the past time, in sentences of this description.

4. The pluperfect is used to express an action or event absolutely perfect or completely ended, in reference to another which was simultaneous with, or subsequent to it : *als er mir die Geschichte erzählt hatte, ging er weg.* *Es fing schon an zu regnen, als ich noch kaum eine halbe Meile gegangen war.* *Er hatte während unserer Unterredung geschlafen,* he had been sleeping during our conversation.

Note.—In subordinate sentences, the auxiliary verb is sometimes omitted in the perfect and pluperfect tenses : *als nun Hermann geendet, da nahm der gesprächige Nachbar gleich das Wort,* now when Hermann had finished, the talkative neighbour immediately took up the word—(*Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea*) : *dass du Fortschritte im Schreiben gemacht, sieht man deutlich,* one sees clearly that you have made progress in writing ; *das Haus, welches ich gesehen, ist zwar schön ; aber es ist zu theuer für mich,* the house which I have seen, is indeed beautiful, but it is too expensive for me.

5. The first and second future tenses are used in German as in English; but expressions such as, *he is to go, I am to have it*, do not occur in German. When future time is

denoted, we use the first future : *he is to go*, er wird gehen. When necessity or the wish or will of another is implied, we use the auxiliary verb of mood, sollen : *he is to go*, er soll gehen ; *am I to have it?* soll ich es haben ? *he was to come*, er sollte kommen ; *I was to speak*, ich sollte sprechen.

Note.—The phrase, *I am going*, with an infinitive mood is expressed in German, either by the future tense, or by *ich bin im Begriff*: as, *I am going to light a candle*; either, *ich werde ein Licht anzünden*, or *ich bin im Begriff, ein Licht anzuzünden*. *I have done*, with the present participle, is expressed by *ich bin fertig*: as, *I have done writing*, *ich bin mit dem Schreiben fertig*.

(c) Moods.

1. The indicative mood :—

(a) Denotes a real action or an actual existence, either expressed or denied, and is, therefore, used whenever an action or existence expressed by the verb, is conceived as certain, and not doubtful, even in conditional sentences which convey no doubt: *die Mutter liebt ihr Kind* ; *ich weiß, daß er es nicht gesagt hat* ; *ich habe gehört, daß er das Versprechen gegeben hat* ; *der Mensch ist sterblich* ; *wenn er kommt, so bitte ihn, ein wenig zu warten* ; *wenn das, was ich gesehen habe, alles ist: so ist der Vorrath nicht groß* ; *ich glaube, daß Jesus Christus der Weg, die Wahrheit und das Leben ist, und daß niemand ohne ihn zum Vater kommt*.

(b) It is employed to express a command, conceived as already obeyed: *du trittst vor, step thou forward—(Schiller's Tell)* ; *ihr schweigt, bis man euch aufruft*.

Note.—Conjunctions do not govern any mood.

2. The subjunctive mood is employed :—

(a) When an action or existence, expressed by the verb, is conceived as uncertain and doubtful: *ich habe gehört, daß*

mein Freund die gewünschte Stelle erhalten habe, I have heard that my friend has obtained the wished-for situation. When I say : ich habe gehört, daß er die Stelle erhalten hat, I speak of it as a certain circumstance which admits of no doubt. It is, therefore, used :—

(b) In sentences in which either words or ideas of another person, or of the person who speaks, are merely *quoted* without containing either a positive assertion or negation : mein Gärtner sagte mir, daß ein Kirschbaum in meinem Garten schon lange geblüht habe, my gardener told me, that a cherry tree in my garden had been long in blossom ; ich behauptete, daß du krank seyst ; du sagtest damals, daß du es nicht thun könnest. In this respect the English differs from the German. When words or ideas are not quoted, but positively asserted or denied, the indicative is used : er behauptete, daß er krank war ; du sagst, daß du diese Arbeit nicht thun kannst. The conjunction daß may be omitted, but the mood remains the same, and the copula takes its proper place : mein Gärtner sagte mir ein Kirschbaum in meinem Garten habe schon lange geblüht ; du bist ein Meister auf der Armburst Tell, man sagt, du nehmst es auf mit jedem Schützen—(Schiller's Tell) ; er behauptete, er war krank ; du sagst, du kannst die Arbeit nicht thun.

Note.—The verb of that sentence which contains the quoted words or ideas is generally put in the present, perfect, or future, though the imperfect or pluperfect should precede ; ich sagte dem Manne, daß er ein Betrüger sei, I told the man that he was an impostor ; er behauptete, er sei krank gewesen, he asserted he had been ill ; er hatte mir gesagt, daß er es gethan habe, he had told me that he had done it. In such quoted sentences, the subjunctive mood of that tense is used which was employed by the person when he actually expressed the sentence, e. g. the subject of the three sentences above mentioned said : - du bist ein Betrüger ; ich bin krank gewesen ; ich habe es gethan. Hörtle man ihn nicht im Divan sagen : hier in dieser Stadt in

Werda, lebe jemand, der ihn kenne? was he not heard to say in the Divan, that here, in this town, in Pekin, there was some one living who knew him?—(*Schiller's Turandot.*) The subjunctive mood of the imperfect and pluperfect however, is preferred when the form of the persons of the subjunctive does not differ from that of the indicative : *ich sagte ihm, meine Kinder gingen niemals allein aus,* (not gehen, because gehen is the indicative as well as the subjunctive); *ich sagte ihm, mein Sohn gehe niemals allein aus,* (not ginge, because geht is the indicative and gehe the subjunctive); *er behauptete, ich hätte* (not ich habe) *lang genug regiert.* This practice misleads many authors to use the subjunctive mood of the imperfect and pluperfect where the present and perfect would be more correct.

(e) The subjunctive mood is required after the conjunctions *dass, damit, auf dass,* and the relative pronouns, *welcher, der,* when a wish, purpose, supposition, exhortation, hope, doubt, or advice is expressed ; for in this case, the result cannot be expressed as certain or really existing ; *ich wünsche sehr, daß das Wetter sich ändere,* I wish that the weather may change; *mein Freund macht sich viele Bewegung, damit er gesund bleibe;* und viele Bewegung macht, daß ich gesund bin. *Er spricht leise, damit ihn niemand verstehe;* und du sprichst so leise, daß dich niemand versteht. *Dieser Mann sucht Arbeit, welche ihm und den Seinen Brod gebe;* und jener Mann hat Arbeit, welche ihm Brod giebt. So in the following hymn :—

Herr Jesu ! gib uns deinen Geist,
Den uns dein göttlich Wort verheißt.
Gib uns den Geist, der uns regier'
Und uns den Weg zur Wahrheit führ'.

(d) In indirect questions which are only quoted : *ich habe ihn gefragt, wie viel er zu geben im Stande sey* (not wäre), I have asked him how much he was able to give ; *ich fragte ihn gestern, ob er mir das Geld geben könne.* But in indirect

questions, which are not considered as quotations, but as statements, the indicative is employed: *ich werde ihn morgen fragen, wie viel er zu geben im Stande ist; jetzt frage ich dich, ob du mir das Geld geben kannst oder nicht.*

(e) The subjunctive mood is employed instead of the imperative, in reference to inanimate objects or abstract ideas: *dieser Baum trage nie wieder Frucht*, let this tree never bear fruit again; *die Liebe sey ohne Falsch*, let love be without dissimulation; *so werde mir der Tempel denn zum Grabe*; let then the temple become my grave—(*Schiller's Turandot*). Also when an indefinite person is addressed in the singular: *der Reiche röhme sich nicht seines Reichtums*, let not the rich man boast of his riches; *niemand lobe denjenigen, welcher ungerecht handelt*, let no one praise him who acts unjustly. But as the form of the third person plural is the same in the indicative and the subjunctive, we must use the auxiliary mögen: *diejenigen mögen unerbittlich bleiben, welche nie Unrecht gethan haben!* let those remain inexorable, who have never done wrong! *die er gewehrt hat, mögen um ihn weinen*, let those whom he has promoted weep for him—(*Schiller's Telli*).

(f) The subjunctive mood frequently expresses a command, wish, or concession: *er nehme seine Weite, wie's Brauch ist*, let him take his distance as it is customary—(*Schiller's Telli*); *der Himmel gebe es*, may Heaven grant it; *er thue, was er will*, let him do what he pleases; *er hoffe nicht mein Ehemahl zu werden*, let him not hope to become my husband—(*Schiller's Turandot*); *man gebe sich die Hände*, let them give their hands to each other—(*Ibid*); *der Herr bewahre mich vor dieser Sünde*, may the Lord prevent me from committing this sin.

3. The conditional mood is employed:—

(a) To express a condition which is not actually possible, but only conceived as such: *wäre ich reich*, or *wenn ich reich wäre*, so hätte ich ihm seine Bitte nicht abgeschlagen, if I were rich, I should not have refused his request; *wenn ich jetzt Zeit*

hätte, so ginge ich nach der Seeküste, if I had time, I should go to the sea-coast; wäre mein Vater noch am Leben, so würde er 80 Jahre alt seyn, were my father still alive, he would be 80 years old. In these sentences the condition is only *conceived* as possible. In the following sentences: bist du reich, so gib viel; bist du arm, so gib dein Weniges gern; wenn er kommen sollte, so müßt er warten; the condition is expressed as actually possible, and therefore the indicative is used. (See *föllen*, page 128.)

(b) In elliptical phrases which contain a condition only conceived as possible: ich hätte es ihm gesagt, or ich würde es ihm gesagt haben, I should have told him (i. e. if I had seen him); in seiner Lage hätte ich es nicht gethan, in his situation (i. e. had I been in his situation) I should not have done it.

(c) In sentences which contain a wish, the fulfilment of which is impossible: wäre er doch nie in meinem Hause gewesen! I could wish that he had never been in my house! O fühlst du in dies zerrissne Herz, gewiß, du fühltest Mitleid, O, that you could look into this rent heart, surely you would feel compassion—(*Schiller's Turandot*); hätte ich doch diesen Mann nie gesehen! I wish I had never seen this man! Ich wußte, ich könnte es thun.

(d) In questions which express doubt: gastfreundlich hätte England die Königin von Schottland empfangen? did England receive the queen of Scotland in a hospitable manner?—(*Schiller's Maria Stuart*.)

Note.—It has been remarked (page 108) that the subjunctive mood of the imperfect is, in form, the conditional of the present, and the subjunctive of the pluperfect the conditional of the imperfect. If any one should doubt this, let him insert *jetzt*, *at present*, in a conditional sentence, with the form of the imperfect, and he will immediately see that the subjunctive mood of the imperfect, used as a conditional mood, does not express past time: wenn ich jetzt Zeit hätte, so ginge ich jetzt aus, if I had time at this present moment, I should go out. As to time, there

is no difference between the conditional of the present and that of the first future, and between the conditional of the imperfect and that of the second future. The only difference is, that the conditional of the future is especially used to express a condition which depends upon another, and which is therefore considered as future in respect to that upon which it depends: *aufstehen werde Englands ganze Jugend, fände der Weite seine Könige*—(Schiller's *Maria Stuart*). *Mancher Mensch würde glücklicher seyn, wenn er das Spiel nicht so sehr liebte; wenn mein Freund es in seiner Macht gehabt hätte, so würde er mir geholfen haben.*

4. The imperative mood is used:

(a) As in English: sage (du), saget Ihr. Instead of the first person plural, sagen wir, the auxiliary verb of mood, lassen, is often used: lasst, or loßt, or lassen Sie uns sagen. The third person singular and plural is principally employed in addressing a person or persons: *Johann, bringe er mein Gehüte. Gagen Sie, mein lieber Freund, ob ich recht habe oder nicht. Treten Sie herein, meine Herren.* In reference to inanimate objects or abstract ideas, the subjunctive mood is used for the imperative: *Gott sprach: es werde Licht. Es sey so, be it so.* See the subjunctive (e).

(b) The imperative is sometimes used to express an action or existence which is only considered as possible, but not real: *werde betrogen, so wirst du weiser werden*, be deceived, i. e. if you are deceived, you will become wiser. *Ehr stolz, und du wirst wenig Achtung finden*, be proud, and you will meet with little esteem.

Note 1.—Instead of the imperative mood, the preterite participle is sometimes used elliptically: *nur nicht lang gefragt*, i. e. *es werbe nur nicht lang gefragt*, do not ask long—(Goethe's *Faust*). *Frisch, Herr Nachbar, getrunken!*—(Goethe's *Hermann and Dorothea*.) *Ru'n, Gott befohlen, Prinz!* now, adieu (be recommended to God) prince!—(Schiller's *Turandot*.) *In die Arbeit gegangen, ihr Faullenzer!* Also the second person

indicative, when a command is expressed, which is considered as already obeyed: *ich sage dir, du fäumst nicht.*

Note 2.—When a request is to be expressed in a polite manner, the subjunctive mood of mögen and wollen is used instead of the simple imperative: *du wollest seiner nie vergessen*, pray never forget him. *Möge niemand mich fragen, was ich gesehen habe*, let nobody ask me what I have seen.

5. The infinitive mood is used: (*a*) without the preposition *zu*, as a real infinitive; (*b*) with *zu*, as a supine or gerund in Latin.

(*a*) The infinitive without *zu* is required:—

1. When it stands by itself and unconnected, as in a vocabulary: *lieben*, to love; *sehen*, to see.

2. When it is employed as a substantive in the nominative case: *Gehen ist seliger denn Nehmen* (Acts xx. 35); *Borgen macht Sorgen*; *fleißig seyn, geziemt jedem Manne*. But when the sentence begins with the indefinite pronoun *es*, and the subject follows the verb, *zu* is generally used: *es ist seliger zu geben, denn zu nehmen.*

3. The infinitive is also used as an abstract substantive with an article or pronoun, where the participle is used in English: *das Lügen schabet dem Lügner am meisten*, lying injures the liar most.

Dienet die Schwester dem Bruder doch früh, sie dienet den Eltern,
Und ihr Leben ist immer ein ewiges Gehen und Kommen,
Oder ein Heben und Tragen, Bereiten und Schaffen für andre.

Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.

4. After the auxiliary verbs of mood; and the auxiliary verb of tenses, *werden*, when it serves to form the future tense.

5. After the following verbs: *heißen*, to bid, to order; *helfen*, to help; *lehren*, to teach; *lernen*, to learn; *hören*, to hear; *sehen*, to see; *fühlen*, to feel; *finden*, to find: *ich hieß ihn gehen*; *er hilft mir schreiben*; *er lehrt mich lesen*; *ich lerne*

schreiben; ich höre ihn singen; ich sehe ihn kommen; ich fühle den Puls schlagen; ich fand das Buch auf dem Tische liegen.

Note.—*Lehren* and *lernen* are, however, construed with *zu*, especially when other words are governed by the infinitive mood: Gott lehret uns durch sein Wort und die Geschicke des Lebens unser Vertrauen auf ihn zu sezen.

6. After the following verbs, in some phrases: *bleiben*, to remain; *fahren*, to ride in a carriage; *gehen*, to walk; *haben*, to have; *legen*, to lay; *machen*, to make, to cause; *nennen*, to call; *reiten*, to ride on horseback; *thun*, to do: *sie blieben stehen*, *liegen*, *hängen*, *stehen*, *kleben*, they continued standing, &c. &c. *Wir fahren spazieren*, we take a ride; *wir gehen spazieren*, and er geht betteln, we take a walk, and he goes begging; *er hat gut reden*, it is an easy matter for him to speak so; *er hat gut reisen*; *er hat sich schlafen gelegt*, he has laid himself down to sleep; *er machte mich lachen*, he made me laugh; *das nenne ich schlafen*, that I call sleeping; *wir ritten gestern spazieren*, yesterday we rode on horseback; *das Kind thut nichts als weinen*, the child does nothing but cry.

Note 1.—The infinitive without *zu* is used after *thun*, only when *nichts als* precedes. *Machen* is never employed in German to express a command: as, make him go out, not *mache ihn hinausgehen*, but *läßt ihn hinausgehen*. *Ich gehe schlafen*, means I go to bed; I fall asleep is expressed by, *ich schlafe ein*.

Note 2.—The infinitive of the auxiliary verbs of mood is employed instead of the participle, when the infinitive which they modify precedes.—(See page 123.) The following verbs participate in this peculiarity: *helfen*, *hören*, *heißen*, *sehen*, *lehren*, *lernen*: *er hat mir arbeiten helfen* (not *geholfen*); *ich habe sie singen hören* (not *gehört*); *ich habe ihn tanzen sehen*. Some modern writers, however, no longer adhere to this peculiarity, but use the participle.

Note 3.—As the infinitive of the active has sometimes a passive signification, care must be taken to avoid ambiguity:

e. g. *laß ihn rufen*, may signify : let him call, cry ; and let him be called, send for him.

•(δ) The infinitive with *zu* is required :—

1. When it takes the place of an oblique case, consequently—

a. After substantives : *ich habe Lust zu spielen* ; *ich hatte gestern das Vergnügen, ihn zu sehen* ; *laßt uns Mut und Güter haben, Gutes zu thun*.

β. After adjectives which either govern an oblique case, or require a verb to express the object of their quality : *froh*, glad ; *begierig*, desirous ; *neugierig*, curious ; *leicht*, easy ; *willig*, ready ; *möglich*, possible ; *schnell*, quick ; *langsam*, slow, &c. ; *ich war froh, ihn zu sehen* ; *ich bin begierig zu wissen, was es thun wird* ; *es ist nicht leicht zu sagen, wer der beste ist* ; *ich bin willig zu thun, was ich kann* ; *ein jeglicher Mensch sei schnell zu hören, aber langsam zu reden, und langsam zum Zorne*.—(James i. 19.)

γ. After verbs when the object of an action or a design is expressed : *er schämt sich, es zu bekennen*, he is ashamed of confessing it ; *ich fürchte mich, ihn zu sehen*, I am afraid of seeing him ; *wir fangen an zu arbeiten*, we begin to work ; *ich rathe dir zu schweigen*, I advise you to be silent ; *ich wünsche ihn zu sehen*, I wish to see him.—(See the exceptions in the preceding rules.)

δ. After *haben* and *seyn*, when the infinitive is either the predicate of the sentence, or takes the place of a secondary sentence, the subject of which is the same with that of the principal sentence : *ich habe nichts zu sagen*, I have nothing to say (i. e. I have to say nothing, or I have nothing that I can say) ; *dieser Mann hat viel Geld auszugeben*, this man has to give out much money, or, has much money to spend ; *es ist sehr zu bedauern*, it is much to be regretted. After *seyn* the infinitive has always a passive signification : *wir glauben, was zu glauben ist*, we believe what is to be believed ; *er*

hat zwar einen Theil seiner Schuld bezahlt, aber der größte Theil ist noch zu bezahlen. Ihr selber habt ihm seinen Preis gesetzt, womit es zu erkauzen ist, you have fixed yourself its price, wherewith it is to be purchased—(*Schiller's Turandot*).

Note 1.—When purpose or design is expressed, *um* is frequently put before *zu* to strengthen the expression : *gehe hin, um dich zu verteidigen*; *wir wollen arbeiten, um ein vergnügtes und zufriednes Leben führen zu können*. (This *um* was formerly expressed in English by *for* : *for to do so*.)

Note 2.—The infinitive mood with *zu*, cannot be used after verbs which express *knowledge, opinion, wish, desire,* when the subject of the infinitive is not the subject of the verb : e. g. I know him to be the man ; I wish him to do the work. In these sentences, *him* is the subject of the infinitive, and *I* the subject of the verb. When this is the case, the subject of the infinitive is put in the nominative, the infinitive changed into that tense, person, and number which the connection requires, and the secondary sentence generally begins with *dass* : *ich weiß, dass er der Mann ist* ; *ich wünsche, dass er die Arbeit thue*. But, *ich verstehe, ihn fleißig zu machen*, I understand how to make him industrious ; *ich wünsche, die Arbeit zu thun*, I wish to do the work ; for in these sentences the subjects of the verb and of the infinitive, are identical.

Note 3.—When the infinitive is used to express the object of such a verb, or of the quality of such an adjective, as requires a preposition, this preposition is contracted with the local demonstrative adverb *da*, (see page 99,) and placed in the principal sentence ; and the infinitive with *zu* forms a secondary sentence : e. g. I insist upon being heard, *ich bestehe darauf, gehört zu werben* ; I long to see him, *ich sehne mich darnach, ihn zu sehen* ; he is proud of being a merchant, *er ist stolz darauf, ein Kaufmann zu seyn* ; he does not think of doing it, *er denkt nicht daran, es zu thun*. When in such sentences the subjects are different, the infinitive cannot be

used; the conjunction *dass* is then employed, followed either by the indicative or subjunctive mood, as the connexion may require: he insists upon his son being punished, *er bestellt darauf, dass sein Sohn bestraft werde* (subj. mood); he is proud of his son's having made such progress, *er ist stolz darauf, dass sein Sohn solche Fortschritte gemacht hat* (ind. mood).

2. The infinitive with *zu* is required after the prepositions *ohne* and , or *statt*: *er redete mich an, ohne mich zu kennen; lässt uns arbeiten, anstatt zu spielen.*

Note 1.—The infinitive mood in English, with relative words, as, *how*, *where*, *what*, preceding, after certain verbs, such as *to know*, *to say*, *to tell*, *to teach*, does not admit a literal translation. The auxiliary verbs of mood, *sollen*, *müssen*, *können*, are to be employed in the following manner: I know how to do it, *ich weiß, wie ich es thun muss*, or *kann*; I have told him where to go, *ich habe ihm gesagt, wohin er gehen soll*.

Note 2.—The infinitive is, in English, frequently, though very incorrectly used, even by the best authors, instead of the relative pronoun and the finite verb: we meet with many objects to awaken serious reflections—(*Blair's Sermons*); the author means to say: we meet with many objects, which awaken serious reflections, *wir treffen auf manche Gegenstände, welche ernsthafte Betrachtungen erwecken*. In German, the infinitive cannot be used in such sentences; for the infinitive would express purpose, or design of the subject.

(D) THE PARTICIPLES.

1. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

(a) This participle is used like an adjective in the attributive sense: *der lachende Frühling*; *ein singender Vogel*. It is not used to express the actual present time (see the present tense).

(b) It does not admit of the degrees of comparison; but it may govern a case. Such a case always precedes the participle: *die alles erwärmende Sonne*, the sun which gives warmth to every thing; *die mir bevorstehende Gefahr*, the danger which threatens me; *das uns verfolgende Geschick*, the fate which pursues us. Hence the following and similar compounds: *ehrliebend*, ambitious; *geseggebend*, legislative; *kriegsführend*, waging war; *wachhabend*, having the watch.

(c) It may be used elliptically as a concrete substantive with an article or pronoun like an adjective: *der Lesende*, one that reads; but not as an abstract substantive, like the English, *the reading*. In German the infinitive is employed: *das Lesen*.

(d) Several words, formed like participles, have lost the nature of a participle, and are used as adjectives only, both in the attributive and predicative sense; these are: *reizend*, charming; *kränkend*, mortifying; *einnehmend*, captivating; *dringend*, pressing; *drückend*, oppressive; *fließend*, fluent; *hintrissend*, overpowering. It is therefore correct to say: *diese Beleidigung ist kränkend*; *seine Sitten sind einnehmend*; *die Roth ist dringend*; *die Last ist drückend*; *die Rede ist fließend*. They also admit the degrees of comparison: *die Rede dieses Mannes ist fließender, als die Rede jenes*; *die drückendste Last*.

(e) This participle is, in German, not used to express *cause*, *reason*, or *time*; the conjunctions *als*, *da*, *indem*, *weil*, *wenn*, *nachdem*, (see these conjunctions,) with the finite verbs are used for that purpose: not finding my brother at home last night, I paid a visit to his neighbour, *indem ich meinen Bruder gestern Abend nicht zu Hause fand, so besuchte ich seinen Nachbar*. Having had no opportunity of seeing him, I could not deliver your message, *weil ich keine Gelegenheit gehabt habe, ihn zu sehen*: so *konnte ich ihm Ihre Bothschaft nicht überbringen*. Having given him the money, he went away without saying a word, *als er ihm das Geld gegeben hatte, ging er weg*,

ohne ein Wort zu sagen. Walking uprightly, we walk surely, wenn wir aufrichtig wandeln, so wandeln wir sicher.

(f) It is frequently used to express *manner* or *state*: *weinend sprach er zu mir*; *er setzte sich schweigend nieder*; *vor jedem Schatten zitternd lebt der Furchtsame in beständiger Angst*.

*Also sprach sie behende, und zog, vom Steine sich hebend,
Auch vom Sieze den Sohn, den willig folgenden. Beide
Kamen schweigend herunter, den wichtigen Vorsatz bedenkend.*

Goethe's Hermann & Dorothea.

Obs.—The participial constructions which so frequently occur in English, require particular attention. When the participle expresses cause or reason, *indem*, *da*, or *weil* must be used; *indem*, when an indefinite, *da*, when a logical cause, a reason; *weil*, when a real definite cause is implied (see those conjunctions). A participle may also express time: definite past time is expressed by *als* and *nachdem*; indefinite past, and present, by *wenn* (see those conjunctions). A participle is sometimes used instead of the relative pronoun with the finite verb: a man doing his duty deserves respect, *ein Mensch, welcher seine Pflicht thut, verdient Achtung*. When a participle is used with a preposition: *as*, *I rely upon seeing you*, or *I rely upon your doing it*, it must first be ascertained, which preposition is required in German; to *rely*, *sich verlassen*, requires *auf*; with this preposition, the demonstrative adverb *da* must be used: *ich verlasse mich darauf*, *I rely thereupon*; when the subject of the participle is the same with that of the verb, the infinitive may be used: *ich verlasse mich darauf, Sie zu sehen*, or *dass ich Sie sehe*; but when the subject of the participle is different from that of the verb, the conjunction *dass* must be used: *ich verlasse mich darauf, dass Sie es thun*. The demonstrative pronoun may also be required in the genitive, either expressed or understood: I am sure of his having done it, *ich bin dessen gewiss, dass er es gethan hat*. In this way, all similar sentences

must be translated. The conjunction *dass*, with the finite verb, must be used in German to express the participle, used substantively, when it cannot be rendered by an infinitive, or a substantive: your doing this work for me gives me *much* pleasure, *dass* *Eie* diese Arbeit für mich thun, macht mir viel Vergnügen. My telling you so, shows you that I do not mean you, *dass* ich dir's sage, zeigt dir, *dass* ich dich nicht meine.— (*Goethe's Egmont.*)

2. THE PTEREITE PARTICIPLE.

(a) This participle is much more frequently employed in German than English, and not only admits the three forms of inflection, but is also susceptible of the degrees of comparison: *geliebter Sohn*; *die geprüfene Jugend*; *ein verachtetes Geschöpf*; *die gesegnete Frucht*; *die bewundernste Weisheit*. This participle has a passive signification, whilst the present has an active one.

(b) Of some intransitive verbs a preterite participle is formed, which differs from the present only in respect of time: *der vom Baume fallende Apfel*, the apple falling from the tree; *der vom Baume gefallene Apfel*, the apple which has fallen from the tree; *die aufgehende Sonne vertreibt den Nebel*; *die so eben aufgegangene Sonne wurde durch Wolken verbunkelt*.

(c) It is used like an adverb of manner: *er kam gestern gepuht zu mir*, he came yesterday to me in full dress; *das Buch ist verloren gegangen*, the book is lost. *Verloren gehen* is a phrase, meaning *to get lost*.

(d) The preterite participle of some transitive verbs which express *motion*, occurs adverbially with *Kommen*: *er kommt geritten*, *gelaufen*, *gefahren*, *geslogen*, *getanzt*, *gesprungen*, *geschritten*.

(e) It is used elliptically:—1, for the imperative mood (see page 272);—2, as a participle, to express a state: *in seine Tu-*

gend gehüllt, trogt der rechtschaffene Mann der Verleumdung, wrapped up in his virtue, the honest man defies calumny. Schiller was very fond of using this participle in this elliptical manner. It is common in proverbs: frisch gewagt, halb gewonnen, well begun, half done; vorgethan und nachbedacht hat manchen in groß Erb朝 gebracht; and in some phrases used as absolute cases: gesetzt, angenommen, suppose; zugegeben, granted; ausgenommen, excepted; abgerechnet, not reckoned. Und gesetzt, wir fänden wirklich auf diesem Wege seinen Stand und Namen, wird es verborgen bleiben, daß Bestechung, nicht ihre Kunst das Rätsel uns verrathen.—(*Schiller's Turandot.*)

(f) The following words have the form of a preterite participle, but are to be considered as adjectives: abgeneigt, disinclined; behafstet, afflicted with; beherzt, courageous; bejährt, aged; bekannt, known; bemittelt, wealthy; bemooft, covered with moss; berebt, eloquent; berühmt, renowned; beschaffen, circumstanced; bescheiden, modest; beschilt, covered with reeds; bewandert, conversant; gesittet, civilized; gelehrt, learned; gewogen, friendly; gewohnt, accustomed; geschickt, clever; vergnügt, pleased; versoffen, given to drinking; verschwiegen, discreet; verwandt, related; vollkommen, perfect.

Note.—The syllable un being prefixed to a participle, makes it a negative: ungestrafft, unpunished; ungerächt, unrevedged; ungeliebt, not loved.

3. THE FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

This participle, which answers to the Latin participle in *dus*, is formed from the present by putting *zu* before it. It has a passive signification, expressing either future time, or possibility or necessity; and can only be formed from transitive verbs: die zu hoffende Ernte, the harvest to be hoped for; eine zu lobende That, an action to be praised; die zu lösenbe Aufgabe, the task to be solved.

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

The arrangement of words in German differs materially from that in English ; and this chapter requires particular attention. Were I to state all the nice distinctions which may be conveyed by alterations in the order of words, I fear I should perplex the majority of those students for whom this Grammar is chiefly intended, without giving them clear ideas on the subject. I shall, therefore, confine myself to the principal rules, and refer those who wish to study this subject more minutely, to Heyse's German Grammar, published in German for the use of Germans.

The essential parts of a sentence are called *subject* and *predicate*. The *subject* is that of which something is said (predicated), and the *predicate* is that, which is said of the subject. The predicate must not be confounded with the object. A sentence may be formed without an object, but not without a predicate. That word which connects subject and predicate is called *copula*. This copula is always an auxiliary verb of tense or mood. The following rules will clearly explain these terms.

1. The order of the words in a simple sentence is:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Die Blume the flower	ist is	schön, beautiful.

2. When the predicate is expressed by a real verb in the present or imperfect tense of the active voice, the verb takes the place of the copula, and the place of the predicate remains vacant:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Die Blume	blüht,
the flower	blooms.
Wir	lesen,
we	read.
Die Soldaten	fechten,
the soldiers	fight.

3. The place of the copula is occupied by the present and imperfect tenses of the auxiliary verbs of tenses and mood, and if none of these occur in the sentence, by the real verb, as stated in the preceding rule. The place of the predicate is occupied by the predicate, which is either a substantive, or an adjective, or a participle, or an infinitive mood, and when a compound verb separable is used in the present or imperfect tense, the particle stands, like a predicate at the end of the sentence.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Der Hund	ist	ein Thier,
the dog	is	an animal.
Die Rose	ist	falsch,
the cat	is	false.
Ich	habe	gelesen,
I	have	read.
Wir	find	gewesen,
we	have	been.
Der Knabe	kann	schreiben,
the boy	can	write.
Sie	wurden	gesehen,
they	were	seen.
Wir	werden	hören,
we	shall	hear.
Der Vater	geht	aus,
the father	goes	out.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Die Post	kommt	an,
the mail	arrives.	
Der Mann	bleibt	weg,
the man	stays	away.

4. When these verbs which are used as copulas, are used in a compound form, either in the perfect, or pluperfect, or second future, the inflected parts only take the place of the copula, and the participle or infinitive belonging to them, stands after the predicate; and the participles and infinitives of compound verbs are never disjoined:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Der Mann	ist	thördt gewesen,
the man	has	foolish been.
Wir	werben	gewesen seyn,
we	shall	been have.
Er	wird	gelesen haben,
he	will	read have.
Sie	hätten	schreiben sollen,
they	should have	to write ought (see sollen).
Der Knabe	hat	arbeiten können,
the boy	has	to work been able.
Der Vater	ist	ausgegangen,
the father	is	out gone.
Wir	haben	angefangen,
we	have	begun.
Sie	find	gehört worden,
they	have	heard been.
Er	wird	gesehen worden seyn,
he	will	seen been have.
Die Post	ist	angekommen,
the mail	has	arrived.
Der Mann	ist	weggeblieben,
the man	has	stayed away.

5. The object of the sentence stands between the copula and the predicate : but when the place of the copula is occupied by a real verb in the present and imperfect, it stands after that verb :—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Der Knabe	hat	einen Brief	geschrieben,
the boy	has	a letter	written.
I	schreibe	ein Buch,	—
I	am writing	a book.	
Er	schreibt	meinen Brief	ab,
he	copies	my letter.	
Mir	trinken	Wasser,	—
we	drink	water.	
Sie	haben	Wein	getrunken,
they	have	wine	drunk.
Er	ist	seinem Freunde	gewogen,
he	is	to his friend	attached.
Sie	find	eines Verbrechens	beschuldigt worden,
they	have	of a crime	accused been.
Er	wird	seine Arbeit	anfangen,
he	will	his work	begin.

Note.—There are several phrases, consisting of verbs and substantives, with prepositions, or adjectives, in which the substantives and adjectives are considered as the particles of compound verbs separable. They, therefore, take the same place as these particles. These are: zu Hülfe kommen, to come to assistance; zu Mittag essen, to dine; zu Grunde gehen, to perish; zu Grunde richten, to ruin; ins Werk segen, to execute; zu Stande bringen, to accomplish; ums Leben bringen, to deprive of life; zu Theil werden, to fall to one's part; um Rath fragen, to ask for advice; still stehen, to stand still; fest halten, to hold fast.

Ich	habe	meinen Freund	um Rath gefragt,
	have	my friend	for advice asked.
Cie	sezgen	ihre Vorhaben	ins Werk,
they	execute	their scheme.	—
Wir	find	ihm	zu Hülfe gekommen,
we	have	to his	assistance come.
Die Arbeit hat	den Mann		zu Grunde gerichtet,
the work has	the man		ruined.
Man hat	den Dieb	fest	gehalten,
one has	the thief	fast	held.
Wir	aßen	bei ihm	zu Mittag, —
we	dined	with him.	—

6. When there are two cases in a sentence, that of the person precedes that of the thing:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>		<i>Predicate.</i>
Ich	habe	dem Knaben	ein Buch gegeben,
I	have	to the boy	a book given.
Der Vater hat	den Sohn	einer Sünde	beschuldigt,
the father has	the son	of a sin	accused.
Wir	müssen	den Mann	seinem Schicksale überlassen,
we	must	the man	to his fate leave.

7. When the two cases are both of persons, the accusative precedes the dative:—

Er	hat	sich	seinem Bedienten	anvertraut,
he	has	himself	to his servant	entrusted.
Ich	habe	deinen Sohn	meinem Freunde	empfohlen,
I	have	thy son	to my friend	recommended.

But the oblique cases of the personal pronouns *ich*, *du*, *er*, *sie*, *es*, *wir*, *ihr*, *sie*, always precede another case:—

Ich	habe	bir	seinen Sohn	empfohlen,
I	have	to thee	his son	recommended.

Er	hat	es	meinem Nachbar	erzählt,
he	has	it	to my neighbour	told.
Er	wird	ihm	seine Tochter	geben,
he	will	to him	his daughter	give.
Sie	werden	mir	das	sagen,
you	will	to me	that	say.

8. When there are two personal pronouns in a sentence, the accusative precedes the dative and the genitive:—

Sie	haben	es	mir	gegeben,
you	have	it	to me	given.
Ich	schicke	sie	Ihnen,	
I	send	them	to you.	
Er	wird	sie	dir	vorstellen,
he	will	her	to thee	introduce.
Wir	nehmen	uns	seiner	an,
we	interest	ourselves	for him.	—
Er	hat	sich	mir	empfohlen,
he	has	himself	to me	recommended.

9. When adverbs of manner, or such substantives with prepositions as may be regarded as adverbs, define or modify the verb exclusively, they stand immediately before the predicate, or, should the predicate be implied in the verb, before the vacant place:—

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Copula.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Adv.</i>	<i>Predicate.</i>
Der Mann	hat	seinen Gegenstand	vortrefflich	behandelt, the man has his subject admirably treated.
Der Mann	behandelt	seinen Gegenstand	vortrefflich,	
the man	treats	his subject	admirably.	
Ich	habe	das Buch	aufmerksam	gelesen, I have the book attentively read.
Er	hat	das Gelb	mit Freuden	ausgegeben, he has the money with pleasure out given.

10. Adverbs of time, and such substantives as may be regarded as adverbs of time, generally precede the object (unless it is a pronoun) and the adverbs of place; and when the time denoted by the adverbs is more particularly stated by a substantive, this substantive stands after the adverb:—

Ich habe gestern einen Brief geschrieben,
I have yesterday a letter written.

Du kannst ihn morgen um zehn Uhr in meinem Hause sehen,
thou canst him to-morrow at ten o'clock at my house see.

Wir werden bald Regen bekommen,
we shall soon rain have.

Viele Leute haben immer des Sonntags Gesellschaft,
many people have always on Sundays company.

Er ist vor drei Tagen in London angekommen,
he has three days ago in London arrived.

Note 1.—The words, *vor drei Tagen*, may be regarded as an adverb of time; and, *in meinem Hause*; *in London*, as adverbs of place, for they express adverbial ideas, like *yesterday*, *here*.

Note 2.—*Schon* and *noch* and *erst* may either precede or follow another adverb of time or adverbial expression: *heute noch*, or *noch heute*; *morgen schon*, or *schon morgen*; *erst diese Woche*, or *diese Woche erst*.

11. Adverbs of place, and substantives with prepositions, which may be regarded as adverbs of place, generally stand immediately before the predicate; and when both an adverb and a substantive with a preposition occur in a sentence, the adverb precedes the substantive:—

Ich habe die Katze oben auf dem Hause gesehen,
I have the cat on the top of the house seen.

Wir können das Buch nirgends im Hause finden,
we can the book nowhere in the house find.

Ich habe gestern einen Brief aus Deutschland erhalten,
I have yesterday a letter from Germany received.

Ich werde in einigen Jahren meinen Sohn nach Paris schicken,
I shall in a few years my son to Paris send.

Er ließ gestern seinen Bedienten lange an der Thüre warten,
he let yesterday his servant long at the door wait.

12. The adverbs *nicht*, *doch*, *zwar*, *etwa*, *wohl*, *vielleicht*, *gern*, stand immediately before the predicate when they modify the verb. But when they modify an idea, expressed by another word, they stand before that word :—

Ich habe ihm gestern die angenehme Nachricht nicht mitgetheilt,
I have to him yesterday the pleasant news not communicated.

Ich habe ihm nicht gestern die angenehme Nachricht mitgetheilt,
I have to him not yesterday the pleasant news communicated.

Ich würde ihm das Buch gern gegeben haben,
I should to him the book willingly given have.

Ich würde ihm gern das Buch gegeben haben,
I should to him willingly the book given have.

Er hat mir ein Pferd zwar versprochen, aber nicht gegeben,
he has to me a horse indeed promised, but not given.

Er hat mir zwar Geld versprochen, aber ein Buch gegeben,
he has to me indeed money promised, but a book given.

13. Substantives or pronouns with such prepositions as the verb of the sentence requires, generally stand immediately before the predicate. When the preposition does not depend on the verb, but expresses a cause, purpose, &c., the substantive with the preposition generally precedes the object.

Ich habe niemals über den Gegenstand mit ihm gesprochen,
I have never on the subject to him spoken.

Ich werde niemals in meinem Leben zu ihm gehen,
I shall never in my life to him go.

Wir haben gestern einen angenehmen Brief von ihm erhalten,
we have yesterday a pleasant letter from him received.

Wir tranken gestern aus Mangel an Bier Wasser,
we drank yesterday from want of beer water.

Viele Menschen trinken aus Geiz Wasser,
many people drink from avarice water.

Ich könnte ihm vor Freuden keine Antwort geben,
I could to him for joy no answer give,

Er hat mir zu meiner Freude meine Bitte nicht abgeschlagen,
he has to me to my joy my request not refused.

14. When a particular stress is to be laid on any of those words which stand between the copula and the predicate, it is removed from its place, and either put before the subject or only before the other word or words which stand likewise between the copula and the predicate. In the former case the subject and copula exchange places, and the order of the other words remains the same: in the latter case no other alteration is produced, e. g. the sentence: *ich habe ihm gestern die angenehme Nachricht nicht mitgetheilt*, may be expressed in the following ways:—

Ihm habe ich gestern die angenehme Nachricht nicht mitgetheilt.
Gestern habe ich ihm die angenehme Nachricht nicht mitgetheilt.
Die angenehme Nachricht habe ich ihm gestern nicht mitgetheilt.
Mitgetheilt habe ich ihm gestern die angenehme Nachricht nicht.
Ich habe nicht ihm gestern die angenehme Nachricht mitgetheilt.
Ich habe gestern ihm die angenehme Nachricht nicht mitgetheilt.
Ich habe die angenehme Nachricht ihm gestern nicht mitgetheilt.
The student should endeavour to understand this well.

15. The subject stands after the copula:—

(a) In direct questions, unless the interrogative is the subject, or used adjectively before the subject; or in the genitive, governed by the subject: *schreibt der Mann?* *Was hat der*

Water gesagt? Welches Buch hat der Schüler gelesen? Warum weinst du? Welcher Knabe ist trüge gewesen? Wessen Lehrer soll Sie unterrichten?

(b) In imperative sentences: sage du es ihm selbst. Sprechen Sie mit ihm.

(c) When a wish is expressed by the auxiliary verb mögen: möge er lange leben! Möchten wir ihn doch sehen!

Note.—When a wish is expressed by the simple subjunctive mood, the subject may precede or follow the copula: der Himmel gebe es! Gebe es der Himmel!

(d) When surprise is expressed, generally with doch: ist doch die Stadt wie geleert, wie ausgestorben! Habe ich es ihm doch gesagt!

(e) When the conjunction wenn, if, is omitted: wäre das Better schön, so ginge ich aus.

(f) In expressions of quotations: wir alle, sprach er, sind verloren.

16. The position of all the parts of a simple sentence having been explained, I shall now state the most essential rules concerning principal and subordinate sentences. *Principal* sentences are such as convey in themselves an idea, without the addition of another sentence; *subordinate* sentences are such as require another sentence, upon which they depend, and without which they cannot be understood: e. g.—

This man is very happy, although he is poor.

I know that he cannot do it.

We cannot go out, because it rains.

This man is very happy; I know; we cannot go out, are principal sentences; and, *although he is poor; that he cannot do it; because it rains*, are subordinate sentences. Principal sentences have their proper place before subordinate sentences; but they may be put after them, in which case the pronoun of the subordinate sentence, which represents a person or inanimate object or abstract idea of the principal

sentence, is carried to the principal and the person or inanimate object or abstract idea to the subordinate :—

Although this man is very poor, he is very happy.

I have not seen your friend, although he promised to come.

Although your friend promised to come, I have not seen him.

When subordinate sentences are put before principal sentences, they affect the position of subject and copula in the principal sentence in the same way as a single part; they make subject and copula to exchange places: as,—

*Daß er es nicht thun kann, weiß ich,
that he cannot do it, I know.*

*Seitdem Sie hier waren, habe ich ihn nicht gesehen,
since you were here, I have not seen him.*

17. All the conjunctions which are used to connect subordinate sentences with principal sentences, remove the copula to the end of the sentence: such as, weil, als, da, wenn, nachdem, obgleich, ob schon, obwohl, wenngleich, wiwohl, bevor, bis, dafern, damit, daß, ehe, falls, je, indem, ob, seitdem, sintelmal, so bald als, so lange als, so weit als, &c. &c. These conjunctions are marked * in the list. When subordinate sentences, beginning with the following conjunctions: wenn, als, da, weil, nachdem, obgleich, ob schon, obwohl, wenngleich, wennschon, wiewohl, wie auch, so— auch,—are placed before the principal sentences, the latter generally (especially when the subordinate sentence is long) begin with so, which denotes a kind of recapitulation of the whole sentence :—

*Weil Sie nicht zu Hause waren, so ging ich wieder weg,
because you were not at home, I went away again.*

*Als ich vor einigen Tagen in London ankam, so fand ich
meinen Freund nicht,*

*when I arrived a few days ago in London, I did not
find my friend.*

*Weil er gestern nicht wohl war, so darf er heute nicht ausgehen,
because he was not well yesterday, he must not go out to-day.*

When, however, a subordinate sentence stands after the copula of the principal sentence or the verb which takes the place of the same, it does not affect the order of the principal sentence:—

*Ich fand, als ich vor einigen Tagen in London ankam,
meinen Freund nicht.*

Er darf, weil er nicht wohl ist, heute nicht ausgehen.

Examine the following sentences:—

Er war abgereiset, ehe ich nach Paris kam.

Ehe ich nach Paris kam, war er abgereiset.

Ich weiß, daß er meinen Brief erhalten hat.

Dass er meinen Brief erhalten hat, weiß ich.

Er will es nicht thun, weil er träge ist.

Weil er träge ist, so will er es nicht thun.

Note 1.—When the conjunction *wenn* is omitted, the subordinate sentence receives the form of an interrogative: as, *hätte ich ihn gesehen, so würde ich ihn gebeten haben*, had I seen him, I should have requested him. When *dass* is omitted, the copula remains in its place: *er behauptete, er habe mich nie gesehen*, he maintained he had never seen me (see the Conjunctions in the list).

Note 2.—In sentences which begin with any of these conjunctions, a personal pronoun may stand between the conjunction and the subject, if the latter is not a personal pronoun: *als ihn der Vater sah, so weinte er vor Freuden.*

Note 3.—In conditional sentences with the conditional mood, the subject sometimes stands before the copula, though the subordinate sentence precedes it. This is the case when a particular stress is laid on the subject: *wenn mein Vater mir Lehrer gehalten hätte, wie ich dir, ich wäre was anders als Wirth zum goldenen Löwen.*—(*Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.*)

Note 4.—When the principal sentence, placed after the subordinate, is an interrogative sentence, it cannot begin with *so*:

wenn ich es gethan hätte, würden Sie mich怪る? if I had done it, would you blame me?

18. Conjunctional adverbs (or adverbial conjunctions), such as daher, therefore; desse[n]ungeachtet, doch, yet; dennoch, nevertheless, &c., which have been marked thus § in the list, have their proper place, like adverbs, between the copula and the predicate, and, therefore, make subject and predicate to exchange places, when they are put before the subject. These conjunctional adverbs are used to connect co-ordinate sentences with principal sentences:—

Ich erwarte meinen Freunde, ich muß deswegen (or deswegen muß ich) zu Hause bleiben.

I expect my friend, I must, therefore, stay at home.

Wir haben ihn oft gebeten; er will es dennoch (or dennoch will er es) nicht thun.

We have often requested him; yet he will not do it.

Die Elbe ist zugefroren; die Schiffe können daher (or daher können die Schiffe) nicht nach Hamburg kommen.

The Elbe is frozen over; the vessels can, therefore, not come to Hamburg.

Das Wetter ist heute kalt; es ist indessen (or indessen ist es) angenehmer, als gestern.

The weather is cold to-day; it is, however, more pleasant than yesterday.

Mein Vater hat dem Manne Geld gegeben, und außerdem hat er ihn (or und er hat ihn außerdem) seinem Freunde empfohlen.

My father has given money to the man; and besides he has recommended him to his friend.

19. The copula is also removed to the end of the sentence by the relative pronouns welcher, der, was für ein, wer, was, and the relative adverbs wo, warum, weshwegen, woher, wohin, &c.

Der Mann, welcher mir den Brief brachte, hat mir die Nachricht mitgetheilt.

Das Buch, welches ich vorige Woche las, fand ich sehr unterhaltend.
Dies ist der Mann, dessen Haus ich Ihnen diesen Morgen zeigte.
Ich werde mit Vergnügen thun, was mir befohlen worden ist.
Ich weiß nicht, wo ich ihn gesehen habe.

Wer kann wissen, warum er nicht gekommen ist?

Er sagte mir nicht, was für ein Buch er mitgenommen habe.
Der Mann, in dessen Haus ich Sie sah, ist todt.

Note 1.—The principal sentence should not be separated by a long relative one, when only a few words of little import are thereby caused to stand after such a sentence, e. g. not, ich gebe meine Ansprüche, welche ich auf das Buch meines verstorbenen Freundes habe, gern auf, but, ich gebe meine Ansprüche gern auf, welche ich, &c.

Note 2.—All the words used as interrogatives, such as, welcher, wer, wo, warum, &c., are also used as relatives. When used as interrogatives, they do not remove the copula to the end (see 15). Such sentences in which they retain the interrogative signification, but are used as relatives, are called in German and Latin grammars, indirect questions, and in every sentence which contains an indirect question, the copula stands at the end: as, ich weiß nicht, wo er ist; ich kann dir nicht sagen, warum er nicht gekommen ist.

20. When the sentence which begins with an indefinite relative pronoun, is put before the principal sentence, it removes the subject after the copula:—

Was mir befohlen worden ist, werbe ich mit Vergnügen thun.

But when the subject is the same in both, the demonstrative pronouns der, das, are either not expressed or put before the copula:—

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, or der muß fühlen.

Was heute wahr ist, muß auch morgen wahr seyn, or das muß auch morgen wahr seyn.

21. In sentences, in which an auxiliary verb of mood, or

such a verb as requires the infinitive without *zu* occurs, together with an infinitive, the copula does not stand at the end, but before the two infinitives. The close reiteration of *werden*, in the future or the passive is likewise avoided by putting the copula before the participle or predicate:—

Ich weiß, daß ich es werbe Ihnen können.

*Wenn ich es hätte Ihnen müssen, so würde ich es mit frohem
Muth gehan haben.*

*Obgleich ich ihn hatte kommen hören, so konnte ich ihn doch
im ganzen Hause nicht finden.*

Ich hoffe, daß alle Verleumdungen einst werden offenbar werden.

22. In sentences with the perfect or pluperfect of the passive or the second future, or the second conditional of the active or passive, the copula *may* stand before the participle or the predicate:—

*Niemand wird leugnen, daß die Nebelkäfer hier auf Erden
nicht immer sind bestraft worden, or bestraft worden sind.*

*Sobald ich meinen Freund werde gesehen haben, or gesehen
haben werde, will ich Ihnen alles mittheilen.*

23. Sentences in which a purpose or design is expressed by the infinitive mood with *zu*, or *um zu*, have their natural place, as subordinate sentences, after the subject of the principal sentence:—

*Der Sohn ist zehn Meilen gegangen, um seinen Vater eine
halbe Stunde zu sehen,*

*or der Sohn ist, um seinen Vater eine halbe Stunde zu sehen,
zehn Meilen gegangen,*

*or um seinen Vater eine halbe Stunde zu sehen, ist der Sohn
zehn Meilen gegangen.*

Note.—*Um* and *zu* are separated by those words which are governed by the infinitive. This may occasion obscurity, especially when *um* precedes an accusative case.

Um die Bedürfnisse, die wir täglich haben, auf eine anständige Weise zu befriedigen, haben wir manche Dinge nöthig.

or Wir haben manche Dinge nöthig, um die Bedürfnisse, die wir täglich haben, auf eine anständige Weise zu befriedigen.

or Um auf eine anständige Weise die Bedürfnisse, die wir täglich haben, zu befriedigen, haben wir manche Dinge nöthig.

24. The five conjunctions : allein, denn, sondern, und, and aber, always stand at the beginning of a sentence without affecting the order of the words ; aber and nämlich *may* stand at the beginning of a sentence, and in this case they do not affect the order of the words : but they may also stand after the copula and even after the object :—

Der Mann ist zwar reich ; allein niemand achtet ihn, sondern jedermann verachtet ihn ; denn er ist ungerecht und geizig ; aber ich hoffe, (or ich hoffe aber) daß er sich bessern wird.

25. When the following conjunctival adverbs, auch, kaum, weder, noch, entweder, and the adverbs nur, sogar, schon, (sometimes also vielleicht and vermutlich) have a particular reference to the subject and not to the predicate, they do not affect the order of the words when they are put before the subject :—

Nur der Mörder (or der Mörder nur) ist gehängt worden ; aber nicht der Dieb.

Auch mein Bruder hat es mir gesagt.

Auch hat mein Bruder es mir gesagt.

Kaum eine Stunde war vergangen.

Kaum war eine Stunde vergangen.

Schon drei Tage sind vergangen und noch niemand ist erschienen.

26. The following conjunctions, doch, jedoch, inbessern, nun, and the adverbs freilich, wahrlich, and some other adverbial expressions, such as im Gegentheil, on the contrary ; in des That, indeed, are sometimes employed elliptically, or as words of exclamation ; in which case they do not affect the position of the subject :—

Freilich, ich habe ihn selbst gesehen.

Wahrlich, ich sage dir.

*Ich weiß noch nicht, ob ich es than kann ; doch ich will mich
bestimmen.*

In der That, ich habe ihm nichts zu sagen.

27. The adverb *doch*, when it expresses the idea of *pray*, or *to be sure*, or *I hope*, always stands after the copula : *Gie haben doch meinen Brief erhalten ? Gagen Sie es mir doch.*

I shall conclude this chapter with a few remarks on the position of substantives, which stand in a certain relation to one another, such as is expressed either by the genitive case or a preposition ; and of adjectives and participles when employed in an attributive sense.

1. The genitive, generally, and a substantive with a preposition always, stands after that substantive to which it stands in a certain relation : *die Freue des Freundes ; der Ruth des Knaben ; der Freund des Hauses ; ein Mann von Ehre ; ein Becher von Silber ; ein Schulmeister in Paris ; ein Mann mit einem schwarzen Halstuche.* In poetry only it is admissible to separate such words by the insertion of others.

*Und es hörte die Frage, die freundliche, gern in dem Schatten,
Herrmann, des herrlichen Baums, an dem Orte, der ihm so lieb war.*

2. The genitive, however, is put before the substantive to which it belongs, when the latter is to be expressed with emphasis : *des Vaters Haus ; des Menschen größtes Glück.*

3. Adjectives, and words used as adjectives, such as participles, pronouns and numerals, generally precede the substantive to which they belong, when they do not form the predicate. When adjectives and participles, used in the attributive sense, govern cases, the cases precede them : *ein gutes Haus ; ein blühender Baum ; ein lebender Vater ; der geschriebene Brief ; die zerstörte Stadt ; ein langer Stab ; ein schwerer Stein ; ein wüdiges Unterthan.*

Ein seine Kinder zärtlich liebender Vater.

Der an meinen Vater geschriebene Brief.

Die von den Soldaten zerstörte Stadt.

Ein zehn Ellen langer Staab.

Ein zehn Pfund schwerer Stein.

Ein der Ehre seines Fürsten würdiger Unterthan.

4. When a particular stress is to be laid on the adjective or participle, it is either put after the substantive, like an apposition, with the definite article, or a relative sentence is made of it; or it is used elliptically: *Friedrich der zweite; das Haus, das neue; der Eifer, auch der gute, kann verrathen.*

Der Führer, der blind ist, kann nicht leiten.

Der Brief, geschrieben an meinen Vater.

Die Stadt, von den Soldaten zerstört.

Ein Vater, seine Kinder zärtlich liebend.

Ein Mann, einer solchen Ehre würdig.

In this elliptical manner, however, they can be used only when the substantive to which they belong is in the nominative or the accusative.

5. The present participle, when used elliptically, is preceded by the object which it governs: *der Vater, seine Kinder zärtlich liebend;* but the adjective and the preterite participle may stand before or after the object: *der Mann, stolz auf seinen Reichtum, or auf seinen Reichtum stolz;* *der Brief, geschrieben an meinen Vater, or an meinen Vater geschrieben;* *die Stadt, zerstört von den Soldaten, or von den Soldaten zerstört.* The preterite participle may even be put before the subject; in which case it removes the subject after the copula: *Gewohnt den Gesetzgeber in Deutschland zu spielen, und setzt über das Schicksal des Kaisers zu gebieten,* *sah der fröliche Churfürst von Baiern sich durch Wallensteins Erscheinung auf einmal entbehrlich gemacht—(Schiller's *Thirty Years' War*).*

6. The indefinite numerals and pronouns, alle, manche, viele, jeder, stand before definite numerals and adjectives. Alle, however, is sometimes used after the substantive: *die Bücher alle, all the books.* In the same way: *Gott allein;* *der Vater selbst;* *Geld genug.*

CHAPTER V.

ON THE MARKS OF PUNCTUATION.

The marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English. They are called : das Komma [,] ; das Semikolon [;] ; das KOLON [:] ; der Schlußpunct [.] ; der Gedankenstrich [—] ; das Fragezeichen [?] ; das Ausrufzeichen [!] ; das Einschlußzeichen [()], also called Klammer. We differ in the application of the three first-mentioned from the English, and it is, therefore, necessary to explain their use.

1. The comma is the mark of the shortest pause; it, therefore, separates—

(a) Subordinate sentences from the principal, and is always put before a relative pronoun and adverb, *welcher*, *der*, *wer*, *was*, *wo*, *wodurch*, &c., and before the conjunctions *da*, *damit*, *dass*, *weil*, *wenn*, *wie*, when they connect the next sentence with the preceding : *Lebe, wie du, wenn du stirbst, wünschen wirst, gelebt zu haben.* Der Mann, *welcher* mir die Geschichte erzählte, lebt nicht mehr. Ich weiß, dass er es gesagt hat.

(b) The individual parts of contracted sentences, which are not connected by *und* or *oder*: *Christus ist der Weg, die Wahrheit, das Leben, die Auferstehung*; auch *das Licht, die Gerechtigkeit und die Liebe.* Ein guter Feldherr muss weise, vorsichtig, mutig und entschlossen seyn.

(c) Words of address and apposition: *ich bin dir, mein Freund, Dank schuldig.* Alcuin, ein Engländer, geboren in York, hat sich um die Wissenschaften sehr verbient gemacht.

(d) When the infinitive mood with *zu* occurs with words which are governed by it, such a subordinate sentence is separated from the principal by a comma: *ich hielt es für meine Pflicht, ihm die Wahrheit zu sagen.*

Note 1.—A comma is put before und when the sentence which it connects with the preceding, has another subject and predicate : *der Vater kam um vier Uhr an, und die Kinder folgten ihm eine Stunde später.*

Note 2.—We never use a comma in the middle of a simple sentence : *von einem heftigen Sturme wurden wir plötzlich überschlagen. In zwei- oder mehrsyllbigen Wörtern hat eine Silbe den Hauptaccent. Ich fand meinen Freund unschäflicher Weise gestern Abend nicht zu Hause.* Such sentences do not admit a comma in German.

2. The semicolon is employed :—

(a) To distinguish several co-ordinate sentences of some length : *daß ist der herrliche Trost des Evangeliums, und die Verheißung Christi, daß Gottes Kraft und Gottes Geist sich mit dem Menschengeiste vereinigen wolle, der es ernst und treulich mit seiner Heiligung meint; der mit allen dem, was er hat, und was er ist, sich ihm dahingiebt; der mit dem Wachen das Beten, und mit der Treue das festste Vertrauen auf die Gnade Gottes in Christo verbindet.*

(b) The semicolon is especially used between two co-ordinate sentences, when the last contains a cause, or explanation, or consequence, or antithesis, &c., consequently before the conjunctions denn, aber, allein, daher, also, dagegen, vielmehr, indessen, dennoch, nur, sonst, &c.: *viele Menschen finden Vergnügen daran, Rache zu üben; aber der Nachfolger Christi vergiebt denen, die ihn beleidigen.*

3. The colon is used :—

(a) To separate the principal from the subordinate sentence, when each is long and contains subordinate members : *wenn das unser Höchstes ist, daß wir uns bemühen, Gottes Willen zu thun: so fragen wir nicht mehr darnach, ob das, was Gott uns aufträgt, auch den Menschen gefalle; ob es gelobt oder getadelt oder unbemerkt übersehen werde.*

Note.—In short sentences they are separated by a comma: wenn du es thun willst, so thue es bald.

(b) Before words which are directly and literally quoted: Jesus spricht zum Philippus: ich bin der Weg, die Wahrheit und das Leben. So jemand spricht: ich liebe Gott, und hast doch seine Brüder, der treibt mit Gottes Wahrheit Spott, und reißt sie ganz daneben. Der Apostel sagt: lasset uns gutes thun, und nicht müde werben; denn zu seiner Zeit werben wir erndten ohne Aufhören. When, however, the words are not directly and literally quoted, but only inserted obliquely in the narrative: as, lasset uns gutes thun, sagt der Apostel, und nicht müde werben, a comma is employed.

(c) When something is announced to which attention is to be directed, especially after als, nämlich, folgend, unter andern: das Subjektiv wird oft als Substantiv gebraucht, als: der Zufriedene ist nie arm; der Unzufriedene nie reich. Die Männer welche die besten Griechischen Grammatiken geschrieben haben, sind folgende: Thiersch, Buitmann, Matthiä.

CHAPTER VI.

PROSODY.

By Prosody (*προσῳδία*) we understand that part of grammar which teaches—1, the quantity of syllables; and 2, the measure of verses, or versification.

I. THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

In Greek and Latin, the syllables are long or short, according to the time required for their pronunciation: whence a long vowel or diphthong makes a syllable long; a short

vowel, short, unless it is followed by two or more consonants, which extend the time (*tempus, mora*) in the pronunciation. In German, the syllables are long or short, according to their own accent, i. e. according to their signification. In *Guß*, *Gäße*, *Haus*, *Häuser*, the vowels and diphthongs are long; in *Fluß*, *Gäße*, *Gäß*, *Gäßer*, the vowels are short; but the radical syllables of the latter are as long as those of the former.

It has been mentioned in the chapter on accentuation, that some syllables have the full accent, others the demi-accent, and others no accent. Those which have the full accent are long; those which have no accent are short; those which have the demi-accent are common, i. e. either long or short, according to the syllables which precede or follow. In *simple* words of two syllables one is always long, the other short. There is in the German language no simple word which consists either of two long or two short syllables. In compound words of two syllables, the determinative component has the full accent, and the determined the demi-accent; but as to the quantity of the syllable, the latter is long as well as the former: *Rüdchöf*, *Häuselhüt*. Even in doubly compounded words of three syllables, each is long: *Schlößkirchhof*, *Gästhäuselhüt*, though only one has the full accent. The following rules may be laid down:—

1. Long are:—

(a) All monosyllabic substantives, adjectives, and forms of verbs (except the auxiliary verbs): *Händ*, *Mann*, *Rind*, *Zünd*, *läng*, *größ*, *schön*, *ging*, *ständ*, *fällt*.

(b) All radical syllables in dissyllabic and polysyllabic words: *Wächthum*, *befehlén*, *liebēn*, *liebreich*, *güter*, *einén*.

Note 1.—Exceptions are: *lēbēnd* *g*, and foreign words; also those which have received a foreign termination, especially *tren*, which has the accent on *i*: *marshfrēn*.

Note 2.—Of compound particles the last component is

generally the determinative, and therefore long; this is the case with all those compounded with *da* and *wo*: *dafür*, *darum*, *darum*, *wodurch*, *wofür*, *watum*. (When, however, a particular stress is laid on the relative or demopetrative adverb, it is long: *dafür*, *wodurch*.) Also of the following the last component is long: *heute*, *hierfür*, *jewo^rt*, *obgleich*, *durchaus*, *anstatt*, *indem*, *umsönst*, *ju^erst*, *zumal*, *zule^ßt*, *der^einst*, *einmal*, (once, formerly); *einmal*, (one time).

(c) All particles which are separated from the verb, and the negative prefix *un*: *anfangen*, *aufhören*, *hören auf*, *Küsst*, *Wörth*, *unschuldig*, *ündankbar*.

2. Short are:—

(a) The following monosyllables: *der*, *die*, *das* (the article, but not the pronoun); *ein* (not the numeral); the indefinite pronouns *es*, *man*; the conjunction *so*, and the preposition *zu* before the infinitive mood.

(b) All syllables which are added by inflection, either in the declension, or in the formation of the degrees of comparison, or in the conjugation of the verb: *Söhn*, *älter*, *guter*, *meine^s*, *löhne^t*. Also the following unaccented final syllables: *chen*, *de*, *ge*, *el*, *elm*, *em*, *en*, *er*, *ern*, *ig*, *sel*, *the*, *tel*, *ter*, *sig*: *Mädchen*, *Friede*, *Zäng*, *Zadel*, *wändeln*, *Ging*, *hört*, *seit*, *Wicht*, *Wütt*, *siebzig*, *dreißig*.

(c) All prefixes, the vowel of which is *e*: *be*, *emp*, *er*, *ent*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*: *beteben*, *empfinden*, *erlauben*, *entsagen*, *geloben*, *vertheidigen*, *zerstören*.

Note.—The prefix *be*, in *Demuth*, *demuthig*, has the full accent.

3. Common are:—

(a) All monosyllabic pronouns: *ich*, *du*, *er*, *ei*, *sie*, *wir*, *ihr*, *uns*, *euch*, *ihns*, *ihm*, *sich*, *wer*, *was*, *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *man*, &c.

Note.—The obsolete cases of *ich*, *du*, *et*: *mein*, *dein*, *sein* are long.

(d) All monosyllabic forms of the auxiliary verbs: *hat*, *hast*, *ist*, *ist*, *war*, *sey*, *wirb*, *soll*, *muß*, *Sann*, &c.

(e) All monosyllabic prepositions (when they are not used as prefixes or particles); all monosyllabic adverbs which are not adjectives; all monosyllabic conjunctions and interjections: *an*, *bei*, *in*, *von*, *zu*, *doch*, *für*, *vor*; *wo*, *nicht*, *je*, *oft*, *sehr*, *man*, *hier*, *dort*; *als*, *da*, *dass*, *denn*, *und*, *auch*, *weil*; *ach*, *ei*, *ha*, *o*.

(d) The final syllables which have the demi-accent: *bar*, *höft*, *heit*, *elt*, *icht*, *isch*, *int*, *köt*, *lein*, *lei*, *lich*, *ling*, *niß*, *sal*, *sam*, *schaft*, *thüm*, *ung*. The common syllables are not marked at all: *wunderbar*, *dauérhaft*, *Arbeit*, *Weisheit*, *dörnicht*, *Graündinn*, *Heiligkeit*, *Göhllein*, *alléret*, *freündlich*, *Göldcheling*, *Weitk'nnish*, *Kel'dsal*, *spärsam*, *Gesellschaft*, *Ehrl'kenthum*, *Weißelung*. To these may be added the final syllables *at*, *et*, *ob*, *and*, *end*: *Heimat*, *Mönat*, *Kleinob*, *Heiland*, *weiland*, *tiend*; and *fach*, *halb*, *lings*, *los*, *mals*, *voll*, *wärts*: *dréifach*, *wéßhalb*, *unterhalb*, *rü'dings*, *gréñzenlos*, *vörmals*, *freudevöll*, *wetwärts*.

Note.—The prefix *miß* is common in compound verbs, inseparable, but long in substantives and adjectives: *mißlingen*, *mißfallen*, *das Mißfällen*, *mißträuflich*.

Concerning the use of common syllables, the following rules may be laid down.

1. A common syllable is used as a short one between two long ones: *Weisheit*, *Mächt* und *Städte*; but as a long one between two short: *Ule elten durch die Städt*.

2. Most of the common syllables may be used as short ones between a short and a long: *Heiterkeit* *dékte* *sein* *Xtallig*; *Rückung* *deß* *hergëns*; *Reichthum* *der* *Bürgér*.

Note.—The final syllables *haft*, *heit*, *schaft*, *thüm*, *sal*, must not be used short when preceded by a long and followed by a short syllable of inflection: not *Gréundschaften*, but *Gréundschaften*; not *hertzhaft*, but *hertzhaft*.

3. A common syllable either before or after two short ones, is long: *wō bī st̄ dū gēwēsēn?* *da lā chēltē ēr.*

4. A common syllable commencing a line, is long before a short, and short before a long: *ſein Gēſt̄ht gēſel ūns;* *ſein ūgē glānztē hēll.*

5. A common syllable at the end of a verse is long after a short, and short after a long: *bīc Gūtc bīcēr Grāu t̄t̄ wūntērbār;* *sāgtē ēr ēs bīr, gēliebtē Grēundbūn?*

6. A common syllable before or after a common one, may be used either long or short: *dū hāſt Wöllēn, gnādīgē Blētērinn.* *Wlē dēn řīcht, dās řebēn dēr Rādītē.* *Thr wār mēin Diēnst wīllkōmmnēr als mēin Lōb.*

These may be laid down as rules of general application; it must, however, be remarked, that German poets frequently transgress them, especially in using short syllables for long ones.

II. THE MEASURE OF VERSES, OR VERSIFICATION.

Those parts into which a verse is divided according to its rhythmus, are called feet. They consist either of equal quantities, i. e. of only long or only short syllables; or of unequal quantities, i. e. of long and short syllables.

The feet are either of two, or three, or four syllables:—

1. Of two syllables.

- “ Spondee.
- “ Trochee.
- “ Iambus.
- “ Pyrrhic.

2. Of three syllables.

- “ Dactyl.
- “ Anapaest.
- “ Cretic or Amphimacer.
- “ Amphibrac.
- “ Bacchic.
- “ Antibacchic.
- “ Molossus.
- “ Tribrac.

3. Of four syllables.

----- Dispondee.	----- First Epitrit.
----- Choriambus.	----- Second —
----- Antispast.	----- Third —
----- Diiambus.	----- Fourth —
----- Ditrochee.	----- First Paeon.
----- Ionicus a majori.	----- Second —
----- Ionicus a minori.	----- Third —
	----- Fourth —

Words of not more than four syllables must form one of these feet, and such feet we call word feet : *Nieblifdchëß*, Dactyl ; *Grenzschäfteñ*, Antibacchic ; *Antibächtsbüch*, Molossus. The feet of which a verse consists we call verse-feet. The word-feet must not coincide with the verse-feet ; for such a coincidence produces an unpleasant uniformity. The following verse, therefore, is censurable ; for every word-foot is a verse-foot :—

Stieblicher | tönen | singende | Wägelein | laufenden | Ehren.

An unpleasant uniformity is likewise occasioned by the word-feet being of one description, and by the re-occurrence of too many monosyllables, as in the following lines :—

*Munter er | tönen der | Wögel Ge | sänge im | dichten Ge | büſche
D wie | froh ist die | Zeit wenn | mit der | Braut sich der | Bräut'gam
Schwinget im Tanz.*

Ber ist | so schön | so klug | so treu | so fromm | wie du ?

A word-foot ending in the middle of a verse-foot, produces an incision (*cæsura*). Several of these incisions are not essential. But most of the long verses have an incision generally about the middle of the verse, which is essential to their rhythmus. This is called the rhythmical incision or *cæsura*. In the following hexameters taken from the beginning of the

second Idyll of Voss's *Louise*, I shall mark the caesura by a comma :—

Klar aus der | Dämmerung | stieg, am | goldenen | Himmel
 der | Maitag
 Siebliche | Wärme an | kündend, und | leuchtete | sanft in
 die | Fenster ;
 Das ihr | scheltiger | Glanz, mit | wandlendem | Schatten
 des | Pfirsichs
 Glomm an der | Wand und | hellte, des | Altvors | grüne
 Ges | dinen.

The caesura is called masculine, when it takes place after a long syllable; feminine, when after a short one. Of the above verses, two have a masculine, and two a feminine caesura. In Hexameters and some other long verses, the caesura must take place about the middle of the verse, to produce a point of rest. In Homer it generally takes place in the third foot, and of the 611 verses in the first book of the Iliad, only seven are to be found which have not the caesura in the third foot. By this caesura the rhythmus of the verse is divided, but not the verse itself; on the contrary, it connects the two halves; for that part of the verse-foot which precedes the caesura, connects the first half with the last, and that part which follows the caesura, joins the last half to the first: e. g.

Dringt mit Ge | walt in den | Feind, wo der | Lorbeer | lohnet
 und | Siegstruhm.

The verse-foot Feind, wo der with the caesura after Feind, divides the rhythmus, but not the verse. The following, however, divides the verse :—

Dringt mit Ge | walt in die | Streitenden ! | Lorbeer | lohnet
 und | Siegstruhm.

for the caesura coincides with the end of a verse-foot after Streitenden.

This coincidence of the caesura with the end of a foot, is called the division of the verse, and must be avoided when it coincides also with a mark of punctuation, which breaks or concludes the idea, as in the last-mentioned verse.

There are, however, some kinds of verses to which such a division is essential; as every verse is divided into two hemistiches or half-verses:—

Run danket alle Gott | mit Mund und Herz und Thaten,
 Der große Dinge thut | der uns so wohl berathen.
 Kränzte doch Cäsar selbst | nur aus Bedürfniß das Haupt.

A verse ending with a long syllable is called masculine, with a short syllable, feminine:—

Wohl, wohl dem Manne für und für,
 Der halb sein Liebchen findet;
 Er findet großes Gut in ihr,
 Wie Salomon verkündet.

Several verses which form a rhythmical whole, and are repeated in the same number and order, are called a *strophe*. A strophe may consist of two verses, and is then called a *distich* (*στίχος*, a line) or of three, four, even eight and more.

I shall now state those kind of verses which are most frequently met with in German poetry.

1. The Trochaic verse:—

The number of feet in this kind of verse rarely exceeds five. It is not necessary that every foot should be a Trochœe; a sinking Spondee, i. e. a Spondee which has the principal accent on the first, and the demi-accent on the last syllable, may now and then be used instead of a Trochœe. A Pyrrhic, however, is not admissible. Some have a masculine, some a feminine termination.

Bater	Zeus der	über	alle
Götter	herrscht in	Nethers	Höhn
Dass dies	Opfer	dir	falle,
Läß ein	Zeichen	jetzt	schehn.

Güße	Blumen	seyd will	Kommen
In des	Jahres	goldner	Zeit,
Ich ihr	seyd so	spät ge	Kommen
Und der	Sommer	ist nicht	weit !
Könnnt ihr	meine	Stimme	hören ?
Könnnt ihr	meine	Blicke	sehn ?
Sagt mir	welche	will mich	lehren
Euer	leises	Wort ver	stehn ?
Sagt mir	welche	soll ich	wählen
Zur Ge	spielinn	in dem	Rai ?
Welche	will mix	gern er	jählen,
Wo die	schöne	Heimath	sey ?
Jesus	ist	ge	Kommen ;
Dankt ihm	seine		Frommen,
Dankt ihm	dass	er	Kam ;
Dass er	hier	auf	Erden,
Unser	Heil	zu	werden,
Seine	Wohnung		nahm.

2. The Iambic verse :—

This verse consists of two, three, four, five, or six feet. A rising Spondee, i. e. a Spondee which has the demi-accent on the first, and the full accent on the last syllable, may now and then be used for an Iambus, except in the last foot. An Anapaest instead of an Iambus sometimes produces a good effect. The Iambic verse of five feet is generally used for the dialogue of tragedy, and frequently receives a feminine termination by the addition of a short syllable :—

Berblen	deter	vom ei	tein Glanz	verführt
Berach	te dein	Geburts	landl Schä	me dich
Der ur	alt from	men Git	te bei	ner Väter.

Der lie be Tag o Greun binn sinkt,
 Ihm folgt ein schd ner X bend.
 Wie sanft er durch die Wdu me vlinkt
 :Die Flur mit Ruh lung la bend!
 So sinP auch uns der Xu gend Tag,
 So fol ge mild der X bend nach!

Des blau en him mels gold ner Baum
 Erhebt im Wel lenspie gel;
 D sieh es be ben Schilf und Baum,
 Es debt der ro the hū gel.
 So sey der Schdn heit Wie berschein
 In re ger Seel' und klar und rein!

Der Schnee macht kalt das Feu er brennt
 Der Mensch geht auf zwei Fü sen;
 Die Son ne scheint am Fir mament,
 Das kann wer auch nicht so gik kennt
 Durch sei ne Sin ne wis sen.

*Das Recht des Herrschers üb' ich aus; zum letzten Mal
 Dem Grab zu u berge ben diesen theuren Leib.*

Iambic verses of two or three feet are not uncommon in German lyric poetry.

There are Iambic verses of six feet which are called Alexandrines, after a French poem, called "Alexandre le Grand." One of their characteristics is rhyme, and by an incision after the third foot, each verse is divided into two hemistiches. Four verses form a strophe, two of which have a feminine and two a masculine termination.

Run dan ket al le Gott mit Mund und Herz und Thaten
 Der gro se Din ge thut der uns so wohl berathen
 Der mächtig uns erhält und von der Kind heit an
 Uns bis auf die sen Tag bestän dig wohl gethan.

The Alexandrine now and then admits a rising Spondee for an Iambus.

3. The Dactylic verse :—

This verse consists of two, three, four, five, or six feet. Instead of a Dactyl a sinking Spondee may now and then be used. Modern poets make frequent use of Trochees, and even of Iambuses, in consequence of the great number of short syllables in the German language. The last foot sometimes consists only of one long syllable.

Buntes Ge	fieder	Christ ist er	standen !
Rauschet im	Hayn ;	Freude dem	Sterblichen,
Himmlische	Lieder	Den die ver	verblichen,
Schallen dar	ein.	Schleichenden	erblichen
		Mängel um	wanden.

Chret die	Grauen, sie	flechten und	weben
Himmlische	Rosen ins	irdische	Leben,
Flechten der	Liebe be	glückendes	Band ;
Und mit der	Grazie	züchtigem	Schleier
Röhren sie	wachsam das	ewige	Feuer
Schöner Ge	fühle mit	heiliger	Hand.

The most important of the Dactylic verses is the heroic Hexameter, consisting of six feet. The first four feet may be Spondees or Dactyls, the fifth is a Dactyl, and the last may be a Trochee but not a Dactyl. The chief requisite in an Hexameter is, that it should combine variety of metre with unity of rhythmus; and this is to be effected by a judicious interchange of Spondees and Dactyls, and a proper cæsura in the third foot :—

Würb' ist mit | Würde ge | sellt wer ein | Amt hat | warte des | Amtes.

When the fifth foot of an Hexameter is a Spondee, the verse is called a Spondiac. In this case, however, the fourth foot must be a Dactyl :—

Zeglichen | Det durch | irrte die | Königinn | laut weh | Flagend.

The Elegiac Pentameter also belongs to this kind of verse. It is, by an incision in the middle, divided into two Hemistiches, each of which consists of two feet and one long syllable. In the first Hemistich, Spondees or Trochees may be used for Dactyls, but not in the last. The incision in the middle must coincide with the end of a word. This verse is never used by itself, only in conjunction with the Hexameter :—

Grß die Gesundheit des Mannes der endlich vom Namen höflich
Rühn uns befriedend uns auch ruft in die vollere Bahn

4. The Anapaestic verse :—

This verse is seldom found pure in German poetry; it is generally mixed up with Iambuses. A rising Spondee only ought to be used instead of an Anapaest.

Und es wal | let und sie | det und brau | set und gischt
Wie wenn Was | set mit Geu | er sich men | get.

An dem Sei | le schon zieht | man den Freund | empor
Da zerrennt | er gewal | tig den bich | ten Chor.

The kind of strophes consisting of Trochaic, Iambic, Dactylic, and Anapaestic verses are so numerous, that it would lead me too far, were I to attempt to give a specimen of each. Those who are acquainted with the principal rules which have been stated above, will have no difficulty in ascertaining the metre of any strophe. There is an excellent collection of the various kinds of poetry, entitled *Häuse's und Gidel's Handbuch aller verschiedenen Dichtungsgarten*. The Sapphic, Alcaic, and Asclepiadic strophes of the Greek and Roman poets, and the Tercets, Octaves, and Sonnets of the Italians have been successfully imitated by German poets: the former especially by Voss, Klopstock, Höltiy, Matthiessen; the latter by F. and A. W. von Schlegel, Goethe, and others

1. The Sapphic strophe consists of four lines: the first three are alike, each of five feet; the last has only two feet, a Dactyl and a Spondee or Trochee:—

Verse 1, 2 & 3. $\text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--}$
 4. $\text{--} \mid \text{--}$

The third foot is always a Dactyl. The best place for the cæsura is after the long syllable of the third foot. The great classical scholar, poet, and translator, J. H. Voss, has not only translated Horace's Odes in the metre of the original, but also composed several poems in the Sapphic metre:—

Richt zu schamhaft fäum' an dem Sonnenfenster
 Aufzublühn, jungfräuliches Gina-Rößlein!
 Deines Hochroths harrt und des Walsambustes
 Unsere Herrinn!

2. The Alcaic strophe consists likewise of four lines; the first two are alike, each of five feet with an Iambic rhythmus; the fourth, however, is always an Anapaest; and instead of the first and third Iambus, a rising Spondee may be used. The cæsura ought to take place in the third foot. The third verse consists of four Iambuses with an additional short syllable; but instead of the first and third, rising Spondees may be used. The fourth verse consists of two Dactyls and two Trochees, but the last syllable may be either long or short.

Verse 1 & 2. $\text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--}$
 3. $\text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--}$
 4. $\text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--} \mid \text{--}$

Noch einmal möcht ich, eh' in die Schattenwelt
 Glystums mein seliger Geist sich senkt,
 Die Flur begrüßen, wo der Kindheit
 Himmliche Träume mein Haupt umschwebten.

3. The Asclepiadic strophe consists also of four lines; the first two are alike, each containing a Trochee or sinking Spondee, two Choriambuses, and an Iambus or Pyrrhic. The third verse has a Trochee or Spondee, a Dactyl and a Trochee. The fourth is like the third, but terminates with an additional long or short syllable.

Verse 1 & 2. -⁵ | -⁴- | -⁴- | -⁵
3. -⁵ | -⁴- | -⁴
4. -⁵ | -⁴- | -⁴ | -

Wunderseliger Mann, welcher der Stadt entfloß !
Jedes Gäuseln des Baums, jedes Geräusch des Bachs,
Jeder blinkende Kiesel
Predigt Tugend und Weisheit ihm.

There are also Asclepiadic strophes with three Choriambuses.

4. The Tercet consists of three Iambic lines. The first line of each strophe rhymes with the third, and the middle line always determines the rhyme of the first and third line of the next strophe. These strophes were introduced by Dante, and have been successfully imitated by F. and A. W. von Schlegel. The latter has written a poem called *Prometheus*, which begins thus:—

“ O goldne Zeit auf ewig hingeschwunden !
Wie süß bethört es, deine ferne Spur
In alter Sänger Sprüchen zu erkunden !
Da hauchte stets des Frühlings Milde nur,
Und es geblich (so tönt die heil'ge Sage)
Freiwillig alle Fül' im Schoß der Flur.

5. The Octave is a strophe of eight lines, each consisting of five Iambuses. Six lines rhyme alternately, and the strophe is concluded with two rhyming lines. In German poetry a feminine termination is generally followed by a masculine one.

Der Morgen kam, es schenchten seine Tritte
 Den leisen Schlaf, der mich gelind umsing,
 Dass ich erwacht aus meiner stillen Hütte
 Den Berg hinauf mit frischer Seele ging.
 Ich freute mich bei einem jeden Schritte
 Der neuen Blume, die voll Tropfen hing ;
 Der junge Tag erhob sich mit Entzücken,
 Und alles ward erquickt, mich zu erquicken.

6. The Sonnet consists of fourteen Iambic lines, divided into four parts; the first two consist of four verses each: the last two of three each. In the first parts the first line generally rhymes with the fourth, and the second with the third; in the last parts either all three rhyme or two only. In German poetry a feminine termination is frequently followed by a masculine one.

C h r i s t i G e b u r t .

von A. W. v. Schlegel.

Mein süßes Kindlein, wüsst' ich dein zu pflegen !
 Ich bin noch matt ; doch ruh' am Busen warm ;
 Die Nacht ist dunkel, klein die Hütte und arm,
 Sie müssten dich in diese Krippe legen.

So sprach Maria ; draußen rief's dagegen :
 Ebst uns hinein, wir wollen keinen Harm !
 Uns wies hieher der Engel froher Schwarm,
 Verkündigend den neugebornen Segen.

Das Dach empfängt sie und ein göttlich Licht,
 Wie um ihn her die frommen Hirten treten,
 Entstrahlt des Heilands kleinem Angesicht.

Sie stehn, sie schaun, sie jubeln, preisen, beten ;
 Der Jungfrau mütterliche Seele' erfüllt
 Sich mit dem Gotte, den ihr Schoß enthüllt.

I shall conclude with a few observations on the German rhyme. In German poetry the sound only makes the rhyme, but not the letters, as is the case in English. Such words as *love* and *move*, according to the rules of German rhymes, would not correspond. The following words perfectly rhyme, though they are differently spelt: *gut* and *Ruth*; *Rot* and *Zob*; *Gelb* and *Welt*; *Güte* and *Blüthe*; *bläß* and *Glas*. But the following do not rhyme well: *Heide* and *Weite*; *Fuß* and *Fluß*; *müssen* and *Füßen*; *reisen* and *beissen*; *weichen* and *neigen*; *Orten* and *geworden*. Either the vowels or the consonants of the last-mentioned words have, when correctly pronounced, different sounds. The following vowels and diphthongs, however, are considered as perfect rhymes: ü (long) and ie; û (short) and i; eu and ei; ö and e; as: grüßen and sießen; müssen and wissen; Beute and Seite; Höhn and stehn; Tritte and Hütte.

